

Owner's Manual

TT Roadster

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. We recommend that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring with your Audi.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 236*.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notes on this Owner's Manual .. 5

Quick reference .. 6
FAQs .. 6
Before you set off .. 6
Breakdowns and emergencies .. 6
Useful functions .. 6
Using the infotainment system .. 6
Communication .. 6
Navigation .. 6
Entertainment .. 7
Tips and tricks .. 7

Controls and displays .. 8
View of cockpit .. 8
Controls at a glance .. 8

Instruments and warning/ indicator lamps .. 10
Instruments .. 10
Warning and indicator lamps .. 11

Driver information system .. 20
Overview .. 20
Multi-function steering wheel plus .. 21
Multi-function steering wheel .. 23
Rev counter .. 24
Mileage recorder .. 24
On-board computer .. 25
Sport view .. 25

Setting off .. 27
Doors and windows .. 27
Central locking system .. 27
Boot lid .. 33
Electric windows .. 34
Garage door opener (HomeLink) .. 35

Soft top (folding roof) .. 39
Soft top .. 39
Windbreak .. 41
Manual operation of the soft top .. 41

Lights and vision .. 44
Exterior lights .. 44
Interior lights .. 47
Clear vision .. 48
Windscreen wipers .. 50
Digital compass .. 52

Seats and storage .. 54
General notes .. 54
Front seats .. 54
Ashtray .. 56
Cigarette lighter and electrical socket .. 56
Storage .. 57
Luggage compartment .. 58

Heating and cooling .. 60
Air conditioner .. 60

Driving .. 66
General notes .. 66
Steering .. 68
Starting and stopping the engine .. 68
Start/stop system .. 71
Electro-mechanical parking brake .. 74
Moving off .. 75
Automatic gearbox .. 76

Driver assistance .. 86
Driver assist systems .. 86
Speed warning function .. 86
Cruise control system .. 86
Speed limiter .. 88
Camera-based traffic sign recognition .. 90
Audi active lane assist (lane departure warning feature) .. 92
Lap timer .. 94
Sport displays .. 96
Audi side assist (lane change assist feature) .. 97
Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions) .. 100

Parking aids .. 103
General notes .. 103
Rear parking aid .. 104
Parking system plus .. 104
Reversing camera .. 106
Park assist with 360° display .. 108

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting graphic display and warning beeps 112
Fault warnings 112

Intelligent technology 113
Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 113
Brakes 115
Electro-mechanical power steering 116
Four-wheel drive (quattro) 116
Rear spoiler 117
Power management 118
Information saved in the control units . . . 119

Infotainment 121
Multi Media Interface 121
Notes on traffic safety 121
Introduction 121
MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function 121
How to use the MMI 122
MMI touch 124
Rotary pushbutton with joystick function 126
Speller for letters/numbers 128
Search function 129
Menus and symbols 130

Speech dialogue system 133
How to use the speech dialogue system . . 132
Notes on the overviews of commands . . . 134
Commands 134

Telephone 141
Introduction 141
Setting up 142
Using the Audi phone box 146
Using the telephone 147
Favourites 149
Messages 150
Listening to voicemail messages 152
Emergency call functions 152
Directory 153
Settings 155
Seat belt microphone 157
Troubleshooting 158

Audi connect 159
Introduction 159
Setting up 159
Configuring using myAudi 162
Audi connect services 162
Wi-Fi hotspot 165
Configuring the data connection 166
Notes on Audi connect 167
Troubleshooting 168

Navigation 169
Calling up the navigation menu 169
Entering a destination 170
Stop route guidance 175
Home address 175
Favourites 175
Directory contacts 175
Other settings 176
Map 178
Google Earth map display 181
Calling up traffic information 182
Troubleshooting 184

Radio 185
Calling up the radio menu 185
Radio functions 185
Radio menu 187
Favourites 188
Other settings 188
Troubleshooting 190

Media 191
Introduction 191
Notes 191
Media drives 192
Bluetooth audio player 194
Wi-Fi audio players 195
Online media and Internet radio 196
Multimedia connections 197
Playing media 200
Other settings 203
Supported media and file formats 206
Troubleshooting 207

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi smartphone interface 210
Setting up 210
How to use 211
Troubleshooting 211

System settings 212
Setting the time and date 212
MMI settings 212
Connection manager 213
System update 216
On-board Handbook 216
Sound settings 217
Volume settings 217
Restarting the MMI system (Reset) 218
Notes on software licences 218

Safety 220
Safe driving 220
General notes 220
Correct sitting positions 221
Child seats 223
Securing a child seat 225
Pedal area 226
Stowing luggage safely 227
Pedestrian protection system 228

Seat belts 230
Why is it so important to use seat belts? . 230
Forces acting in a collision 231
How to wear seat belts properly 232
Belt tensioners 234

Airbag system 235
Description of airbag system 235
Front airbags 236
Side airbags 239

Service and care 241
Checking and topping up fluids . 241
Fuel 241
Filling the tank 242
Emission control systems 244
Engine compartment 244
Engine oil 247
Cooling system 249
Brake fluid 250
Battery 250
Windscreen washer 252
Service interval display 252

Wheels 254
Tyres and rims 254
Tyre pressure loss indicator 258
Tyre pressure monitoring system 260

Care of vehicle and cleaning 263
General notes 263
Washing the vehicle 263
Notes on cleaning and care 264
Taking the vehicle out of service 268

Self-help 269
Mobility 269
General notes 269
Equipment 269
Tyre repair kit 270
Changing a wheel 272
Spare wheel 276
Jump-starting 277
Tow-starting / towing away 278

Fuses and bulbs 282
Fuses 282
Bulbs 284

Accessories and technical data .. 285
Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 285
Accessories, replacement parts and repairs 285
Modifications 285
Radio transmitters and business equipment 286

Technical data 287
Vehicle identification data 287
Explanation of technical data 287
Dimensions 288
Capacities 288
Weights 288
Engine data 289

Index 290

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of your particular Audi model and contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings.

Please ensure that this Owner's Manual is always kept in the vehicle. It should always be available to anyone else driving the vehicle, i.e. anyone renting, borrowing or buying the vehicle from you.

This manual describes **the equipment available for the vehicle at the time of going to print**. Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or may only be available in certain markets.

Some sections of this Owner's Manual do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. “Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system”. This optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also marked with an asterisk “*”.

Illustrations are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

All references to **positions** such as “left”, “right”, “front” or “rear” are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section is continued on the following page.

⇨⚠ Refers to a “WARNING” within the same section. If the WARNING symbol is followed by a page number the warning text referred to is included in a different section.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FAQs

Before you set off

– How do I adjust the seats? ⇨ *page 54*.
– How do I adjust the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 68*.
– How does the selector lever for the automatic gearbox work? ⇨ *page 77*.
– How does the electro-mechanical parking brake work? ⇨ *page 74*.
– How do I adjust the exterior mirrors? ⇨ *page 48*.
– How do I refuel my vehicle? ⇨ *page 242*.
– How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇨ *page 50*.
– Where is the windscreen washer container? ⇨ *page 246*.
– How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 259* or ⇨ *page 261*.

Breakdowns and emergencies

– How do I jump-start the vehicle? ⇨ *page 277*.
– Where can I find the warning triangle? ⇨ *page 269*.
– Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇨ *page 269*.
– Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 256*.
– Which airbags are installed in my vehicle? ⇨ *page 235*.
– Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇨ *page 278*.
– How can I release the tank flap manually? ⇨ *page 244*.

Useful functions

– How can I use the parking aid? ⇨ *page 103*.
– How do I operate the main beam assist for the headlights? ⇨ *page 46*.
– How can I drive off more easily? ⇨ *page 76, Driving off with the hold assist*.
– How can I stay in my lane more easily? ⇨ *page 92, Audi active lane assist (lane departure warning feature)*.
– How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇨ *page 97, Audi side assist (lane change assist feature)*.
– How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇨ *page 48*.
– How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇨ *page 100, Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions)*.

Using the infotainment system

– How do I switch on the infotainment system and adjust the volume? ⇨ *page 121*.
– How do I navigate through the infotainment menus? ⇨ *page 122, How to use the MMI*.
– How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇨ *page 124, MMI touch*.
– How do I use the search function on the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 129, Search function*.
– How do I operate the infotainment system by voice? ⇨ *page 133*.
– Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 21, Multifunction steering wheel plus*.
– How do I set the date and time? ⇨ *page 212*.

Communication

– How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇨ *page 142*.
– How can I charge my mobile phone battery without a cable? ⇨ *page 146, Using the Audi phone box*.
– How can I control certain apps on my smartphone via the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 210, Audi smartphone interface*.
– How can I call up information online? ⇨ *page 159, Audi connect*.
– How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇨ *page 165*.

Navigation

– What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇨ *page 170*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– How do I operate the map functions? ⇨*page 178*.
– How can I display traffic information? ⇨*page 182*.

Entertainment

– How can I listen to the radio? ⇨*page 185*.
– How can I play media? ⇨*page 200*.
– How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇨*page 194, Bluetooth audio player*.

Tips and tricks

– How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇨*page 31*.
– How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇨*page 35, Convenience open/close function*.
– How can I deactivate the passenger's airbag? ⇨*page 237*.
– How do I secure a child seat? ⇨*page 225*.
– What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇨*page 263*.
– How can I drive (more) economically? ⇨*page 67*.
– How can I see when the next service date is? ⇨*page 252*.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

View of cockpit

Controls at a glance

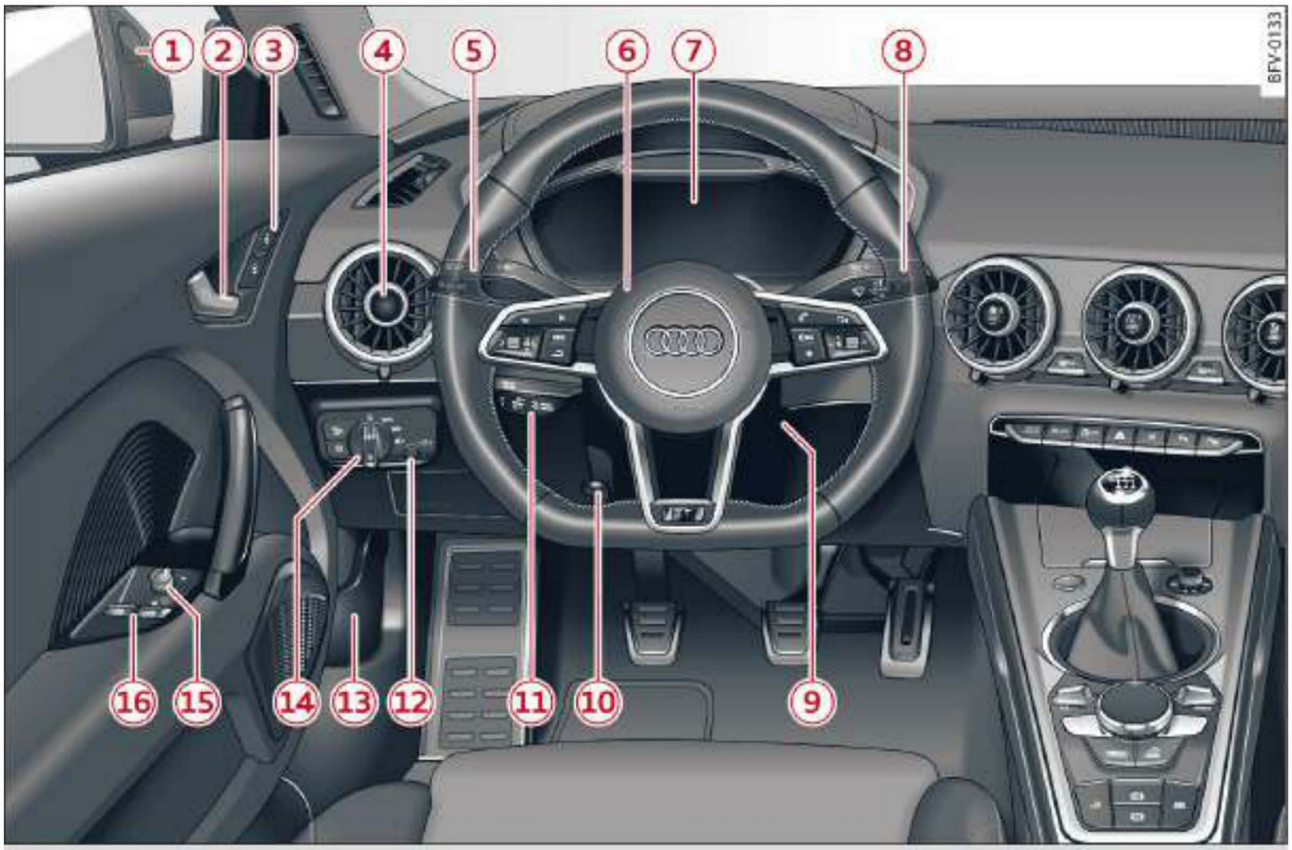


Fig. 1 Front cabin: Left side

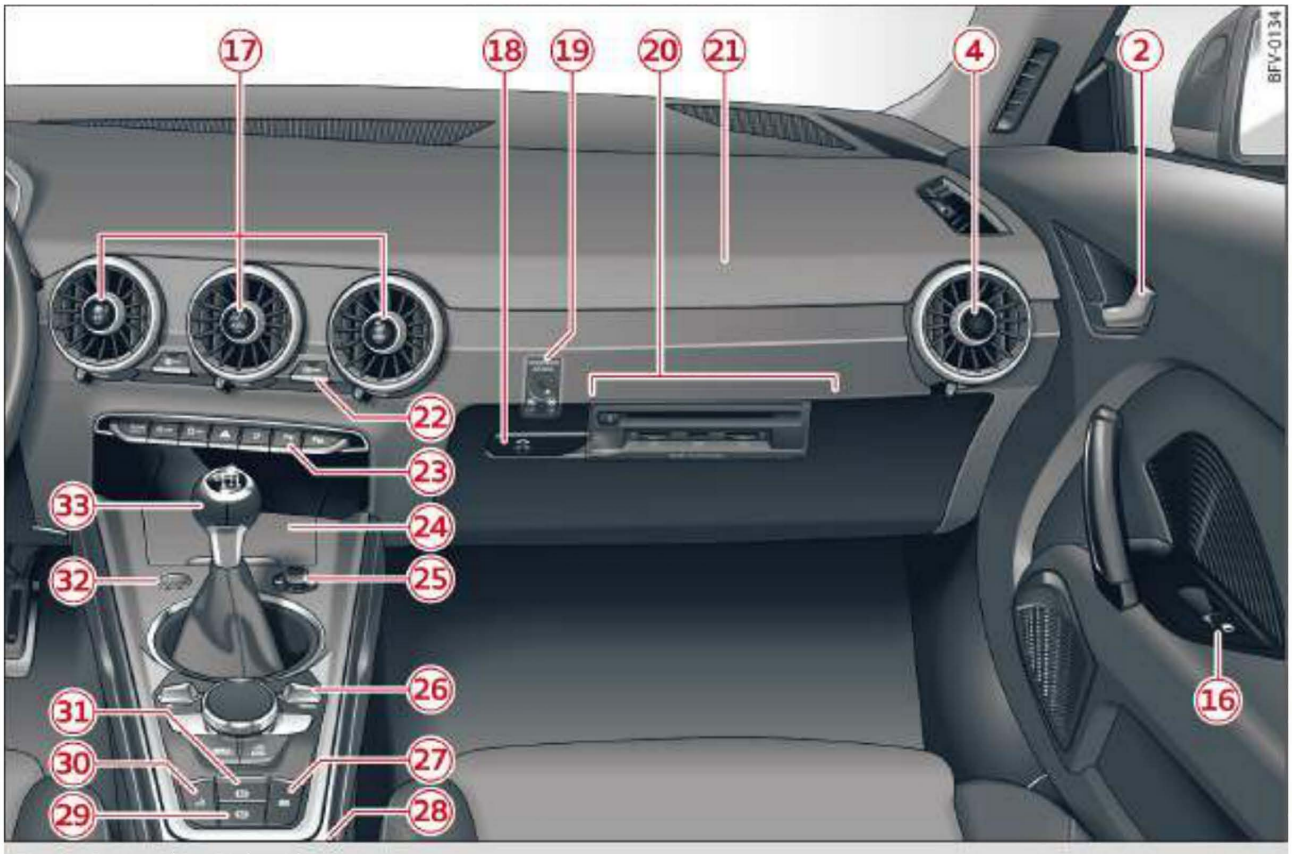


Fig. 2 Front cabin: Right side

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(1) Side assist warning lamp 97
(2) Door handle
(3) Central locking switch 31
(4) Air outlet with control for seat heating
(5) Control lever for:
– Turn signals and main beam headlights 45
– Main beam assist 46
– Active lane assist 92
(6) Multi-function steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 237
– Controls for virtual instrument cluster including driver information system, audio/video, telephone, navigation system and speech dialogue system
– Paddle levers 81
(7) Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 10
(8) Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer 50
(9) Starting the engine after a malfunction 71
(10) Adjustable steering column 68
(11) Control lever for cruise control system 86
(12) Instrument lighting 48
(13) Bonnet lock release 244
(14) Light switch 44
(15) Electric adjuster for exterior mirrors 48
(16) Electric windows 34
(17) Air outlet with control for air conditioner 60
(18) Lockable glove box
(19) Deactivating passenger's airbag . 237
(20) Drives for CD, DVD and SIM/SD cards 192
(21) Passenger's airbag 236
(22) Switch for rear window heating
(23) Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
– Drive select 100
– Start/stop system 71
– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 113
– Hazard warning lights 47
– Automatic rear spoiler 117
– Park assist 108
(24) Centre console with optional equipment:
– Storage compartment with AUX input/USB charging socket 199
– Multimedia box for mobile phone .. 198
– Audi phone box 146
(25) On/off button for infotainment system 121
(26) Infotainment control console ... 121
(27) Switch for windbreak 41
(28) Depending on equipment fitted:
– Storage compartment
– Ashtray 56
– Cup holder 57
(29) Hold assist 76
(30) Switch for opening and closing soft top 39
(31) Parking brake 74
(32) Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
– START ENGINE STOP 68
– Engine sound
(33) Depending on equipment fitted:
– Selector lever (on vehicles with S tronic gearbox) 77
– Gear lever (on vehicles with manual gearbox)

Note

– Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
– The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇨ *page 8*. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instruments and warning/indicator lamps

Instruments

Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster)

The instrument cluster is the driver's information centre.



Fig. 3 Overview of instrument cluster

① Coolant temperature gauge 10
② Driver information system 20
③ Fuel gauge 10
④ Reset button for trip recorder ... 24

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 10, Fig. 3* ① only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

Engine cold

If the LEDs are still in the left-hand range of the display, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Normal temperature

The LEDs will settle somewhere in the centre of the display once the engine has reached operating temperature. If the warning lamp ■ lights up on the infotainment display, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 14*.

CAUTION

– Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
– The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Obtain professional assistance.

Note

Diesel engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.

Fuel gauge

The gauge ③ only works when the ignition is switched on. If there is less than 7 litres of fuel in the tank, a red LED will light up and the indicator lamp ⛽ will appear ⇨ *page 18*. The LED will flash in red if the fuel level is very low. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the **Technical data** section ⇨ *page 288*.

CAUTION

Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. Unburnt fuel can then enter the exhaust system. This can lead to overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Warning and indicator lamps

Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages on the display can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the display tab for warning/indicator lamps and messages ⇨ *page 20*. If several malfunctions have occurred, you can use the thumbwheel to scroll through them on the display.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

Overview

When you switch on the ignition, some of the warning and indicator lamps light up briefly to show that the associated systems are working properly. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these warning/indicator lamps does not light up, there is a fault in the associated system.

Red warning lamps

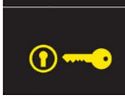
	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 14*
	Alternator ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine stopped while vehicle is moving ⇨ *page 15*
	Seat belt ⇨ *page 15*
	Electro-mechanical power steering ✓ ⇨ *page 116*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 15*
	Central warning/indicator lamp ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 15*
	Gearbox malfunction ⇨ *page 83*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 117*

Yellow indicator lamps

	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
OFF	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
ABS	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 16*
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*
	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 258* or ⇨ *page 260*
TPMS	Tyre pressure ⇨ *page 258* or ⇨ *page 260*

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Engine management ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine management system (diesel engines) ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Emission control system ⇨ *page 17*
	Diesel particulate filter* ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine speed governing ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 18*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 18*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 15*
	Fuel tank system ⇨ *page 18*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 18*
	Windscreen wipers ⇨ *page 18*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 70*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 29*
	Bulb monitor* ⇨ *page 18*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 19*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 19*
	Light sensor/rain sensor* ⇨ *page 19*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 83*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 15*

	Central warning/indicator lamp ⇨ *page 15*
	Electro-mechanical power steering ✓ ⇨ *page 116*
	Suspension control* ⇨ *page 19*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 117*

Further indicator lamps

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 19*
	Cruise control system* ⇨ *page 86*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 93*
	Hold assist* ⇨ *page 76*
	Speed limiter* ⇨ *page 88*
	Start/stop system* ⇨ *page 71*
	Start/stop system* ⇨ *page 71*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 71*
	Park assist* ⇨ *page 108*
	Park assist* ⇨ *page 108*
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 93*
	Audi side assist* ⇨ *page 99*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 83*
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 13*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Camera-based traffic sign recognition* ⇨ *page 90*
Km/h	Speed warning function* ⇨ *page 86*
LIM	Speed limiter* ⇨ *page 88*
AUTO	Main beam assist* ⇨ *page 46*
	Main beam headlights ⇨ *page 45*, ⇨ *page 46*

Brake system

If the warning lamp lights up, there is a fault in the brake system.

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.

Warning! Brake servo inoperative

You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails. Obtain professional assistance.

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

If the ABS indicator lamp and ESC indicator lamp light up together with the brake warning lamp and this driver message appears, the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed ⇨ ⚠.

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. Please contact workshop

– If the warning lamp and the message appear **after you switch on the ignition when the vehicle is stationary**, please check whether you can release the parking brake. If the parking brake cannot be released you should obtain professional assistance. If the parking brake can be released but the message still appears, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.
– If the warning lamp and the message appear **while driving**, there may be a malfunction in the parking brake auto release or the emergency brake functions. You may not be able to apply or release the parking brake. Do not park the car on a gradient. Obtain professional assistance.

WARNING

– Before opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level, observe the warning information on ⇨ *page 244, Working on components in the engine compartment*.
– If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low - this may cause an increased accident risk. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
– If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp and the ESC indicator lamp, this can mean that the control function of the ESC/ABS is not working. Input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the tail of the vehicle to skid sideways. Drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Electro-mechanical parking brake

The warning lamp lights up when the parking brake is applied.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the warning lamp flashes and the message appears, the brake may not be strong enough to hold the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle can roll away, even on a gentle slope.

Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and simultaneously press the button (alternatively, use the auto release function ⇨ *page 75, Moving off*).

Parking brake: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Hold assist: only available when door is closed and engine is running

If this message appears, make sure that the door is closed, the seat belt is buckled and the engine is running.

Hold assist: unavailable

If this message appears, the system requirements have not been met.

Please release parking brake

If this message appears, release the parking brake.

Parking brake auto release: unavailable

If this message appears, press the brake pedal and then release the parking brake.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the warning lamp flashes and the message appears, the brake may not be strong enough to hold the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle can roll away, even on a gentle slope.

Parking brake is applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal and then release the parking brake as necessary.

Note

For further information on the parking brake refer to ⇨ *page 74*.

Cooling system

Switch off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 249*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇨ *page 249*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes until the warning lamp goes out.

– Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Obtain professional assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
– The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous place. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 244, Working on components in the engine compartment*.

CAUTION

Do not drive on if the warning lamp lights up; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage.

Engine oil pressure

Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 247*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨ *page 247*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

– If the engine oil level is OK and the warning lamp is flashing, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

The oil pressure warning lamp is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

Alternator/vehicle battery

Electrical system: fault. Battery is not being charged

There is an alternator fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. However, you should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery. If the battery charge is insufficient, obtain professional assistance.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

Starting reliability may be impaired.

If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.

If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine stopped while vehicle is moving

Engine stopped: brake servo and power steering not possible

There is a malfunction in the engine or fuel supply system.

Greater strength is required to steer and brake the vehicle if the engine stops while the vehicle is coasting. Carefully try to bring the coasting vehicle safely to a standstill out of the way of moving traffic. Obtain professional assistance.

WARNING

Greater strength is required to brake the vehicle if the engine stops while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident! Greater strength will be required to steer the vehicle unless the power steering is still providing assistance.

The power steering may still be available if the vehicle is still coasting with the ignition switched on (and the battery charge is sufficient).

Seat belt

The warning lamp lights up and does not go out until the driver's and passenger's* seat belts have been fastened. When the vehicle has gathered speed you will also hear a warning chime.

Note

For further information on the seat belts ⇨ *page 230*.

Steering lock

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on.

Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock - risk of accident!

Central warning/indicator lamp

If the warning lamp or indicator lamp lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Engine start system

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do **not** switch off the ignition; otherwise you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the engine start system.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) and anti-lock brake system

If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC or traction control system (ASR) is intervening.

If the indicator lamp lights up, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. In this case, the ESC can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

Stabilisation control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability

If the indicator lamp lights up, the ESC sport mode has been activated via the OFF button ⇨ *page 114*. You can switch the ESC system back on by pressing the OFF button again.

Stabilisation control (ESC): switched off. Warning! Restricted stability

If the indicator lamp lights up, the ESC system has been partially or completely switched off via the OFF button ⇨ *page 114*. In addition, **ESC OFF** will appear. You can switch the ESC system back on by pressing the OFF button again.

The system is activated when you switch on the ignition. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

Stabilisation control (ESC): fault! See owner's manual

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

ABS: fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp and the ABS indicator lamp light up and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the anti-lock brake system or electronic differential lock. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp and the ESC indicator lamp, this can mean that the control function of the ESC/ABS is not working. Input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Note

For more information about the ESC and ABS systems, refer to ⇨ *page 113*.

Brake pads

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the brake pads checked.

Safety systems

The indicator lamp monitors the safety systems and the pedestrian protection system.

Safety system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes, there is a malfunction in one of the safety systems.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pedestrian protection system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes and the bonnet is in a raised position, the pedestrian protection system has been triggered. Please refer to ⇨ *page 228, Pedestrian protection system*.

WARNING

Have the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise they may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Engine management

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a fault in the engine management system.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the engine checked.

Engine management (diesel engine)

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

If the indicator lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on, the glow plugs are preheating.

If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is moving, there is a fault in the engine management system.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Emission control system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes, a fault has occurred which can reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine and diesel particulate filter

Particulate filter: fault. See owner's manual

The diesel particulate filter requires regeneration. You can assist the self-cleaning function of the filter by driving as follows:

Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h for about 15 minutes in 4th or 5th gear, or with the selector lever in position S on vehicles with automatic gearbox. Keep the engine speed at about 2000 rpm. As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off. The indicator lamp will go out once the cleaning process has been completed successfully.

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommended driving speed must never lead to the driver disregarding the traffic regulations.

Note

For more information about the diesel particulate filter, refer to ⇨ *page 244*.

Engine speed governing

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed governing

Max. engine speed: XXXX rpm

The engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the driver information system. This protects the engine from overheating.

The rev limiter is deactivated as soon as the engine temperature is no longer within the critical range and you have taken your foot off the accelerator.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine oil level (min.)

Please check oil level

You can continue driving for the time being but you should check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 247*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨ *page 247*.
– If the engine oil level is normal but the indicator lamp stays on, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and avoid high engine speeds.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Oil level sensor: oil change required. Please contact workshop

The engine oil level is too high.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

Please observe the procedure described in the Owner's Manual ⇨ *page 247, Checking and topping up the engine oil level*.

Fuel tank system (petrol/diesel)

Please refuel

When the indicator lamp lights up for the first time and the message appears, there are still about 7 litres of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Drive to a filling station without delay.

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the tank system.

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine: Water may have collected in the fuel filter ⇨ (!).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

If poor-quality diesel fuel is used, it may be necessary to have the water separator[1)] on the fuel filter drained. Risk of engine damage! Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

For the sake of the environment

Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.

Note

For more information about filling the tank, refer to ⇨ *page 242*.

Washer fluid level

Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 252*.

Windscreen wipers

Windscreen wipers: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the windscreen wipers.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Bulb monitor

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

Have the bulb replaced without delay. ▶

1) This equipment is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle lights: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a fault with the headlights or light switch. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.
– Incorrect handling of the high-voltage element of xenon gas-discharge bulbs* can have potentially fatal consequences.

Headlight range control

Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the adaptive light. The dipped beam headlights will still be working normally.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Light sensor / rain sensor

Applies to: vehicles with light sensor/rain sensor

Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action.

For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the light switch is set to the **AUTO** position. You can still switch the lights on and off in the normal way with the light switch. You can also continue to use all the other wiper functions that do not use the rain sensor.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

There is a malfunction in the suspension control system.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Turn signals

If the indicator lamp or flashes, the turn signals are on. If both indicator lamps flash, the hazard warning lights are on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver information system

Overview

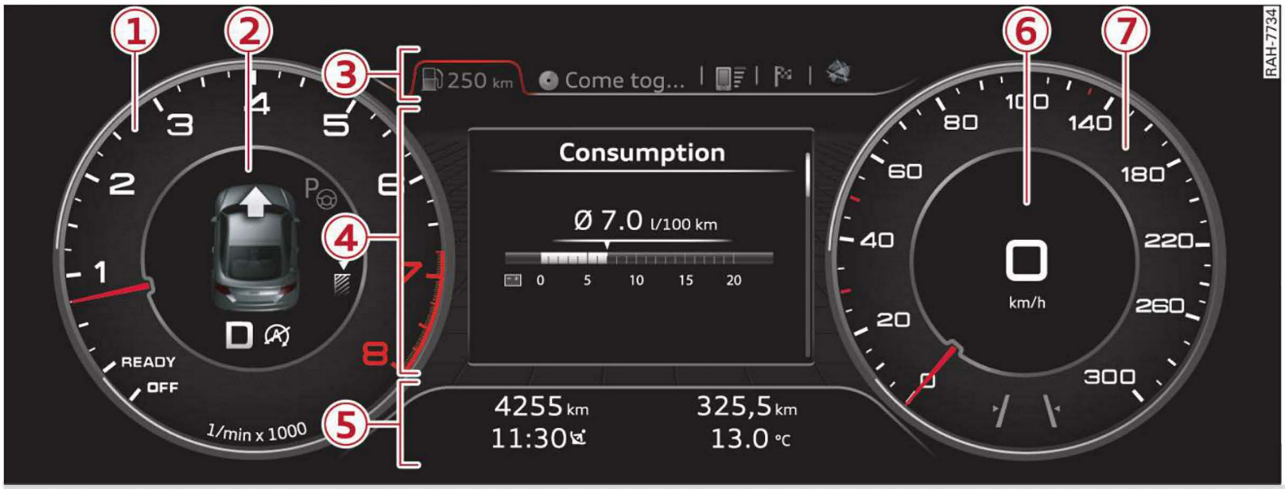


Fig. 4 Driver information system: Classic view

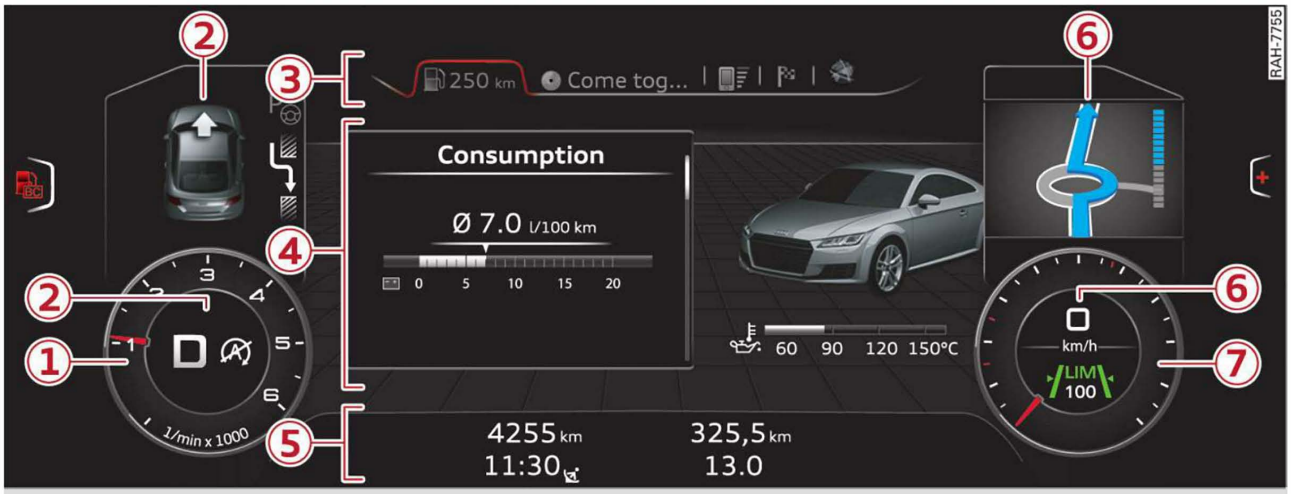


Fig. 5 Driver information system: Extended view

The driver information system displays various components:

1. Rev counter
2. Additional display on left (two separate sections in extended view)
3. Tab area
4. Central area
5. Status line (displayed on one or two lines)
6. Speedometer/additional display on right (two separate sections in extended view)
7. Speedometer/convenience display

On certain models, the driver information display includes a sport view which can be activated while the vehicle is stationary ⇨ *page 25*.

WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

Note

– You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.
– At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

Multi-function steering wheel plus

Overview

Applies to vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus

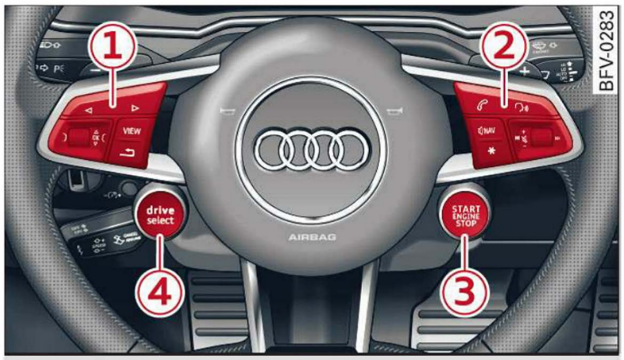


Fig. 6 Steering wheel

① Controls for the virtual instrument cluster 21
② Direct selection buttons 23
③ Applies to TT RS: START ENGINE STOP button . . . 68
④ Applies to TT RS: Audi drive select 100

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

Applies to vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus

The multi-function steering wheel plus has 14 buttons. You can use it to control the driver information system and MMI functions, adjust the volume and switch the speech dialogue system* on/off.*

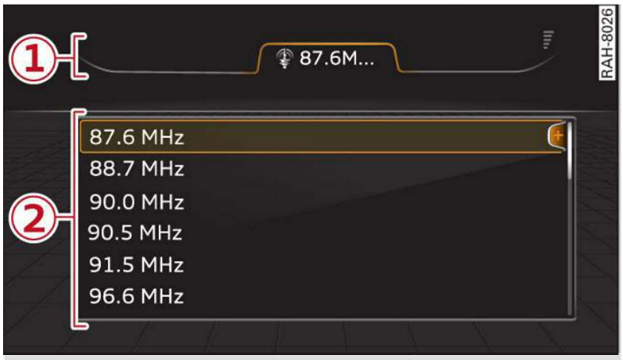


Fig. 7 Infotainment display view

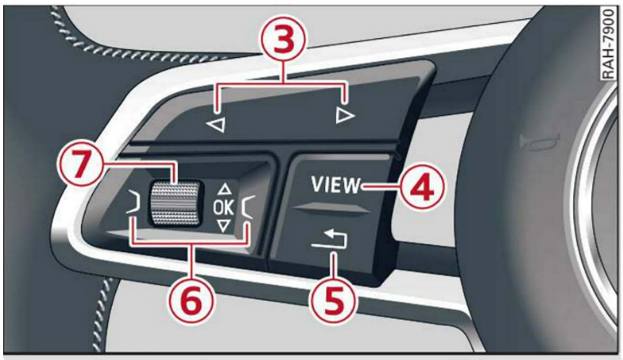


Fig. 8 Multi-function steering wheel (left side)

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system shows information ② in several display tabs ①.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following tabs are available:

1st tab	Car ⇨ *page 25*
2nd tab[a)]	Warnings
3rd tab	Radio ⇨ *page 185* Media ⇨ *page 191*
4th tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 141*

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5th tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 169* Map* ⇨ *page 178*
6th tab[b)]	Sound ⇨ *page 212* Audi connect* ⇨ *page 159* Settings ⇨ *page 212*

a) This tab is only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed or if the relevant system is switched on.

b) The tab contents depend on which menu you used last.

③ ◁ ▷ button

– **To switch between tabs**: Press the left/right side of the ◁ ▷ button (e.g. to call up radio functions).

④ VIEW button

To change views: Press the VIEW button to switch from the classic view ⇨ *page 20, Fig. 4* to the extended view ⇨ *page 20, Fig. 5*.

⑤ ⮌ button

To return to the previous function level.

⑥ Control buttons ❩ and ❨

To call up/close the selection menu or options menu ⇨ *page 22*.

⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **To select a function in a menu/list**: Scroll the left thumbwheel to the desired function in a menu or list (e.g. to select a radio station or lap times*).
– **To confirm your selection**: Press the left thumbwheel (e.g. to tune to the radio station).
– **To zoom in/out of the map**: When a map is shown on the display, scroll the left thumbwheel up/down to make the map scale larger or smaller.

Control buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus

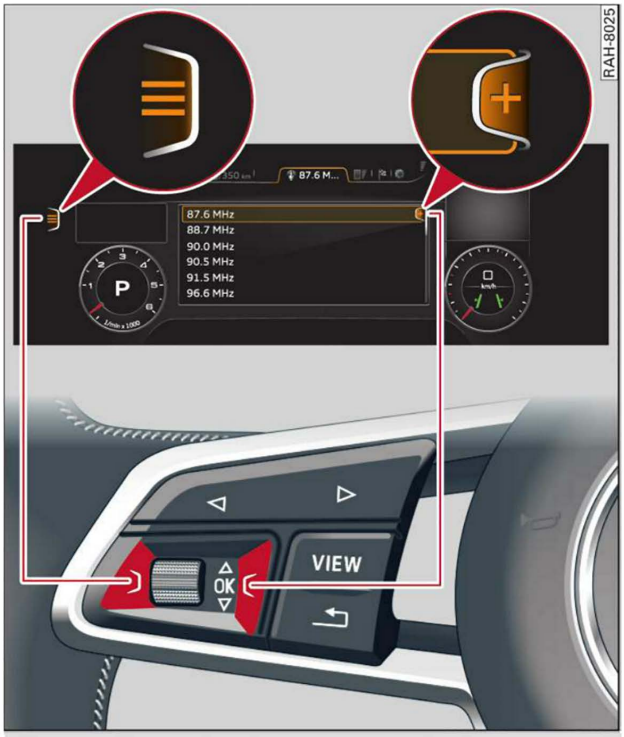


Fig. 9 Calling up the selection menu and options menu

Left control button

– **To call up/close the selection menu**: Press the left control button ⇨ *Fig. 9* on the steering wheel. You can now use the left thumbwheel to select and confirm a function in the selection menu (e.g. to select a new waveband).

Right control button

– **To call up/close the options menu**: Press the right control button ⇨ *Fig. 9* on the steering wheel. You can now use the left thumbwheel in the options menu to select context-sensitive functions or change certain settings (e.g. sound settings).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Direct selection buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function steering wheel plus

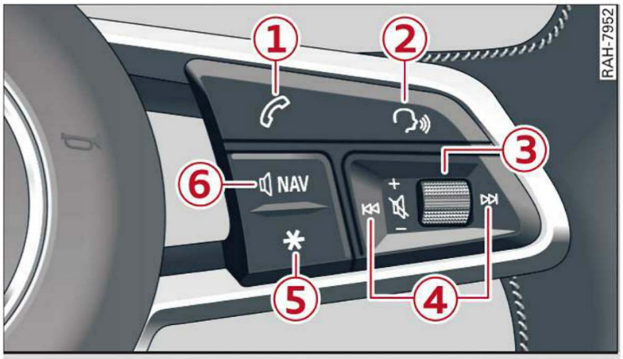


Fig. 10 Right side of multi-function steering wheel

① button

– **To answer a call**: Press the button when there is an incoming call.
– **To end a call**: Press the button during a call.
– **To display the call list**: Press the button while no calls are active and there are no incoming calls.

② button

– **To switch on the speech dialogue system**: Briefly press the button. Give a spoken command after the **beep** signal.
– **To switch off the speech dialogue system**: Press and hold the button for several seconds. **Or**: Say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the speech dialogue system, refer to ⇨ *page 133, Speech dialogue system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

– **Volume up/down**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down.
– **Mute/pause**: Press the right thumbwheel. **Or**: Scroll the right thumbwheel down.
– **Unmute/resume**: Press the right thumbwheel. **Or**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up.

④ button

– **To select the previous/next track or station**: Press the or button.
– **To fast forward/rewind an audio file**: Press and hold the or button until the desired playing position has been reached.

⑤ button

– **To call up the user-assigned function**: Press the button.
– **To check which function is assigned**: Press and hold the button.
– **To change the assigned function**: Select the first tab > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button**.

⑥ button

– **To have the last navigation cue repeated**: Press the button while route guidance is active.
– **To adjust the volume of the navigation cues**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down during route guidance while a navigation cue is being spoken.

Multi-function steering wheel

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

The multi-function steering wheel has four buttons. You can use it to control the driver information system and MMI functions and adjust the volume.



Fig. 11 Multi-function steering wheel (standard version)

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

① How to use the driver information system

The driver information system shows information ② in several display tabs ① ⇨ *page 21, Fig. 7*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following tabs are available:

1st tab	Car ⇨ *page 25*
2nd tab[a)]	Warnings
3rd tab	Radio ⇨ *page 185* Media ⇨ *page 191*
4th tab[b)]	Sound ⇨ *page 212* Settings ⇨ *page 212*

a) This tab is only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed or if the relevant system is switched on.

b) The tab contents depend on which menu you used last.

– **To switch between tabs**: Press the MODE button on the multi-function steering wheel until the desired tab is displayed.
– **To select a function in a menu/list**: Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel to the desired function.
– **To confirm the selection**: Press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel to confirm your selection.
– **To scroll within the lists**: Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel rapidly to scroll within the lists.

(2) VIEW button

– **To change views**: Press the VIEW button to switch from the classic view ⇨ *page 20, Fig. 4* to the extended view ⇨ *page 20, Fig. 5*.

(3) Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a traffic announcement) directly while it is being played.

– **Volume up/down**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down.
– **Mute/pause**: Scroll the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: Press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmute/resume**: Scroll the right thumbwheel upwards. **Or**: Press the right thumbwheel.

Rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute.

The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Shift light display in the rev counter

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit and shift light display

The shift light display is only visible in the sport view* ⇨ *page 25* when shifting gears in tiptronic mode. Green, yellow and red zones are displayed in the high-rev area of the dial. The entire rev counter flashes in red at engine speeds near the limit. Remember to shift to the next gear in good time.

CAUTION

The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise engine noise.

Mileage recorder

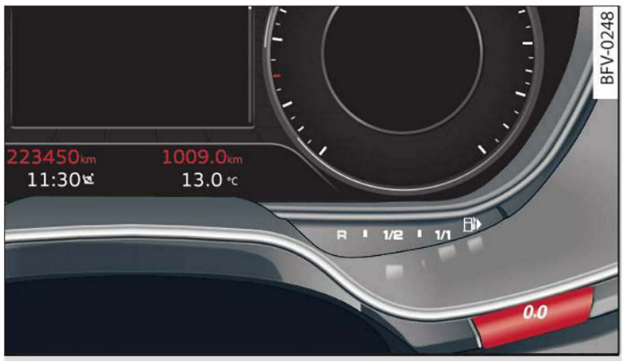


Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: Mileage recorder and reset button

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip recorder/odometer

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys.

The trip recorder can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button [O.O] ⇨ *Fig. 12*.

The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instruments, the letters **DEF** appear in the trip recorder display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible.

On-board computer

You can call up the following information sequentially on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 20, Fig. 4* ④:

– Time & date ⇨ *page 212*
– Average consumption
– Fuel range
– Single journey memory summary
– Total journey memory summary

The single journey memory processes the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the single journey memory, the total journey memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average fuel consumption from the single journey memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving fuel using one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: Electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery (recuperation) if the vehicle is travelling downhill or coasting in gear (overrun). In this case, the bar will move towards the symbol.
– **Coasting mode*** ⇨ *page 82*.

Note

The date, time and display format can be changed via the infotainment system.

Sport view

Applies to: vehicles with boost pressure display and engine oil temperature display



Fig. 13 Driver information system: Sport view

Always select the desired view in the driver information system before starting a journey, because the display functions will not be available for a few seconds. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Layout**.
▸ Move the cursor (red frame) to select the desired setting.

The driver information system displays various components.

① Tab area
② Rev counter including digital speedometer and mileage recorders
③ Secondary display (two separate sections in extended view)
④ Boost pressure display
⑤ Engine oil temperature display
⑥ Status line
⑦ Function area (central area shifted to left)

Boost pressure display

The current boost level of the engine (that is the current charge pressure) is indicated by a bar which moves from left to right.

Engine oil temperature gauge

The display shows --- °C at low engine oil temperatures.

The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80 ℃ and 120 ℃. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase above this value. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps ■ ⇨*page 14* or  ⇨*page 18* in the display do not start flashing.

Note

– You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system.
– When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.
– At temperatures below +5 °C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇨ ⚠ *in Overview on page 20*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Doors and windows

Central locking system

Description

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked via the central locking system. You can use any of the following:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 29*
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 30*
– Lock on driver's door ⇨ *page 32*
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 31*

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h.

The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the unlock button in the central locking switch is pressed or one of the inside door handles is pulled. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 31*.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Unlocking one side of the vehicle only

When you lock the vehicle, the central locking system will lock the doors and the boot lid. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the driver's door *only*, or all the locks on the vehicle, depending on the setting you have selected on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 31*.

Turn signals

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash, one of the doors or the boot lid is still open or the ignition is still on.

Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when the remote control key is not in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

– When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the doors.
– The boot lid will be released again automatically if the convenience key* that was last in use is detected inside the boot when the boot lid is closed.
– If the convenience key* that was last in use is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Note

– Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
– When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop.

Set of keys

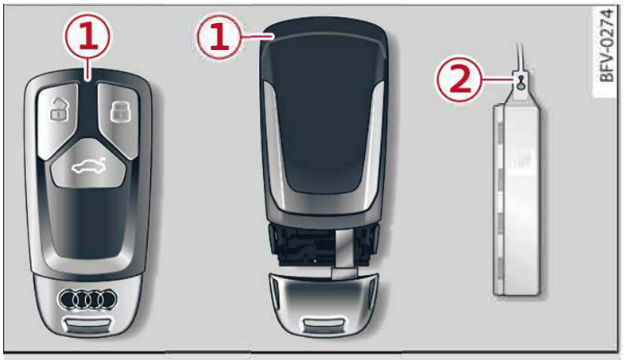


Fig. 14 Keys supplied with the vehicle

① Remote control key with integrated emergency key

The remote control key can be used to lock and unlock the car. An emergency key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 28*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

② Key fob with vehicle code*

You can reveal the vehicle code* on the key fob by rubbing off the coating. It is not, however, relevant for this vehicle.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for *that* key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you. It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Number of keys

You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle using the infotainment system. To do so, select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Car information**. This feature enables used car buyers to make sure they have received all of the keys.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the engine with the key if there is another remote control key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

Data stored on remote control key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your remote control key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required. This also applies to vehicles with convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use the same car regularly, it is a good idea for each person to have his or her "own" remote control key. When you switch off the ignition or lock the vehicle, your personal settings for the following convenience features are stored and assigned to the remote control key:

– Air conditioner
– Parking aid*
– Active lane assist*
– Side assist*
– Drive select

The stored settings are then recalled automatically the next time the vehicle is unlocked, the doors are opened or the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.

Note

The function of the remote control key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.

Removing the emergency key

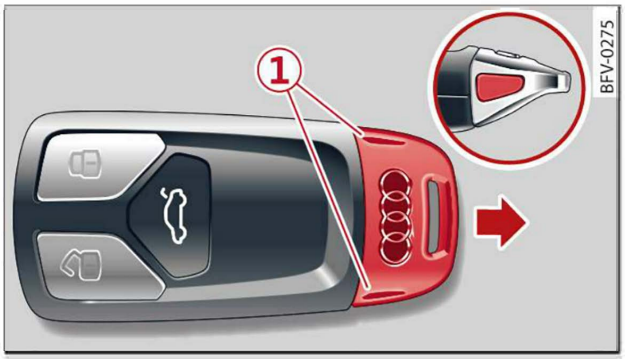


Fig. 15 Remote control key: Removing the emergency key

▸ Press the release catches ① ⇨ *Fig. 15* and pull the emergency key out of the remote control key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

– activate/deactivate* the front airbag on the passenger's side ⇨ *page 237*.
– lock/unlock the glove box.
– lock/unlock the vehicle manually ⇨ *page 32*.
– lock the doors manually ⇨ *page 32*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LED and battery in remote control key

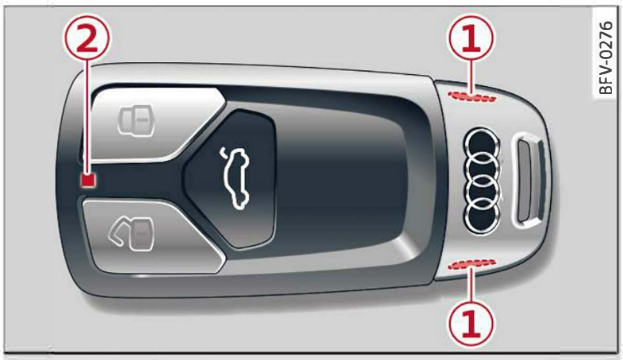


Fig. 16 Remote control key: Removing battery carrier

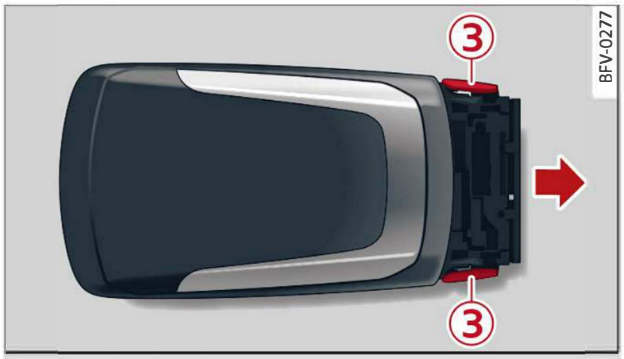


Fig. 17 Remote control key (rear): Removing battery carrier

LED on remote control key

The LED (2) lights up when you press the buttons.

- The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- If the LED does not flash, the battery in the remote control key is flat. In addition, the indicator lamp will light up and the message **Remote control key: please change key battery** will appear. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the battery for the remote control key

- Press the release catches (1) ⇨ *Fig. 16* and take out the emergency key.
- Press the release catches (3) ⇨ *Fig. 17* on the battery carrier and at the same time pull the battery carrier out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing downwards.
- Slide the battery carrier carefully into the remote control key.
- Insert the emergency key.

For the sake of the environment

Used batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste.

Note

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one in the remote control key.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle by remote control

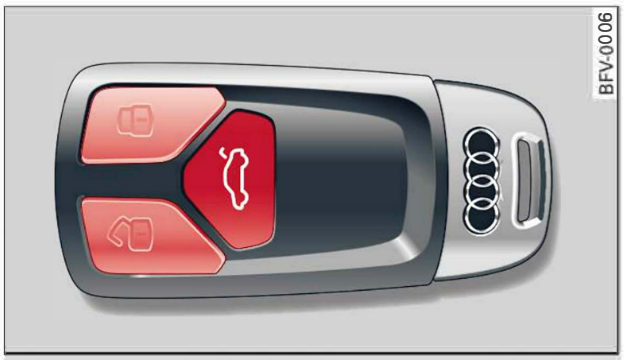


Fig. 18 Remote control key: Buttons

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *Fig. 18*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once** ⇨ ⚠ *in Anti-theft alarm system on page 33*.
- To open the boot lid, press the button for at least one second.

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within 45 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

The system will unlock either all the doors or only the driver's door, depending on the settings you have chosen on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 31*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

On vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system*, do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

– Do not use the remote control key when the vehicle is out of sight.
– On vehicles with the convenience key* the selector lever must be in P, otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and the boot lid can be locked and unlocked without handling the remote control key.

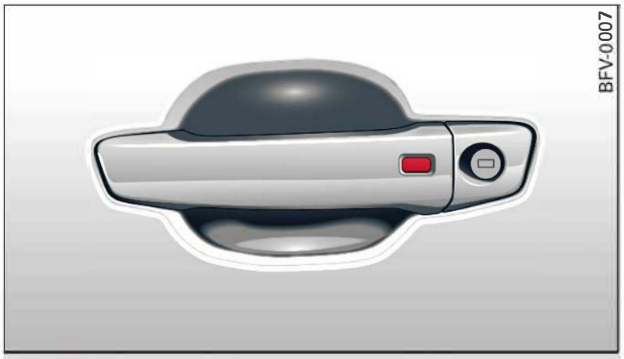


Fig. 19 Door handle: Sensor

Unlocking the vehicle

- Take hold of the door handle. The door will be unlocked automatically.
- To open the door, pull the door handle.

Locking the vehicle

- Move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox); otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *Fig. 19*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not take hold of the door handle while doing so.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from any of the doors. The remote control key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the door handle. It does not matter where you carry the key, for instance whether it is in your jacket pocket or in a briefcase.

The locking function may be affected if you grasp the door handle while the vehicle is being locked.

Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

The system will unlock either all the doors or only one of the doors, depending on the settings you have chosen on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 31*.

WARNING

On vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system*, do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

Please note the following points if the vehicle is left parked for long periods:
– To save electrical power, the proximity sensors are switched off after a few days. You will then need to pull the door handle once to unlock the vehicle, and a second time to open it.
– To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged and thus maintain the vehicle's starting ability for as long as possible, the power management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle with this convenience function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Central locking switch



Fig. 20 Driver's door: Central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button.

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

– The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the *outside* (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
– The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
– In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

⚠ WARNING

– The central locking switch is still operative when the ignition is switched off and will automatically lock the entire vehicle when the 🔒 button is pressed.
– The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.
– Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk. Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle.

Note

The doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 15 km/h (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 27*. You can unlock the vehicle again via the 🔓 button in the central locking switch.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

You can use the infotainment system to select which doors are unlocked by the central locking system.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings**.

Unlock doors - You can select whether **all** doors or only the **driver**'s door are unlocked by the central locking system. The boot lid will also be unlocked if you select **all**. If you select **driver** on vehicles with convenience key*, only one door will be unlocked (whichever door you grip by the handle).

When the **driver** setting is activated, you can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the 🔓 button on the remote control key twice.

Fold mirrors* - If you select **on**, the exterior mirrors will be folded in automatically when you press the 🔓 button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* on the door handle.

Lock when driving[1)] - Select **on** if you want the vehicle to be locked automatically when you are driving. This will lock all the doors and the boot lid.

Confirmation tone[1)] - If you select **on**, an acoustic signal will be given when you lock the vehicle.

[1)] This function is not available on all export versions.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking and unlocking the doors manually

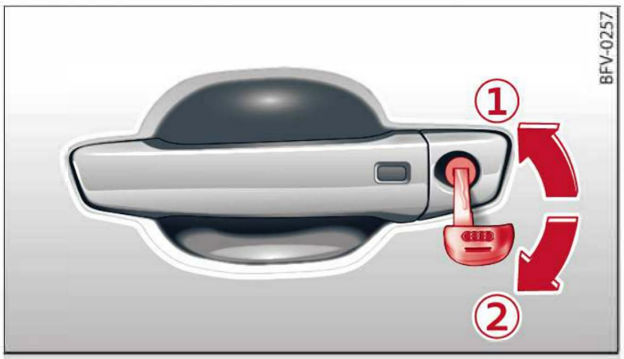


Fig. 21 Driver's door lock

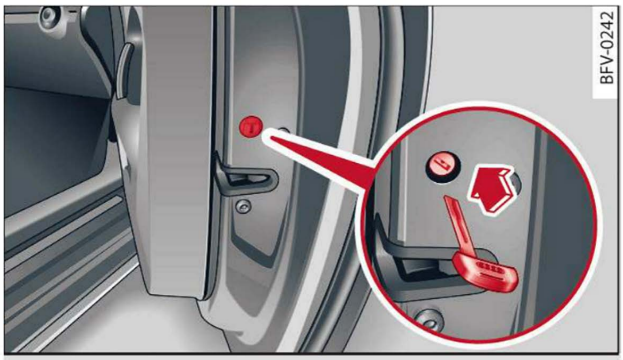


Fig. 22 Passenger's door: Locking manually

Should the central locking system fail to work, the doors must be locked/unlocked separately using the emergency key.

Locking and unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- Remove the emergency key ⇨ *page 28*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position ① ⇨ *Fig. 21*.
- To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox) and turn the key to the lock position ② **once** ⇨ ⚠.

Locking the passenger's door with the emergency key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the passenger's door. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Remove the emergency key ⇨ *page 28*.
- Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *Fig. 22*.
- Insert the key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the right* side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).

Once the passenger's door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

⚠ WARNING

On vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system*, do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system



Fig. 23 End face of (open) driver's door: Button for interior monitor/tow-away protection

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when you lock the vehicle in the usual way and is switched off again when you unlock the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system comprises the following components:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the bonnet, the boot lid or any of the doors are forced open. The alarm system is armed whenever the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle by turning the key in the driver's door lock, you should switch on the ignition within 15 seconds to prevent the alarm from being triggered. On some export versions, the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

alarm is triggered immediately when you open a door.

To deactivate the alarm, switch on the ignition or press the button on the remote control key.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered if movements are detected in the interior (e.g. by animals) or if the vehicle's inclination is changed (e.g. during transport). You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by switching off the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection. To do so, proceed as follows:

- Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 23*. The LED in the button will light up.
- If you now lock the vehicle, the interior monitor and tow-away protection will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

Safelock[1)]

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the infotainment display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism* will be activated. You can switch off the safelock mechanism* by using one of the following options:

- Press the button on the remote control key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds** (applies to vehicles with convenience key). Or:
- Turn the emergency key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**.

The alarm is triggered if you switch off the safelock mechanism* and a door handle is then operated. To deactivate the alarm, switch on the ignition or press the button on the remote control key.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against theft.

Note

The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows are closed.

Boot lid

Opening and closing the boot lid

Opening boot lid

- To open the boot lid, press the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or:
- Pull the boot lid up.

Closing boot lid

- Pull down the boot lid and let it drop into the latch ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving - this could result in an accident. ▶

1) This function is not available on all export versions/equipment versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn into the interior.

Note

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

Releasing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.

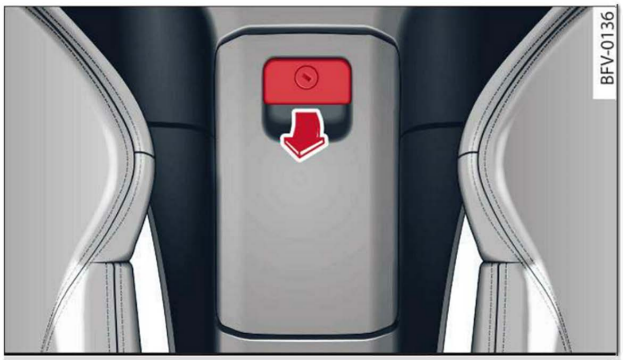


Fig. 24 Storage compartment between the backrests



Fig. 25 Unlocking lever for manual release

- Pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ *Fig. 24* and open the lid.
- Take the handle out of its retainer.
- Pull the handle in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 25*.

WARNING

The manual release lever for the boot lid must NOT be pulled while the vehicle is moving.

Electric windows

Controls

The driver can operate all the electric windows.

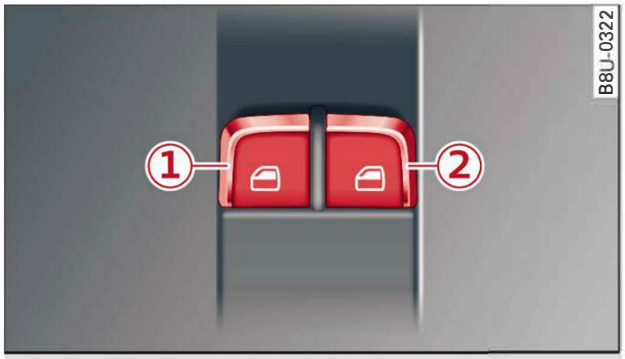


Fig. 26 Driver's door: Controls for electric windows

All electric windows have two-stage switches:

Opening/closing the windows

- Press/pull the switch briefly to the second stop: the window will automatically open/close all the way. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

Switches for electric windows

① Left window
② Right window

WARNING

– Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the passenger's door is opened.
– Always be careful when closing the windows. Careless use of the electric windows can cause severe injuries.
– When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that nobody is inside the vehicle, ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

as the windows cannot be opened from the inside in an emergency.

Note

– The windows can be operated for about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the passenger's door is opened.
– When the doors are opened, or while the soft top is being opened or closed, the windows are automatically opened about 10 mm.

Convenience open/close function

All the windows can be opened or closed at the same time.

Convenience open function

▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all the windows have reached the desired position.

Convenience close function

▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all windows are closed ⇨ ⚠, or

Convenience close function with convenience key*

▸ Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle until all the windows and the soft top* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

Adjusting settings for convenience open function via infotainment system

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings**.

If you wish to use the convenience open function for the windows, set **Long press to open windows** to **on**.

WARNING

– Take care when closing the windows and the soft top*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
– For safety reasons, you should only use the remote control key to open and close the windows and soft top* when you are at least 2 metres away from the vehicle. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the soft top* when pressing the button to close them. The windows and soft top stop moving as soon as the button is released.

What to do after a malfunction

You can reactivate the one-touch open and close function if it fails to operate.

▸ Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.
▸ Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 27 Garage door opener: Examples of various devices which can be activated

The garage door opener (HomeLink) allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electric devices by means of control buttons inside your car. It comprises three buttons, integrated in the operating unit above the interior mirror in the headliner, ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

which perform the functions of up to three hand-held transmitters.

To operate the desired systems with the garage door opener, you first need to program the buttons in the operating unit.

WARNING

When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.

Note

– For security reasons we recommend that you delete the programming of the buttons prior to selling your vehicle.
– For more information about HomeLink, please see **www.homelink.com**.

Controls

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

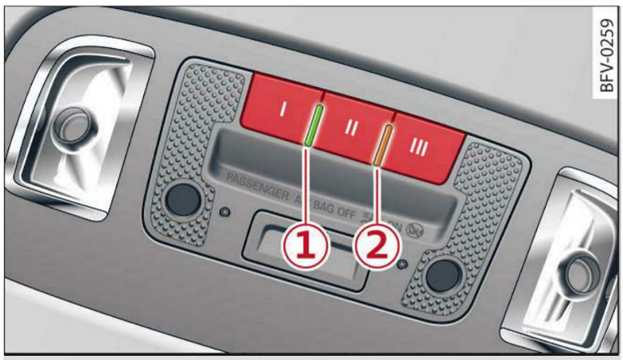


Fig. 28 Operating unit above the interior mirror

Important: The button in the operating unit must be programmed ⇨ *page 36* and the vehicle must be within range of the garage door or other system you wish to operate.

- ▸ To open the garage door, press the button. The green LED (1) will light up or flash.
- ▸ To close the garage door, press the button again.

Note

When opening/closing the garage door, do not keep the button pressed for more than 20 seconds; otherwise the garage door opener will switch to the programming mode.

Programming the transmitter

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

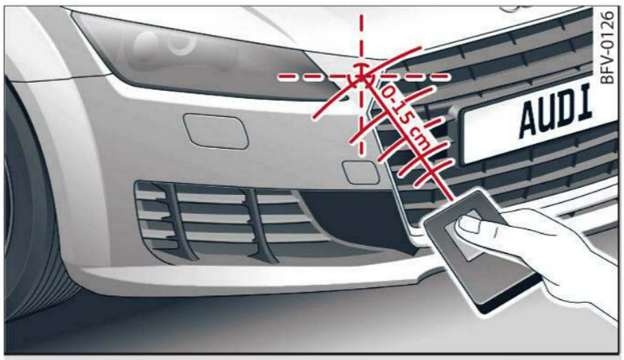


Fig. 29 Distance between radiator grille and hand-held transmitter

Programming a button: Stage 1 (at the operating unit)

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold down the two outer buttons on the operating unit ⇨ *page 36, Fig. 28* until the yellow LED (2) goes out and the green LED (1) flashes. This procedure will delete the standard factory settings and does **not** need to be repeated when programming the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the particular button in the operating unit that you would like to program.
4. Wait until the yellow LED (2) flashes. The programming mode is then activated for 5 minutes.
5. Step in front of your vehicle with the original hand-held transmitter for the system you wish to assign to the button in the operating unit.

Programming a button: Stage 2 (at the radiator grille)

6. Hold the hand-held transmitter in front of your car's radiator grille ⇨ *Fig. 29*.
7. Now press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter until the turn signals on your vehicle start to flash. This can take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the hazard lights flash three times, the button has been programmed successfully. If the hazard lights flash once only, the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

programming operation has failed or the five minute programming period has expired. Repeat the programming procedure starting with the 3rd step, or try holding the transmitter nearer or further away from the radiator grille.

9. If the garage door or other system still fails to be activated using the buttons in the operating unit after programming is completed, it is possible that the system might be working with a rolling code instead of the normal fixed security code. If this is the case, a **rolling code programming** is required in addition to the steps described above ⇨ *page 37*.

Follow the instructions above to program the other two buttons. Start with the 3rd step.

Erasing the button programming

Programmed buttons can only be erased all at once; it is not possible to erase them individually. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Press and hold down the two outer buttons on the operating unit until the yellow LED (2) goes out and the green LED (1) flashes.

Reprogramming the buttons

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ To reprogram an individual button, press and hold the desired button until the green LED (1) goes out and the yellow LED (2) starts to flash (after about 20 seconds). Then release the button immediately. The programming mode is then activated for 5 minutes.
- ▸ Continue with the 5th step.

Note

– The required distance between the handheld transmitter and the HomeLink module inside the radiator grille ⇨ *Fig. 29* depends on the system you are programming.

– With some types of systems, you may need to briefly release the button during programming and then press it again. When programming a new device, keep the button pressed for at least 15 seconds before trying again with the transmitter in a different position. Watch out for your vehicle's hazard warning lights while doing so.

Rolling code programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Some devices require rolling code programming.

Identifying a rolling code

- ▸ Press a programmed button in the operating unit again and hold it down.
- ▸ Watch the green LED (1) ⇨ *page 36, Fig. 28*. If the green LED starts flashing rapidly, this indicates that the system you wish to operate, such as a garage door, is equipped with a rolling code.
- ▸ Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating a system's drive unit

- ▸ Locate the programming button on the system's drive unit. The exact location and colour of the button may vary depending on the type of system.
- ▸ Press the programming button on the system's drive unit (this will normally cause an indicator lamp on the unit to light up). You now have about **30 seconds** to start and complete programming of the button in the operating unit.

Programming the button in the operating unit

- ▸ Press the previously programmed button in the operating unit for 2 seconds.
- ▸ Press the button for 2 seconds again to complete rolling code programming.
- ▸ For some systems, the button may have to be pressed a third time to complete the programming sequence.

After programming, the system should recognise the signal and respond when the button in the operating unit is pressed. Now the other control buttons can be programmed as required.

Note

– Having a second person assist you makes programming of the rolling code easier and faster. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If you encounter problems programming the rolling code you may find helpful information in the operating instructions of the system you wish to operate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Soft top (folding roof)

Soft top

General notes

The soft top opens and closes automatically. When the top opens, it folds away completely into the storage box. The soft top can be opened or closed at a speed of up to 50 km/h.

In normal conditions the soft top is windproof and waterproof. In extremely bad weather (such as torrential or continuous rain), a few droplets of water may possibly form inside the car. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

To preserve the appearance of the soft top and keep it waterproof, please follow the instructions for cleaning and care ⇨ *page 263, Care of vehicle and cleaning*. You should also note the following points:

– Open and stow the soft top only when it is clean and dry. Pressure creases can form if the soft top is stowed when damp, and mildew or other damage can occur if left for long periods. To avoid scratching or damaging the soft top, do not use sharp objects to remove ice and snow. A normal ice scraper can be used to clear the rear window.
– Do not leave the soft top open for weeks at a time to prevent any discolouration in the folds of the fabric.
– Do not open the soft top at temperatures below 0 °C. The fabric loses its elasticity at subzero temperatures.

Opening / closing the soft top



Fig. 30 Centre console: Soft top control switch

Opening and closing the soft top

▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ To open/close the soft top, pull/press and hold the switch until the operation is complete.

Opening and closing the soft top (one-touch function)

▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Briefly pull/push the soft top switch to open/close the soft top completely. It is not necessary to hold the switch. The one-touch function is available at speeds of between 6 km/h and 50 km/h.

The status of the soft top is shown in the instrument cluster when the soft top switch is operated.

If the soft top does not open/close when you operate the switch, a message will appear ⇨ *page 40*.

WARNING

– When operating the soft top make sure that external factors, e.g. wind, do not affect the function of the soft top and do not inconvenience or endanger other road users.
– Never drive with the soft top not correctly locked in place. There is a danger that the fabric could be caught by the airstream and blown open. This could cause an accident, possibly resulting in personal injury or damage to the car.
– When opening and closing the soft top, make sure there is no risk of injury from the moving parts of the frame, etc.
– Since the rearward view is obstructed while the soft top is opening or closing, you should avoid operating the soft top when reversing.

CAUTION

– To prevent damage to the soft top:
  – Do not put any items in the soft top storage box.
  – Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above the soft top when opening or closing it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– To avoid draining the vehicle battery, do not operate the soft top repeatedly with the engine switched off.
– A message will be displayed in the instrument cluster if a soft top malfunction occurs ⇨ *page 40*.
– The soft top can also be operated manually in the event of a malfunction ⇨ *page 41, Manual operation of the soft top*. The cause of the fault should be traced and rectified by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
– If you park the car with the soft top open, remember that this leaves the interior exposed to intruders and to potential damage in sudden adverse weather. Lock any belongings you leave behind in the luggage compartment. Close the soft top before you leave the vehicle unattended.
– The windows in the doors are automatically lowered slightly while the soft top is opening/closing.

Convenience open/close function for soft top

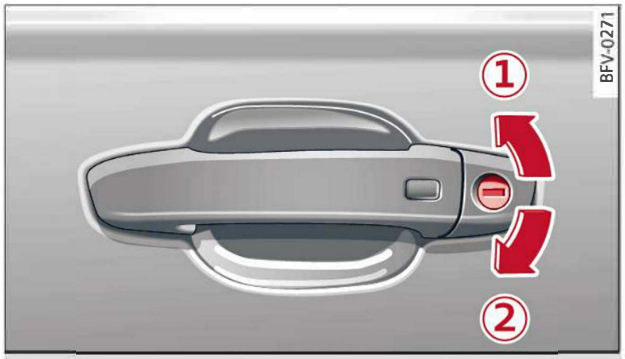


Fig. 31 Turning the key to activate the open and close functions

Convenience open function at driver's door lock

▸ Press the button on the remote control key to unlock the vehicle.
▸ Turn the key in the driver's door once to the unlock position (1) ⇨ *Fig. 31*.
▸ **Within two seconds**, turn the key a second time and hold it in this position until the soft top is fully open.

Convenience close function at driver's door lock

▸ Turn the key in the driver's door once to the lock position (2) ⇨ *Fig. 31*.
▸ **Within two seconds**, turn the key a second time and hold it in this position until the soft top is completely closed.

The soft top stops moving **immediately** if you release the key. It is possible to operate this feature with the convenience key* up to a distance of approximately 4 metres.

WARNING

Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening / closing the soft top on page 39*.

Driver messages

Soft top: operation not possible

This message will appear if a malfunction occurs. The soft top can be operated manually ⇨ *page 41*.

Soft top: operation currently not possible

If the soft top is operated repeatedly, the overload cut-off is activated for approx. 15 to 30 minutes. You can open/close the soft top again after this period.

Soft top: operation currently not possible. Engine must be running

The power-operated soft top is deactivated if the battery voltage is too low. You can open/close the soft top again after starting the engine.

Soft top: operation currently not possible. Outside temperature too low

The soft top cannot be opened at temperatures below -15 °C.

Soft top: operation currently not possible. Speed too high

For safety reasons, the power-operated soft top cannot be opened at road speeds of over 50 km/h. Reduce speed to open/close the soft top. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Soft top: not secure. Speed too high

This message will appear if you exceed a speed of 50 km/h while the soft top is opening or closing. Reduce speed and open or close the soft top again.

Soft top: fault. You can continue driving (limited functionality). See owner's manual

This message will appear if a system malfunction occurs. Try to open or close the soft top again. If the message still appears, drive to a qualified workshop (but do not exceed 50 km/h) and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Never drive with the soft top not correctly locked in place. There is a danger that the fabric could be caught by the airstream and blown open. This could cause an accident, possibly resulting in personal injury or damage to the car.

Windbreak

Applies to: vehicles with windbreak

The windbreak reduces draughts inside the vehicle for greater comfort when driving with the soft top open.



Fig. 32 Centre console: Control switch for windbreak

The windbreak can be raised and lowered electrically.

- ▸ To extend the windbreak, pull and hold the windbreak control switch until the windbreak is fully extended.
- ▸ To lower the windbreak, press and hold the control switch for the windbreak until the windbreak is fully retracted.

WARNING

- Never use the windbreak to secure loads.
- Take care when closing the windbreak. Careless use of the windbreak can cause severe injuries.

Note

- The windbreak will stop moving immediately in any position if the switch is released.
- The windbreak is most effective if the windows are fully raised when driving.

Manual operation of the soft top

General notes

The soft top can be closed manually in the event of a malfunction.

- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Open all the windows.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.

You should only operate the soft top manually if you need to close it and the power-operated system does not work. It is advisable to have a second person help you. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

- In all the steps required for manual operation of the soft top, there is always a risk of catching your hands or causing injury to others.
  - Please ensure that all windows are down before operating the soft top manually.
  - Keep well clear of the frame mechanism and other moving parts.
- Never drive with the soft top not correctly locked in place. There is a danger that the fabric could be caught by the airstream and blown open. This could cause an accident, possibly resulting in personal injury or damage to the car.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Step 1: Raising the covers

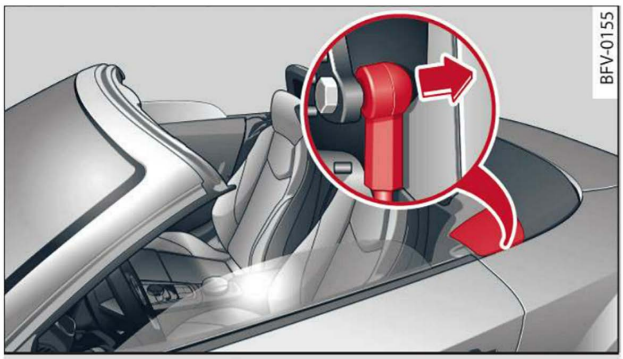


Fig. 33 Covers closed

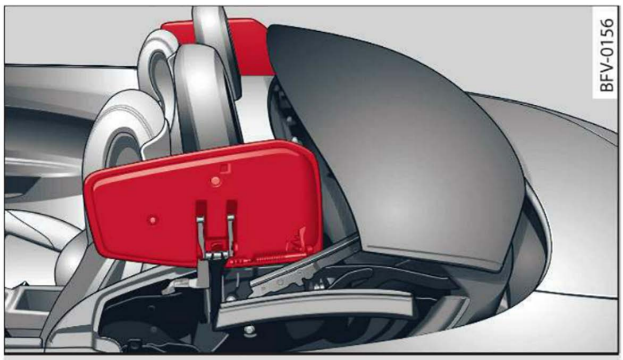


Fig. 34 Covers open

- ▸ Disengage the push rod from the ball head ⇨ *Fig. 33*.
- ▸ Lift up the covers on both sides of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 34*.

Step 2: Releasing the soft top drive

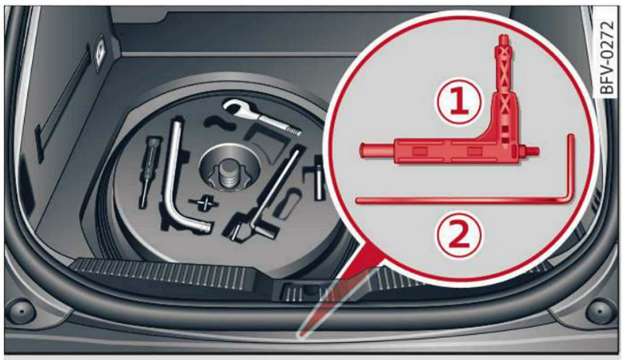


Fig. 35 Luggage compartment: Tools for closing soft top manually



Fig. 36 Driver's side: Hexagon key inserted

- ▸ Open the boot lid.
- ▸ Fold back the floor panel.
- ▸ Remove the three plastic base panels ⇨ *page 58, Fig. 63*.
- ▸ Take the screwdriver, the crank (1) and the hexagon key (2) ⇨ *Fig. 35* out of the vehicle's tool kit.
- ▸ Insert the hexagon key in the screw and remove the screw completely ⇨ *Fig. 36*. Then remove the screw on the passenger's side.

Step 3: Closing the soft top

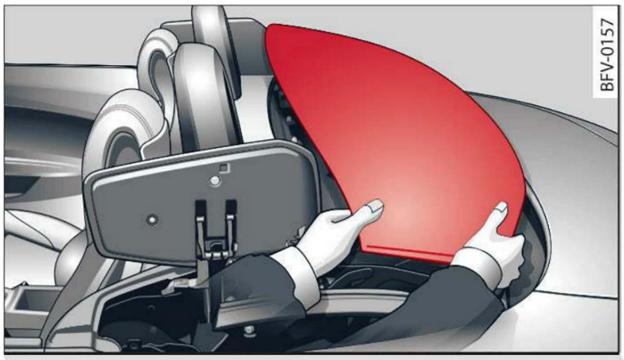


Fig. 37 Soft top in storage box

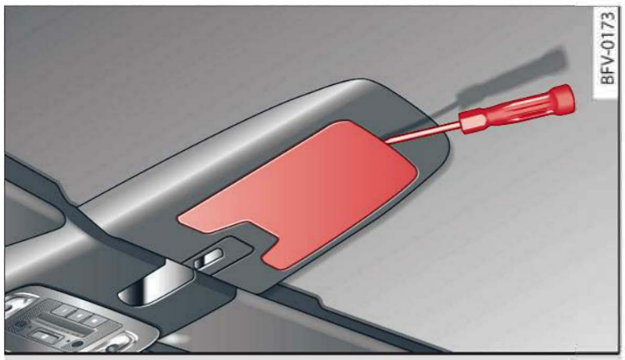


Fig. 38 Inside the front of the soft top: Removing the cover

- ▸ Lift the soft top out of the storage box ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the soft top all the way up. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Use the screwdriver to remove the cover in the centre of the soft top at the front ⇨ *Fig. 38*.
- Insert the crank (Torx head) into the opening until the stop ring makes contact with the soft top motor ⇨ *page 43, Fig. 39*.
- Turn the crank anti-clockwise as far as the stop to ensure that the locking hook is fully opened.
- Press the front part of the soft top onto the windscreen frame.

It is advisable to have a second person help you when lifting out the soft top. Have the second person stand on the other side of the car and help lift up the soft top.

WARNING

– When lifting out the soft top, keep your hands well clear of the moving parts of the frame, etc. Otherwise you could get your hands caught - risk of injury!
– Take care that you (or any other persons) do not catch your hands when pressing the soft top against the windscreen frame; this could cause injury.

CAUTION

Make sure that both of the covers are fully open and that the push rods are clipped into the openings so that the soft top is not damaged when it opens.

Step 4: Locking the soft top

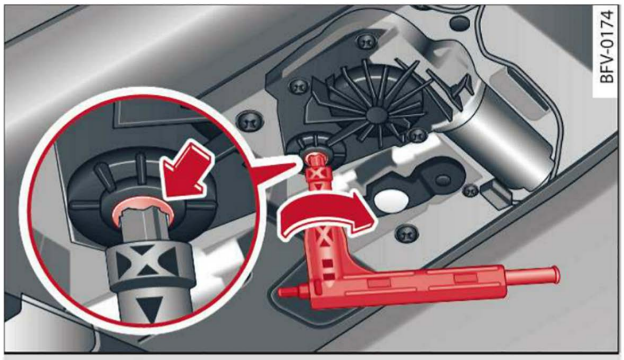


Fig. 39 Inside the front of the soft top: Crank for manual operation

- Pull the soft top down by the sides.
- Turn the crank clockwise until the soft top is fully locked.
- Pull out the crank.

Note

Make sure that the locking mechanism is fully closed.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 40 Dashboard: Light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the appropriate position. The symbol lights up when the lights are on.

O - Lights off (on vehicles for some markets the daytime running lights* are switched on when the ignition is switched on).

AUTO* - The automatic headlights switch on (and off again) automatically according to the ambient light conditions (for instance at dusk, in the rain or in a tunnel).

- Side lights

- Dipped headlights

- All-weather lights*

- Rear fog light(s)

All-weather lights*

On vehicles with all-weather lights, the front lights are adjusted automatically so that the headlights on your own vehicle do not blind you, for instance when driving on a wet road.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control*

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled when the vehicle is heavily laden. The headlight beam settings are adjusted automatically (even during braking and acceleration).

Light functions

The following light functions depend on which equipment is fitted in your vehicle and work only when the light switch is set to AUTO.

Static cornering light (turning light)* (on vehicles with LED headlights) - the turning light is automatically activated when the steering wheel angle exceeds a specified value (up to about 70 km/h) or when the turn signals are switched on (up to about 40 km/h). This feature provides better illumination at the side of the vehicle when you turn off at a junction.

Motorway light* (on vehicles with LED headlights) - this function adjusts the vehicle lighting on motorways, according to your speed.

Speed-dependent light distribution* (on vehicles with LED headlights) - this function adjusts the light distribution as required in towns, on motorways and on other main roads. Intersections can also be illuminated if your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system*.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad[1)]

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

WARNING

- The automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on manually when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights in these conditions and when driving after dark.
- To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with statutory regulations.

1) This function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If the battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Always park your car in a safe and suitably lit place according to the applicable regulations. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). If possible, switch the left or right parking lights on.
– Observe all relevant statutory requirements when using the lighting systems described here.

Note

– The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is located in the mounting for the interior mirror. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.
– Some of the settings for the exterior lighting can be adjusted ⇨ *page 47*.
– A buzzer will sound if you switch off the ignition and open the door when the exterior lighting is on.
– On vehicles for some markets, the rear lights switch on together with the daytime running lights.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This phenomenon has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.

Turn signal and main beam lever

The turn signal lever also operates the main beam headlights, parking lights and headlight flasher.

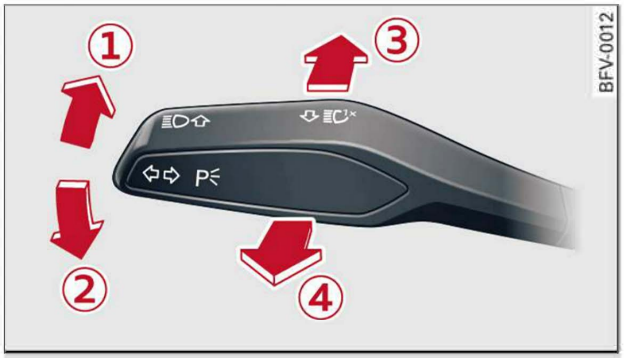


Fig. 41 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ and parking lights P

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The parking lights will be switched on if you do this with the ignition switched off.

① - Turn signals/parking lights (right side)

② - Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

Main beam and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the appropriate position:

③ - Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist*) ⇨ *page 46*

④ - Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

A buzzer will sound if you open the door when the parking light is on.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A sensor (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated or deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights, individual segments of the main beam are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

Activating the main beam assist

Important: The light switch must be set to AUTO, the dipped beam headlights must be on and the main beam assist must be activated on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 47*.

- Press the lever forwards (3) ⇨ *page 45, Fig. 41* to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp AUTO will light up in the infotainment display and the main beams will be switched on/off automatically. An indicator lamp will light up when the main beams are switched on.

Switching the main beams on/off manually

If the main beams are not switched on or if the headlights are not dipped as expected, you can control the dip function manually:

- To switch on the main beams manually, push the lever to position (3). The indicator lamp will light up.
- To dip the headlights manually, pull the lever towards you (4). The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- Pull the lever towards you (4) to flash the headlights when the main beam assist is activated and the main beams are dipped. The main beam assist will remain activated.

Driver messages on the infotainment display

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The camera vision is impaired, e.g. by stickers or dirt.

The sensor is located between the interior mirror and the windscreen. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.

WARNING

The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. In the following situations manual intervention may be necessary:

- Hazardous weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain and snow or water splashes
- Roads on which oncoming traffic is partially concealed (e.g. on motorways)
- Indiscernible road users (e.g. cyclists with insufficient lighting or vehicles with dirty rear lights)
- Tight corners, steep hill crests or valleys
- Poorly lit towns
- Highly reflective objects, such as road signs
- Windscreen misted up, dirty, frosted or covered by stickers in front of the sensor

Note

The main beam assist is deactivated whenever you intervene by switching the main beams on or off manually (3).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

You can change the settings for these functions on the infotainment system.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **early**, **medium** or **late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Main beam assist* - You can switch the main beam assist* **on** and **off**.

Audi adaptive light* - You can switch the adaptive light **on** and **off**.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

Entry/exit lights

The entry lights illuminate the area around the vehicle after dark when the vehicle is unlocked. To activate this function, select **Entry/exit lights**.

The exit lights illuminate the area around the vehicle after dark when the ignition has been switched off and the driver's door opened. To activate this function, select **Entry/exit lights**.

The entry and exit lights are operational after dark when the light switch is set to **AUTO**.

Hazard warning lights



Fig. 42 Centre console: Switch for hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights are used to make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

▸ Press the switch ⚠ to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically[1)].

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Interior lights

Interior lights



Fig. 43 Headliner: Interior lights

1) This function is not available on all models or export versions.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Courtesy light position. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

It is no longer necessary to operate a switch to turn on the reading lights. Simply swipe or tap your finger on the light to switch it on or off. The light can be dimmed by keeping your finger in contact with the reading light after switching it on.

Interior lights

Various optional lighting functions are available for the vehicle interior. The settings for certain functions can be adjusted on the infotainment system. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Background lighting**.

Instrument lighting



Fig. 44 Instrument lighting

The brightness of the lighting in the instrument cluster and the centre console can be adjusted as required.

- ▸ Briefly press the knob to release it.
- ▸ Turn the knob towards "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness of the lighting.
- ▸ Briefly press the knob again to engage it.

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 45 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the appropriate position:

- To adjust the exterior mirror (left or right side). Move the knob in the desired direction.

- To heat the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

- To fold in the exterior mirrors*. One of the infotainment settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*.

Tilt function for exterior mirror on passenger side*

The mirror is tilted slightly to provide a better view of the kerb when parking backwards. This feature only works when the knob is in the position for adjusting the mirror on the passenger side.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by moving the knob in the desired direction. This new position is automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key when you take the car out of reverse.

The mirror returns to its original position as soon as you drive forwards at over 15 km/h or switch off the ignition.

WARNING

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must first be fully retracted with the electric control. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Anti-dazzle setting

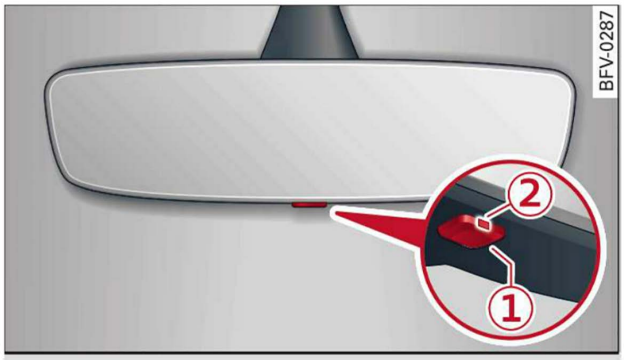


Fig. 46 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

▸ Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors*

▸ Press button (1) ⇨ *Fig. 46*. The indicator lamp (2) will light up. The interior and exterior mirrors* will darken automatically when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if needed.

CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Sun visors

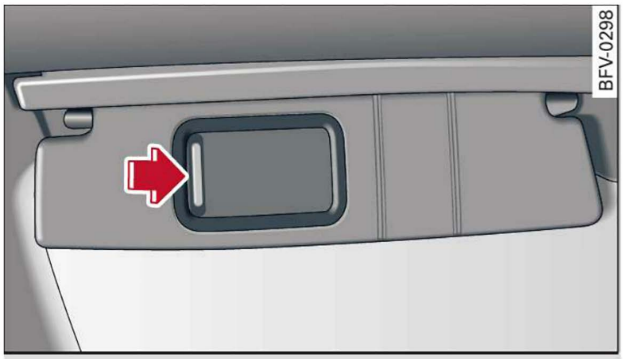


Fig. 47 Sun visor

There are covers on the make-up mirrors in the sun visors. Push open the cover in the direction indicated (arrow).

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windscreen wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers



Fig. 48 Windscreen wiper lever

Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

(0) - Wipers off

(1) - Intermittent wipe. Move switch (A) to the left or to the right to increase or reduce the wiper delay interval. If your vehicle is equipped with the rain sensor*, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain as long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor* is (i.e. the further to the right the position of switch (A) is), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode* on the infotainment system (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Rain sensor** > **off**.

(2) - Slow wipe

(3) - Fast wipe

(4) - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.

(5) - Wash/wipe. The screen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving and the temperature is above approx. 4 °C). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position (5) again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Headlight washers*. The headlight washer system* only operates when the lights are switched on. The headlights are automatically washed the first time and every fifth time you move the lever to position (5).

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇨ *page 51, Changing the windscreen wiper blades*.

CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position 0) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Note

- The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the windscreen wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor*. Please check the wiper blades regularly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The windscreen washer jets are heated* when the ignition is switched on if the outside temperature is low.
– If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades if the wipers leave smearing on the glass. Clean the wiper blades using a soft cloth and a glass cleaning solution.

▸ Set the wiper arms to the service position ⇨*page 51*.
▸ Lift the wiper arms away from the glass.

WARNING

Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view - risk of accident!

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

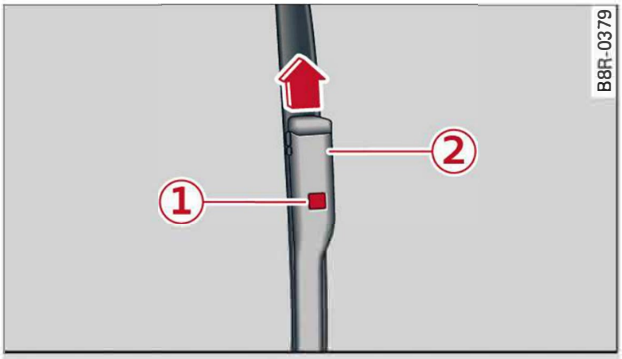


Fig. 49 Removing the wiper blades

Service position / wiper change position

▸ To move the windscreen wipers to the service position, switch off the ignition and move the windscreen wiper lever briefly to position (4) ⇨*page 50, Fig. 48*.
▸ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and move the windscreen wiper lever to position (4) for at least 2 seconds ⇨*page 50, Fig. 48*.

Taking off the wiper blade

▸ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
▸ Press the release button (1) on the wiper blade ⇨*Fig. 49*. Keep hold of the wiper blade while doing so.
▸ Take off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Fitting the wiper blade

▸ Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm (2). You should hear it engage in the wiper arm.
▸ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
▸ Switch off the service position again.

WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

CAUTION

– The wipers must be in the service position before lifting them off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
– Never drive your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Note

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
– You cannot activate the service position when the bonnet is open.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Digital compass

Activating and deactivating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

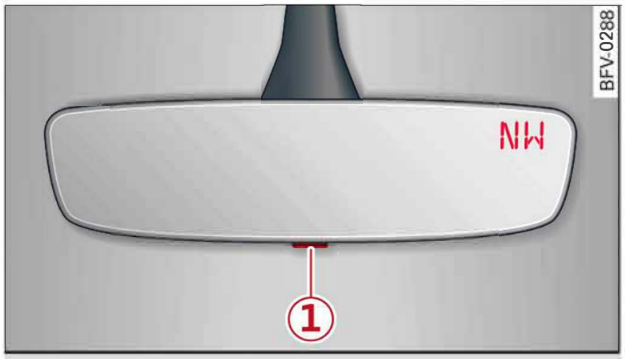


Fig. 50 Interior mirror: Activated digital compass

▸ To switch the compass on/off, press and hold button (1) until the compass display in the mirror appears/disappears.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is on. The points of the compass are displayed as follows: **N** (North), **NE** (North East), **E** (East), **SE** (South East), **S** (South), **SW** (South West), **W** (West), **NW** (North West).

Note

To avoid inaccurate compass readings, do not hold any remote controls or other electrical devices or metal objects near the interior mirror.

Setting the correct compass calibration zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

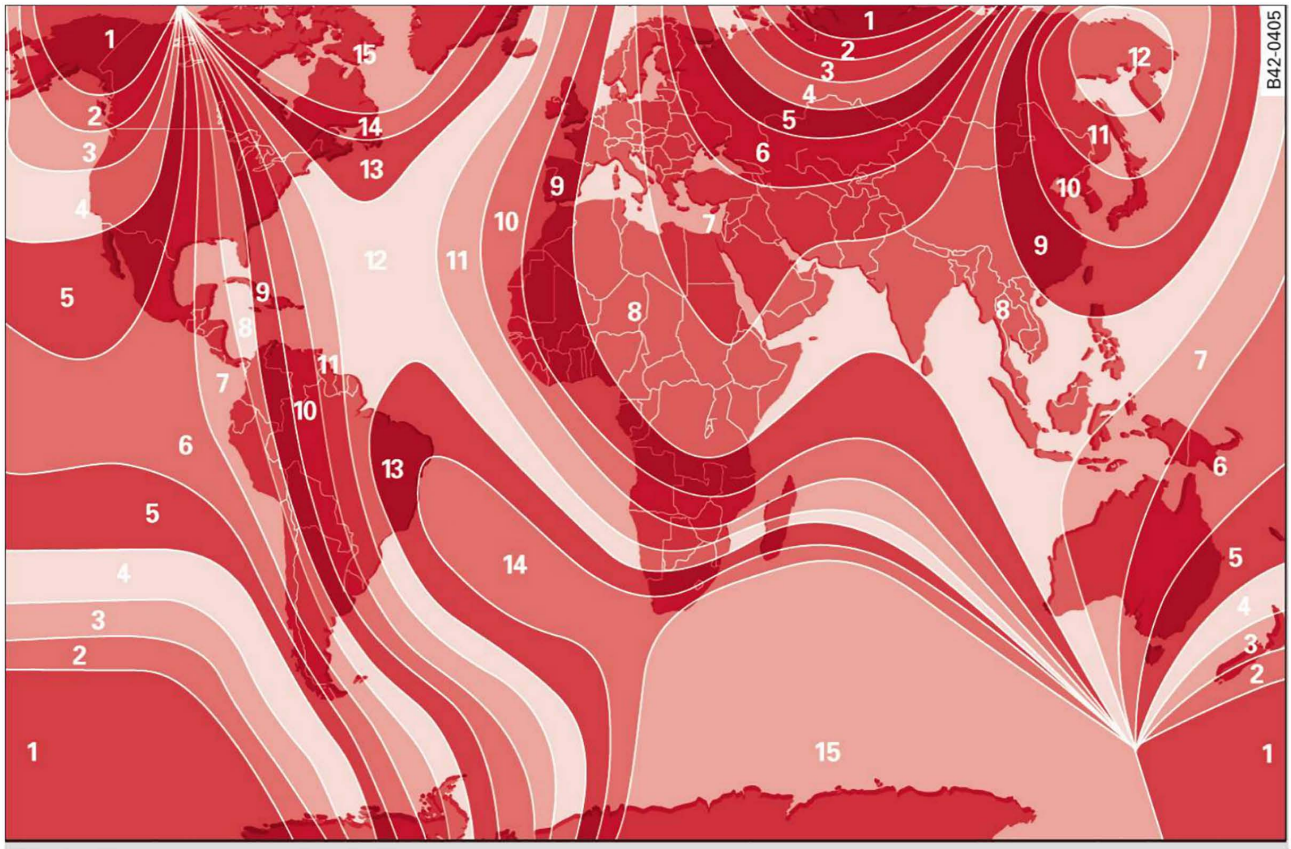


Fig. 51 Map of compass calibration zones

▸ Press and hold button (1) ⇨ *page 52, Fig. 50* until the currently set zone number is displayed on the interior mirror.

▸ Press button (1) repeatedly until the correct zone number appears. The adjustment mode ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

will be ended automatically after a few seconds.

Calibrating compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

The compass must be re-calibrated if the display is incorrect or inaccurate.

- ▸ Press and hold button (1) until the letter **C** appears on the interior mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at a speed of about 10 km/h until a point of the compass is displayed on the interior mirror.

WARNING

– Calibrate your compass at a location where there is no traffic so that you do not endanger yourself or other road users (accident risk).

– Always pay attention to the road and the area surrounding the vehicle when you are reading the compass while the vehicle is moving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats and storage

General notes

WARNING

You will find important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers on ⇨ *page 220, Safe driving*.

Front seats

Manual adjustment of seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment



Fig. 52 Front seat: Manual adjustment

① - Seat forwards/backwards: Lift the lever and move the seat.

② - Thigh support*: Lift the handle and move the thigh support in or out.

③ - Angle* of seat cushion: Pull/press the lever.

④ - Lumbar support*: Press the appropriate side of the button.

⑤ - Seat height: Pull/press the lever.

⑥ - Backrest angle: Turn the knob.

WARNING

– Never adjust the front seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the seat adjustment can cause injuries.
– Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belt and airbag could fail to restrain the wearer properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Electric adjustment of seats

Applies to: vehicles with electric seat adjustment

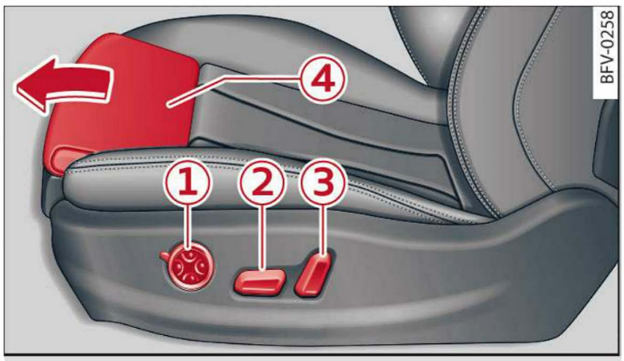


Fig. 53 Front seat: Electric adjustment

① - Lumbar support or multi-function button* ⇨ *page 55*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button.

② - Seat height: Press the button up/down. To adjust the front of the seat cushion, press the front of the button up/down. To adjust the rear of the seat cushion, press the rear of the button up/down.

② - Seat forwards/backwards: Press the button forwards/backwards.

③ - Backrest angle: Press the button forwards/backwards.

④ - Thigh support*: Lift the handle and move the thigh support in or out.

WARNING

– Never adjust the front seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
– The electric front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off. To avoid accidental injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belt and airbag could fail to restrain the wearer properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Bucket seat adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with bucket seats

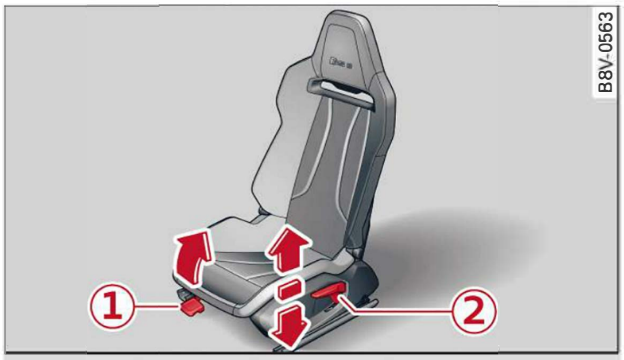


Fig. 54 Bucket seat: Adjuster controls

① - Seat forwards/backwards: Lift the lever and move the seat.

② - Seat height: Pull/press the lever.

WARNING

– Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the seat adjustment can cause injuries.
– For safety reasons the seat backrests must always be locked while driving - risk of injury!
– Never run a seat belt through one of the openings in the backrest. This could cause the backrest to tip forwards while the vehicle is moving – accident risk!

Multi-function button

Applies to: vehicles with multi-function button

The multi-function button can be used to adjust the side cushions.

▸ If you turn the multi-function button ① ⇨*page 54, Fig. 53* to the left or right, the lateral support on the seat will be increased/reduced by adjusting the side cushions on the backrest.

Note

The air in the side cushions* is released when you open the driver's door. This makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle. The side cushions are re-inflated as soon as you drive the vehicle.

Centre armrest

Applies to vehicles with centre armrest

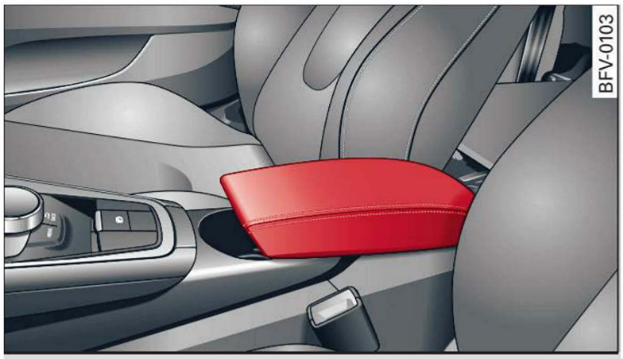


Fig. 55 Armrest between driver's seat and passenger's seat

▸ To adjust the angle, lift the armrest ⇨*Fig. 55* until it engages in the desired position.
▸ To lower the armrest again, lift the armrest slightly from the top click stop and then fold it back down. Then raise the armrest to the desired position if necessary.

You can move the armrest backwards or forwards.

There is a storage compartment underneath the armrest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 56 Centre armrest raised: Ashtray

The ashtray is located in the centre console below the centre armrest. Lift the lid to open the ashtray. Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it (e.g. after emptying it).

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Cigarette lighter and electrical socket

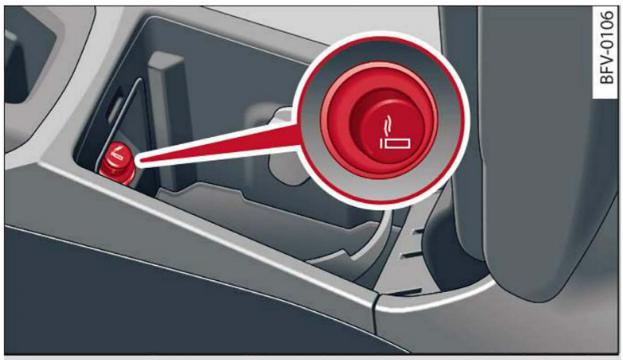


Fig. 57 Centre armrest raised: Cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter and electrical socket only work when the ignition is on.

Using the cigarette lighter

- ▸ Fold up the centre armrest (if necessary) to access the cigarette lighter.
- ▸ Press in the cigarette lighter.
- ▸ When the cigarette lighter springs out, pull it out completely.

Using the electrical socket

- ▸ Fold up the centre armrest (if necessary) to access the electrical socket.
- ▸ Take out the cigarette lighter (if necessary).
- ▸ Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket.

The cigarette lighter employs a standard 12 Volt socket which can be used as a power source for electrical appliances. The appliances connected to the socket must not exceed a power rating of 100 W.

WARNING

Take care when using the cigarette lighter. Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns.

CAUTION

– To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current, such as a solar panel or battery charger, to the 12 Volt sockets or cigarette lighter in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
– Always use the correct type of plugs to avoid damaging the sockets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage

Cup holders

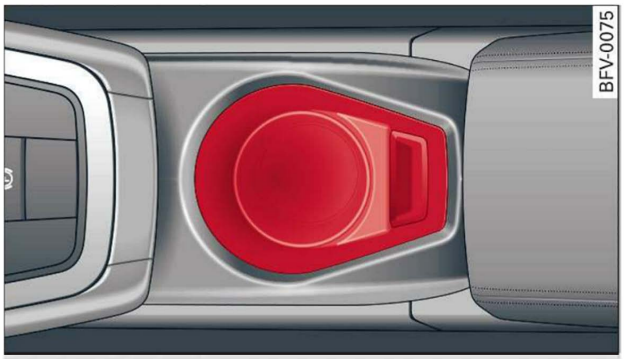


Fig. 58 Cup holders

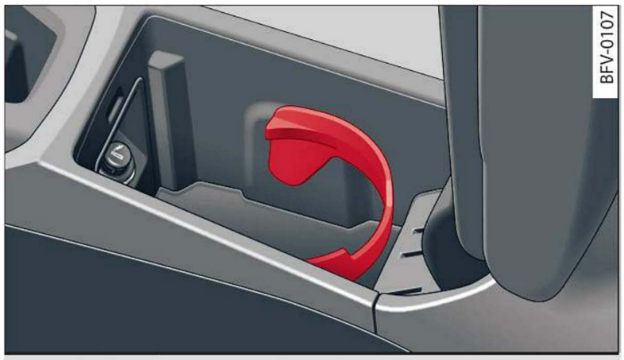


Fig. 59 Centre armrest raised: Cup holder*

Cup holder* underneath the centre armrest

- ▸ Fold up the centre armrest ⇨ *page 55*.
- ▸ If necessary, fold back the plastic retainer ⇨ *Fig. 59*.

WARNING

- – Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- – Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to e.g. the electrical equipment or the seat covers.

Further storage compartments

You will find several storage compartments and retainers at various points in the vehicle:

- – Storage compartments in the doors
- – Storage compartment in the glove box. The glove box can be locked with the emergency key ⇨ *page 28*.
- – Storage compartment underneath the centre armrest*
- – Storage compartment at the front end of the seats*. This compartment can hold objects weighing up to 1 kg.

WARNING

- – To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep the glove box lid closed when driving.
- – The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.

Storage compartment between the backrests

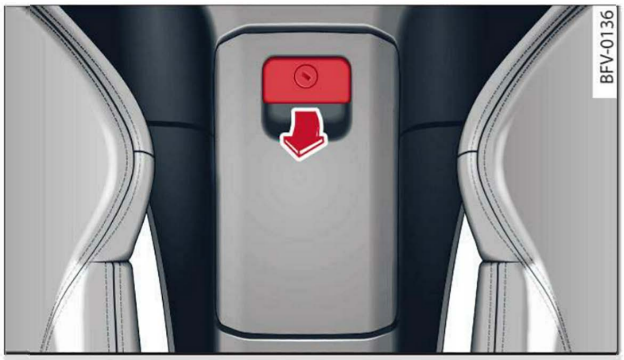


Fig. 60 Between the backrests: Storage compartment

- ▸ To open the storage compartment, pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ *Fig. 60* and swivel the lid downwards.
- ▸ To close the storage compartment, swivel the lid upwards until it engages.

WARNING

To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep the storage compartment lid closed when driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Luggage compartment

General notes

WARNING

Please refer to the important safety notes on ⇨ *page 227, Stowing luggage safely*.

Load-through hatch with bag

Applies to: vehicles with load-through hatch and removable ski bag

The bag can be used to transport long items (such as skis).

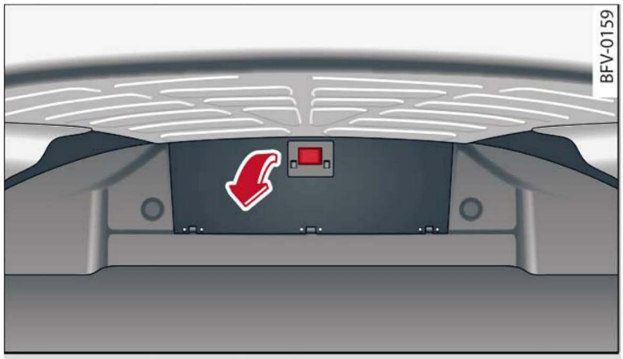


Fig. 61 Luggage compartment: Cover



Fig. 62 Luggage compartment: Securing the bag

Loading

- ▸ Open the flap for the storage compartment between the backrests ⇨ *page 57*.
- ▸ Open the boot lid.
- ▸ Press the release catch and fold down the cover for the load-through hatch towards the luggage compartment ⇨ *Fig. 61*.
- ▸ Push the bag (with the zip pointing towards the rear of the vehicle) from the luggage compartment into the passenger compartment ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Load up the ski bag.

Securing the bag

- ▸ Hook each of the attachments on the two fastening belts into the corresponding rear fastening ring ⇨ *Fig. 62*.

WARNING

The bag must be strapped in place with the two fastening belts after it has been loaded.

Note

– Fold up the bag only when it is dry.
– Place skis in the bag with their tips facing forwards and ski poles with their tips facing backwards.

Lowering the luggage compartment floor panel

The luggage compartment floor panel can be lowered in certain special cases.



Fig. 63 Luggage compartment: Floor panel removed

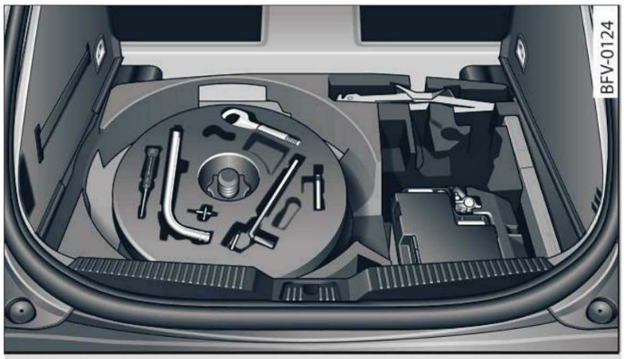


Fig. 64 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel removed

- ▸ Take out the floor panel ⇨ *page 270*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic base panels ⇨ *Fig. 63*.
- ▸ Turn the knob anti-clockwise and take out the foam insert.
- ▸ Take out the spare wheel. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Put the foam insert back in and tighten the knob by turning it clockwise.
- ▸ Put the floor panel back in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Please be aware that you will be unable to drive the vehicle in the event of a flat tyre. Note the relevant statutory regulations before removing the spare wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Description

The air conditioner heats, cools and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

Pollution filter

The pollution filter removes impurities, such as dust and pollen, from the air.

Key-coded settings

Certain settings will be automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key in use.

For the sake of the environment

If you wish to save fuel, switch off the cooling mode on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C button in the rotary control ②. This will also reduce emissions.

Note

– Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
– Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
– If you notice, for instance, that the seat* or rear window heating is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the power management function. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

Note

The air conditioner contains fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment[1)].

Controls for manual air conditioner

Applies to vehicles with manual air conditioner

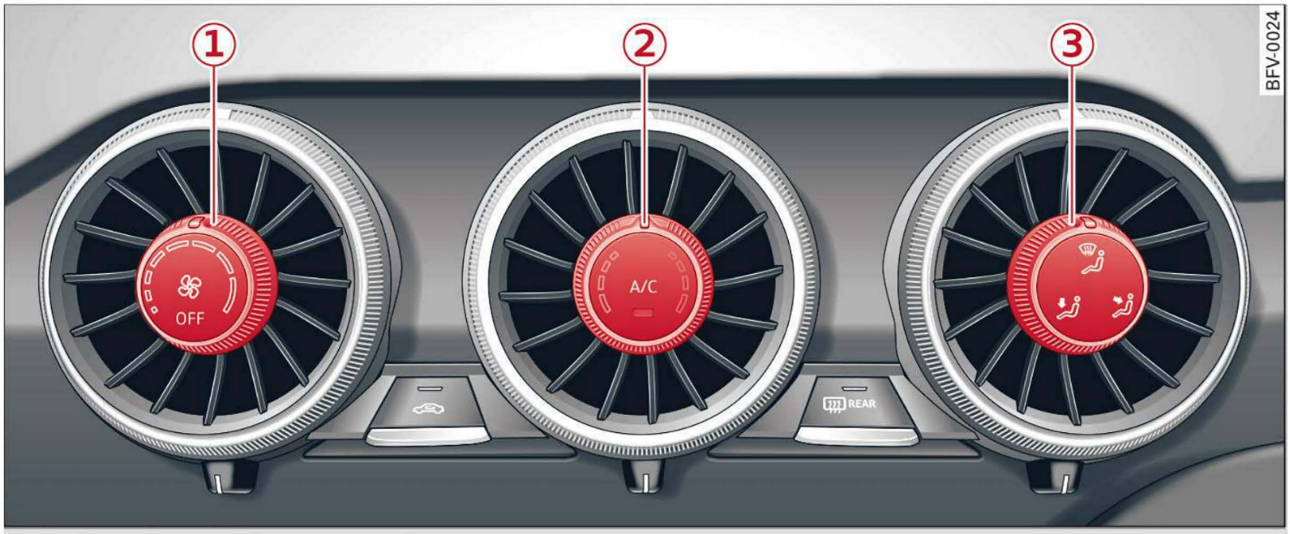


Fig. 65 Manual air conditioner: Controls

The rotary controls and switches are used to control the functions. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on. ▶

1) May vary in different countries

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For a comfortable climate inside the vehicle:

– In the summer, adjust the temperature to just a few degrees below the outside temperature
– Do not turn the blower up too high
– Do not point the air outlets directly at the occupants

Adjusting the blower speed

The rotary control (1) can be used to adjust the blower speed in small steps. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. To demist the windows, we recommend that you increase the blower speed and set control (3) to .

A/C Switching air cooling* on/off

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

Adjusting the temperature

The rotary control (2) can be used to adjust the temperature in small steps.

Adjusting the air distribution

The rotary control (3) can be used to adjust the **air distribution**.

At the setting, the windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted. The air recirculation is switched off, but can be switched on again manually by pressing the button.

The round air outlets in the dashboard can be adjusted ⇨ *page 63*.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up in wet weather, it's a good idea to open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

Switching air recirculation on/off

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior. We recommend switching on the air recirculation mode when driving through a tunnel or in traffic queues ⇨ ⚠.

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the control is in the defrost position .

REAR Switching rear window heating on/off

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the REAR button for at least two seconds. This setting will be stored for approximately 15 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist over if the air cooling is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls for automatic air conditioner

Applies to: vehicles with automatic air conditioner



Fig. 66 Automatic air conditioner: Controls

The rotary controls, the buttons in the rotary controls and the switches are used to control the functions. The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F). The air conditioner is fully automatic, and will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the blower speed and the air distribution are regulated automatically. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the *defrost* setting).

Adjusting the blower speed

The rotary control (1) can be used to adjust the blower speed in small steps. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. You can adjust the blower speed manually. Press the AUTO button for automatic control of the blower speed.

A/C Switching air cooling on/off

The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures (below zero).

The rotary control (2) can be used to adjust the temperature.

Setting the temperature

The rotary control (2) can be used to adjust the temperature in small steps.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on/off

The automatic mode is switched on when the AUTO button is pressed. The AUTO mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls. The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically.

Adjusting the air distribution

The rotary control (3) can be used to adjust the **air distribution**. Press the AUTO button for automatic air distribution.

The round air outlets in the dashboard can be adjusted ⇨ *page 63*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To prevent the front side windows from misting up in wet weather, it's a good idea to open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

Switching air recirculation on/off

The air recirculation mode can be switched on manually or automatically*.

– To switch the manual air recirculation mode on/off, press the button.
– The automatic* air recirculation function must be activated on the infotainment system. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **A/C** > **Auto recirculation**. The air quality sensor, which is designed for the detection of diesel and petrol exhaust fumes, automatically switches the air recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollution in the outside air.

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior. We recommend switching on the air recirculation mode when driving through a tunnel or in traffic queues ⇨ ⚠.

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the or AUTO or MAX button is pressed.

MAX Switching the defroster on/off

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature is regulated automatically.

The defroster is switched off when the AUTO button is pressed.

REAR Switching the rear window heating on/off

If the rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the REAR button for at least two seconds. This setting will be stored for approximately 15 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist over if the air cooling is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.

Adjusting air outlets

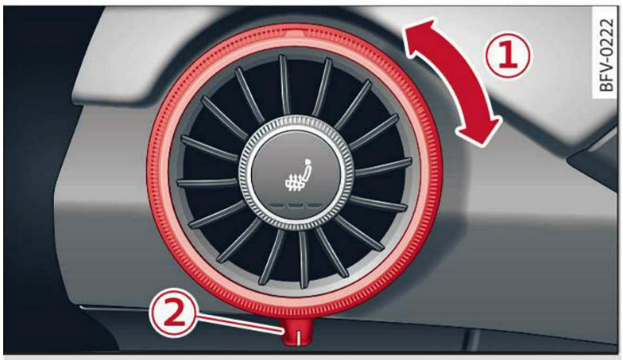


Fig. 67 Dashboard: Adjusting air outlet

To adjust the **air flow direction**, turn the ribbed outer adjustment ring ① ⇨ *Fig. 67*.

To adjust the **air flow intensity**, move the lever ② on the air outlet. To shut off the air flow, move the lever all the way to the left.

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating



Fig. 68 Air outlet: Seat heating

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The seat heating has three levels. The heat level is indicated by an LED.

- To switch on the seat heating, press the button once.
- To reduce the level, press the button again.
- To switch off the seat heating, press the button repeatedly until all the LEDs have gone out.

The seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2 after about 10 minutes.

When not to switch on the seat heating

Do **not** switch on the seat heating in the following situations:

– Seat is unused
– A protective cover is fitted on the seat
– A child seat is fitted on the seat
– The seat is damp or wet

WARNING

People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the seat heating. These people must not use the seat heating - risk of injury!

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.

Note

– The setting for the driver's seat heating is assigned to the key in use.
– If the passenger's seat heating was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within 10 minutes.

Neck heating

Applies to: vehicles with neck heating

The neck heating works when the engine is running.

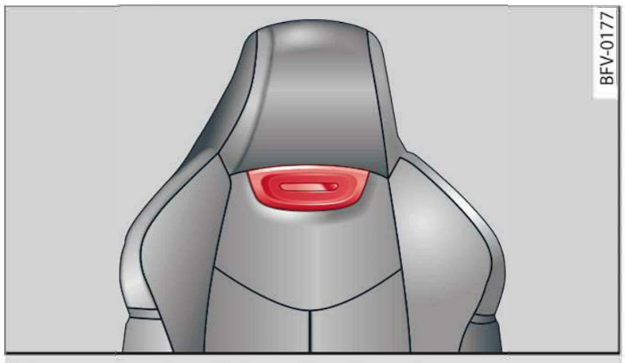


Fig. 69 Driver's seat: Air outlets for neck heating



Fig. 70 Dashboard: Neck heating

The neck heating has three levels. The neck heating is switched on when you turn the knob clockwise ⇨ *Fig. 70*. The LEDs above the seat symbol indicate the blower level. To reduce the blower level, turn the knob anti-clockwise. To switch off the neck heating, turn the knob anti-clockwise until all the LEDs have gone out.

The neck heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2 after about 6 minutes when the soft top is closed.

WARNING

– People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the neck heating. These people must not use the neck heating - risk of injury!
– If the air outlets in the seat ⇨ *Fig. 69* are covered by items of clothing or similar while the neck heating is on, the air that emerges immediately afterwards can be very hot.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This could cause burns to bare skin in the immediate vicinity of the air outlets.

Note

– The blower output is always lower when the soft top is closed than when it is open.
– The power management system ⇨*page 118* may reduce the temperature in certain situations if the battery voltage is too low.

Supplementary heater

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

On cold days, the interior of the vehicle warms up more quickly with the supplementary electric heater. The supplementary heater is switched on automatically as required, depending on the setting on the vehicle heating system.

The supplementary heater function can be switched on or off as required. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **A/C** > **Auto supplementary heater**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving

General notes

Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over a distance of 1,500 km. For the first 1,000 km the engine speed should not exceed 2/3 of the maximum permissible engine speed - do not use full throttle. From 1,000 to 1,500 km you can gradually increase the engine rpm and road speed.

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

How the vehicle is driven for the first 1,500 km also influences the engine quality. After this period you should continue driving at moderate engine speeds, in particular when the engine is cold. This helps to reduce wear and tear on the engine and increases the potential mileage which can be covered by the engine.

You should also avoid driving with the engine speed too *low*. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs “smoothly”. Excessively high engine speeds are prevented by an automatic rev limiter.

Letting the engine warm up/cool down

Applies to: S and RS models

You can reduce the amount of wear and tear on your vehicle during a sporty driving session simply by adopting a more restrained driving style while the engine is warming up and cooling down.

When the engine is cold, the engine speed is limited so that the full range of engine power is not available. Once the engine has reached operating temperature, the rev limit moves to a higher range of engine speeds. In addition, the tyres will not develop their full grip potential until they have had a chance to warm up on the road.

Even though the engine continues to be cooled after you switch it off, it is particularly important to give it time to cool down before parking. The engine, brakes, exhaust system and gearbox will all reach very high temperatures when you adopt a sporty driving style. Before you park the vehicle, allow it to cool down to normal temperature by driving at moderate engine speeds for several miles.

Avoiding damage to the car

CAUTION

Take care not to damage low-mounted parts of the car (such as the spoiler or exhaust system) on steep ramps, uneven road surfaces or roadside kerbs, etc. This applies especially to vehicles with low ground clearance and to all vehicles when fully laden.

Driving through water on roads

Please note the following in order to prevent damage to the vehicle when driving through water (e.g. on flooded roads):

– The water level must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody.
– Do not drive faster than walking pace.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the braking effect can be delayed slightly due to moisture on the discs and brake pads. Applying the brakes carefully several times will remove the moisture and restore the full braking effect.

CAUTION

– Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.
– Always switch off the start/stop system* ⇨*page 71* before driving through water.

Note

– It is advisable to check the depth at the deepest point before approaching the water.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Do NOT stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch off the engine before you are out of the water.
– Bear in mind that waves created by oncoming traffic could exceed the permissible wading depth of your vehicle.
– Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

How to improve economy and minimise pollution

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. The following section gives you some tips on lessening the impact on the environment and reducing your operating costs at the same time.

Anticipate well in advance

A car uses most fuel when accelerating. If you anticipate hazards and speed changes well in advance, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car slow down gradually **with a gear engaged**, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red.

Change gear early to save fuel

An effective way of saving fuel is to *change up quickly* through the gears. Running the engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel. Press the accelerator slowly and avoid using the “kick-down” feature.

Avoid driving at high speed

Avoid travelling at top speed. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Do not let the engine idle for longer than necessary

Engine idling periods are automatically reduced on vehicles with start/stop system*. On vehicles without start/stop system*, it is worthwhile switching off the engine at level crossings, for instance, or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a very long time to warm up when it is running at idling speed. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Regular servicing

Regular servicing can establish a basis for good fuel economy before you start driving. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A poorly maintained engine can consume up to ten percent more fuel than necessary.

Check the **oil level** when filling the tank. **Oil consumption** depends to a great extent on the engine load and engine speed. It is quite normal that the oil consumption of a new engine only reaches its lowest level after a certain mileage. This means that the oil consumption can only be properly assessed after about 5,000 km.

Avoid short trips

The engine and emission control system need to reach their **proper working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses disproportionately more fuel. The engine only reaches its working temperature after about *four* kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

Check tyre pressures

Always make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct tyre pressures to save fuel. If the tyre pressures are just 0.5 bar too low, this can increase the fuel consumption by as much as 5 %. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases **tyre wear** and impairs handling.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The tyre pressures should always be checked when the tyres are *cold*.

Do not use **winter tyres** all through the year; they will increase fuel consumption by up to 10 %.

Avoid carrying unnecessary loads

Every kilo of **extra weight** will increase the fuel consumption, so it is worth checking the luggage compartment occasionally to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

Save electrical energy

The engine drives the alternator to generate electricity. This means that fuel consumption rises when more power is required for electrical equipment. Switch off electrical equipment when it is not needed. Electrical equipment which uses a lot of electricity includes the blower (at a high setting), the rear window heating and the seat heating*.

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted as required to suit the driver.



Fig. 71 Lever on steering column

- ▸ Press the lever ⇨ *Fig. 71* down ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Then push the lever towards the steering column until the catch engages.

⚠ WARNING

– Never adjust the position of the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving - this could cause an accident.
– Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

You can use the START ENGINE STOP *button to switch on the ignition and start the engine.*



Fig. 72 Centre console: START ENGINE STOP button



Applies to TT RS
Fig. 73 Steering wheel: START ENGINE STOP

Switching the ignition on/off

- ▸ To switch the ignition on/off, press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or brake pedal (automatic gearbox). Diesel engines are preheated when the ignition is switched on. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the engine

- Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gear lever into neutral.
- Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to position P or N ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine should start.
- Diesel engines can take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or brake pedal (automatic gearbox) until the engine starts. The indicator lamp lights up while the glow plugs are preheating.

If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. Try to start the engine again.

Start/stop system

Please note the information on ⇨ *page 71, Start/stop system*.

WARNING

Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine by running it with the car stationary. You should drive off immediately whenever possible. This will help avoid unnecessary exhaust emissions.

Note

– Any noises which may be heard when the engine is started are quite normal and no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, it will be switched off automatically after a while. Please note that electrical equipment such as the exterior lighting will also be switched off.

Switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle.
- Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 68, Fig. 72*.

Steering lock[1)]

The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine with the START ENGINE STOP button, move the selector lever to position P (on vehicles with automatic gearbox*) and open the driver's door.

The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine with the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

Emergency Off function*

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can be switched off while the vehicle is still moving at speeds of 7 km/h and above. To switch off the engine, press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in quick succession or hold it in for longer than two seconds.

WARNING

– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Otherwise the engine can be started or power-operated equipment such as the electric windows can be used. This could result in serious injury. ▶

1) This function is not available on all export versions.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION

If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Note

After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. This may occur for the following reasons:

– Residual heat has raised the coolant temperature.
– Direct sunlight has additionally heated up the engine compartment while the engine is warm.
– Applies to vehicles with diesel particulate filter: The emission control system is hot because of the regeneration process, even though the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.

Driver messages

Switch off ignition before leaving car. Battery is being discharged

This message appears and the buzzer sounds if you open the driver's door while the ignition is switched on. Switch off the ignition to prevent the battery from being discharged.

Pressing start/stop button again will switch off engine.

This message appears if you press the START ENGINE STOP button while the vehicle is moving.

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

A fault has occurred when starting the engine automatically (automatic start function). Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button to start the engine.

Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system cannot detect or identify the key. This can happen, for example, if the radio signal from the key is *obstructed* by a metal briefcase or similar, or if the key battery is weak. Electronic equipment, such as mobile phones, can also interfere with the radio signal from the key.

The engine can still be started or stopped if this happens (please refer to ⇨ *page 71, Starting the engine after a malfunction*).

Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the convenience key was removed from the vehicle while the engine was running. If the convenience key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Please press brake pedal

This message appears on vehicles with an automatic gearbox if you try to start the engine without first pressing the brake pedal.

Please press clutch pedal

This message appears on vehicles with a manual gearbox if you try to start the engine without first pressing the clutch pedal. The engine will only start if you press the clutch pedal.

Please engage N or P

This message will appear if you try to start or switch off the engine when the selector lever is not in N or P. The engine can then not be started or switched off.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P

For safety reasons, this message will appear and a warning buzzer will sound if the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is not in position P when you switch off the ignition with the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

START ENGINE STOP button. Put the selector lever in position P; otherwise the vehicle can roll away. If the lever is not in position P you will not be able to lock the vehicle using the locking sensor on the door handle or the convenience key.

Starting the engine after a malfunction

If the remote control key battery is exhausted or if radio interference or a system malfunction occurs, extra steps may be necessary in order to start the engine.



Fig. 74 Steering column/remote control key: Starting the engine after a malfunction

If the message **Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual** is displayed, you can still start the engine manually.

- Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal.
- Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button.
- Hold the remote control key against the symbol ⇨ *Fig. 74*, as shown in the illustration. The engine should start.
- If the engine does not start automatically, press the START ENGINE STOP button again.

Note

You can call up the driver message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights. The ignition remains on during this stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Basic conditions for start/stop mode

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be buckled.
– The bonnet must be closed.
– The vehicle must have been moving at over 4 km/h since the last stop.

WARNING

– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
– To avoid injury, make sure that the start/stop system is switched off before working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 73*.

CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system ⇨ *page 73* before driving through water.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching off / starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

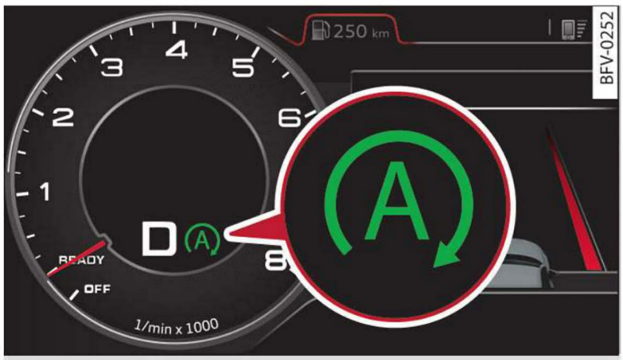


Fig. 75 Instrument cluster: Engine switched off (stop phase)

Vehicles with manual gearbox

- When the vehicle stops, put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The engine will switch off. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will appear on the infotainment display.
- The engine will start again automatically when you press the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox

- Stop the vehicle and keep your foot on the brake pedal. The engine will switch off. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will appear on the display.
- The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. If the hold assist* is switched on, the engine will not start until the accelerator is pressed. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will go out.

Further information for automatic gearboxes

The engine is switched off when the selector lever is in position P, D, N or S or in manual mode. If the selector lever is in position P, the engine will remain off even if you take your foot off the brake. The engine will not start again until you press the accelerator or select another gear and take your foot off the brake.

The engine will start again if you move the selector lever to R during a stop phase.

If you do not want the engine to start, move the selector lever quickly from D through R to P.

Note

- You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.
- On vehicles with manual gearbox, you should keep your foot on the brake during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- If you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
- If the engine stalls on a vehicle with manual gearbox, you can start it again directly by pressing the clutch pedal immediately.
- When you stop and the start/stop system turns off the engine, the ignition remains on. Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that the ignition is switched off; otherwise the battery will be drained.

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The on-board control system can override the start/stop function for various reasons.

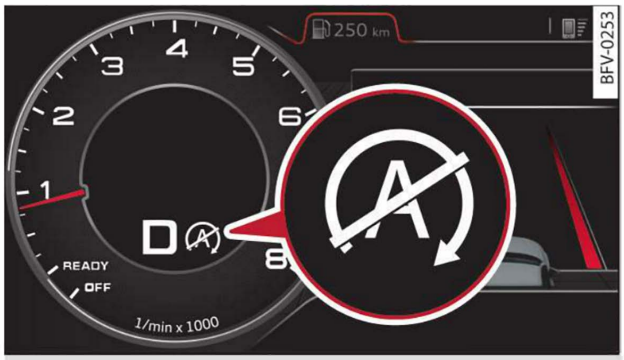


Fig. 76 Instrument cluster: Engine stop temporarily unavailable

Engine does not switch off

Before each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met. The engine will not switch off in the following situations, for example. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The engine has not yet reached the minimum temperature required for start/stop mode.
– The interior temperature selected on the air conditioner has not yet been reached.
– The exterior temperature is very high/low.
– The windscreen is being defrosted.
– The parking aid* or park assist* is switched on.
– The vehicle battery charge is too low.
– The steering wheel is close to full lock or the vehicle is being steered.
– Reverse gear has just been selected.
– The vehicle is on a steep gradient.

will appear in the infotainment display to indicate this status.

Engine cuts in again automatically

The stop phase is interrupted in the following situations, for example. The engine cuts in automatically without intervention from the driver.

– The vehicle starts to roll (e.g. on a hill).
– The interior temperature deviates from the air conditioner setting.
– The windscreen is being defrosted.
– The brake pedal is pressed several times in succession.
– The vehicle battery charge drops to an insufficient level.
– The power consumption is high.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the ignition will be switched off **automatically** if certain conditions are met. For instance:

– The vehicle has already been driven.
– The start/stop system has switched off the engine.
– The driver's door is opened.
– The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not pressed.
– The vehicle is stationary.

If the dipped beam headlights are on when this happens, the side lights will be turned on instead and the message **Side lights will be automatically switched off in 30 minutes. See owner's manual** will appear on the infotainment display. After approx. 30 minutes, or when you lock the vehicle, the side lights will be switched off.

If the start/stop system has not stopped the engine or if you have switched off the start/stop system manually, the engine will continue running and the ignition will not be switched off automatically ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!

Note

If you select D, N or S (on vehicles with automatic gearbox) after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again.

Switching the start/stop system off and on manually

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

You can switch the system off manually if you don't want to use it.



Fig. 77 Centre console: Switch for start/stop system

▸ To switch the start/stop system off or on manually, press the A OFF button. The LED in the button will light up when the system is switched off.

Note

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Start/stop system: deactivated. Please restart engine manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system **cannot** start the engine again automatically. The START ENGINE STOP button must be used to start the engine.

Start/stop system: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Electro-mechanical parking brake



Fig. 78 Centre console: Button for parking brake and hold assist*

Your vehicle is equipped with an electro-mechanical parking brake (1) ⇨ *Fig. 78*. The parking brake replaces the conventional handbrake, and is mainly intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

Applying/releasing the parking brake manually

- To apply the parking brake, pull the button (Ⓟ). The LED in the button will light up. In addition, the warning lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal with the ignition switched on and simultaneously press the button (Ⓟ). The LED in the button and the warning lamp on the display will go out.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Important: The parking brake must be applied and the driver's door must be closed.

- Accelerate in the usual way to drive off and release the parking brake automatically.

Further features and safety functions are available for driving off, in addition to the automatic parking brake release function ⇨ *page 75, Moving off*.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in emergencies or if the main brake system fails or the pedal is obstructed.

- Pull and hold the button (Ⓟ).
- The brakes will be released immediately if you release the button (Ⓟ) or press the accelerator.

If you pull and hold the button (Ⓟ) while the vehicle is moving, this will initiate an emergency brake application. The brakes are then applied hydraulically at all four wheels. The effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To prevent the emergency braking function from being used accidentally, a warning buzzer sounds when the button (Ⓟ) is operated. The brakes are released immediately when you release the button (Ⓟ) or press the accelerator.

Parking the car

- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a stop.
- To apply the parking brake, pull the button (Ⓟ).
- Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- Switch off the engine ⇨ ⚠.
- Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- When parking on a hill or gradient, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move accidentally. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Never press the accelerator pedal or release the clutch inadvertently if a gear is engaged or if the selector lever is not in position P or N (on automatic vehicles) while the vehicle is stationary with the engine running. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
– You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function by activating the parking brake switch, this has the same effect as heavy braking. Please remember that the ESC (and the integrated ABS, EDL and traction control functions) is still subject to certain physical limits. In a corner or in bad road or weather conditions an emergency stop can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control.
– It is not possible to apply the parking brake if the electrical power supply fails. In this case, park the vehicle on a level surface and select 1st gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox) to prevent it from rolling. Obtain professional assistance.
– Always take the key with you when leaving your vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
– Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

You can apply the parking brake manually or switch on the hold assist* when stopping at traffic lights, etc. You do not then have to hold the car with the brake pedal, as the brakes will stop it creeping forward while a gear is engaged in the automatic transmission. When you drive off in the normal way, the parking brake will be released automatically and your vehicle will start moving ⇨ *page 75*.

Note

– Any slight noise which may be heard when the parking brake is applied or released is quite normal and no cause for concern.
– The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.
– If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to release the parking brake (if it was applied) or to apply the parking brake (if it was released) ⇨ ⚠. Obtain professional assistance.

Moving off

Various features and safety functions are available for driving off, depending on the equipment in your vehicle.

Hill starting with the parking brake applied

Important: The driver's door must be closed.

▸ To drive off more easily on a slope, apply the parking brake and drive off just as you usually would. The parking brake will be released automatically, but not until there is enough power at the wheels to make the vehicle move in the desired direction.

Hill starting with the hill hold assist

The hill hold assist function makes it easier to drive away on a slope.

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate the hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

When you release the brake pedal the braking force will be maintained for a moment ⇨ ⚠ in ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

order to hold the vehicle and make it easier for you to drive away.

Driving off with the hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hold assist

The hold assist helps the driver if the vehicle is stationary for a long period or very often, for instance at traffic lights, on steep gradients or in stop-and-go traffic.

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

- To switch the hold assist on/off, press the button (A) (2) ⇨ *page 74, Fig. 78*, ⇨ ⚠. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- Once it detects that the vehicle has stopped, the hold assist keeps the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Drive off in the normal way: the brake will be released automatically and the vehicle will start moving.

In certain situations, the hold assist transfers the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake. As soon as the parking brake is holding the vehicle still, the warning lamp ■ appears in the instrument cluster. In addition, the LED in the (P) button will light up.

Driver messages in the instrument cluster display

(A) Hold assist: unavailable

If this message appears, the system requirements have not been met.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, or if the engine stalls, the vehicle may start to roll back. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

WARNING

The intelligent technology in the hold assist* and hill hold assist functions cannot defy the laws of physics. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the hold assist* and hill hold assist functions tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

– The hold assist* and hill hold assist functions cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).
– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist* function before driving the vehicle into a car wash.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

When the hold assist* function is switched on, it stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled dual-clutch gearbox (S tronic). Torque between the engine and the gearbox is transmitted via two independent clutches. They enable smooth, uninterrupted acceleration of the vehicle.

The gearbox shifts up or down automatically and continuously adapts the timing of the gear changes to your driving style.

When you drive at **moderate speeds** the gearbox will select the most economical shift programme. It will then change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy.

If you drive at **higher speeds** with heavy acceleration, if you open the throttle quickly, or if you use the kick-down or the car's maximum speed, the gearbox will automatically select the more “sporty” shift programmes.

If desired, you can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selector lever positions

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

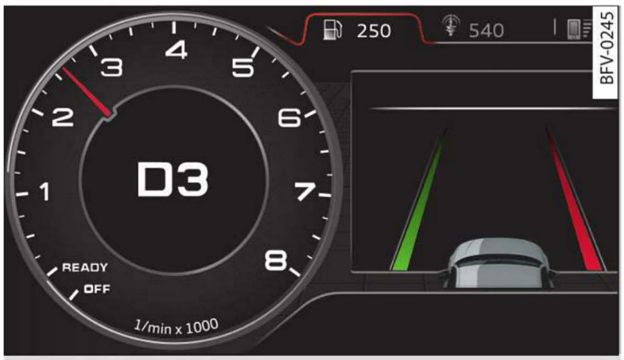


Fig. 79 Instrument cluster: Selector lever positions

The current selector lever position and the current gear are shown in the infotainment display.

P – Parking lock

The parking lock must only be engaged when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

The interlock button (the button in the selector lever handle) must be pressed in *and* the brake pedal must be depressed before moving the selector lever either in or out of position P.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear should only be engaged when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is idling ⇨ ⚠.

To move the selector lever to position R, press in the interlock button *and* at the same time press the brake pedal. The reversing light comes on when the selector lever is in the R position with the ignition on.

N – Neutral

In this position, the gearbox is in neutral.

D/S – Drive/Sport (standard position for driving forwards)

In selector lever position D/S, the gearbox can be operated in either the standard drive mode (D) or in sport mode (S). To select sport mode (S), briefly pull the selector lever back. The gearbox will switch back to drive mode (D) if you pull the selector lever again. The selected driving mode is shown on the infotainment display.

In the standard **drive mode** (D), the gearbox automatically selects the best gear ratio. This depends on the engine load, the road speed and the driving style.

Select **sport mode** (S) if you wish to take full advantage of the car's performance. This setting makes use of the engine's maximum power output. When accelerating the gear shifts may be noticeable.

Press the brake pedal when moving the selector lever from N to D/S if the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 2 km/h ⇨ ⚠.

E – Efficiency*

In efficiency mode ⇨ *page 100, Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions)*, the gearbox selects the next gear at lower engine speeds. Earlier upshifts give improved fuel economy because the full power reserves of the engine are not used.

In this mode, E is shown on the display instead of D ⇨ *Fig. 79*.

⚠ WARNING

- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving, as this could cause an accident.
- In all selector lever positions except P the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep” - risk of accident!
- The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) and possibly cause an accident.
- Do not press the accelerator while selecting a gear with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- The driver should never get out of the vehicle when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

while the engine is running, you must apply the parking brake and engage the parking lock P.

– To avoid accidents, apply the parking brake and put the selector lever in position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 244, Working on components in the engine compartment.*

Note

– Drive select: You can select the sport program for gear changes by activating the **dynamic** mode. The infotainment display will show S instead of D.
– If the lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, take your foot off the accelerator and let the engine speed drop to idling before selecting D or S again.
– It is not possible to move the selector lever out of position P if the electrical power supply fails. In this case, the selector lever can be released manually. Left-hand drive vehicles ⇨ *page 84*, right-hand drive vehicles ⇨ *page 85*.

Selector lever lock

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The selector lever lock prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, so that the vehicle is not set in motion unintentionally.

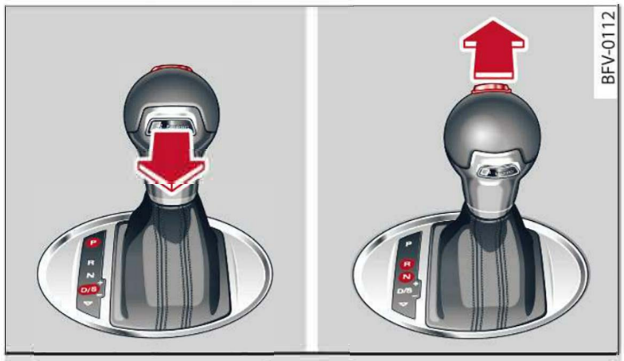


Fig. 80 Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

▸ Switch on the ignition.

▸ Press the brake pedal *and* at the same time press in the interlock button.

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is on. To move the selector lever out of these positions the driver must press the brake pedal. To move out of position P, the interlock button must also be pressed. The following message appears in the display as a reminder for the driver when the selector lever is in position P or N:

To select a gear please press brake pedal and interlock button on gear selector lever

The selector lever lock only works if the vehicle is stationary or driving at speeds up to 2 km/h. At higher speeds the selector lever lock in the N position is disengaged automatically.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position N (e.g. when shifting from R to D). This makes it possible, for instance, to “rock” the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position N for more than about two seconds.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever handle prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging particular gears. The illustration shows the selector lever positions in which the button has to be pressed, highlighted in colour ⇨ *Fig. 80*.

Note

– If the selector lever does not lock automatically, a malfunction has occurred. In this case, the power transmission is interrupted to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally. Proceed as follows to engage the selector lever lock again:
– Press the brake pedal briefly.
– If the vehicle does not move forwards or backwards even though a gear is selected, proceed as follows: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may have failed to engage the gear correctly. In this case, press the brake pedal and select the gear again.
– If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, a system malfunction has occurred. Seek professional assistance and have the system checked.

General notes on driving an automatic

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

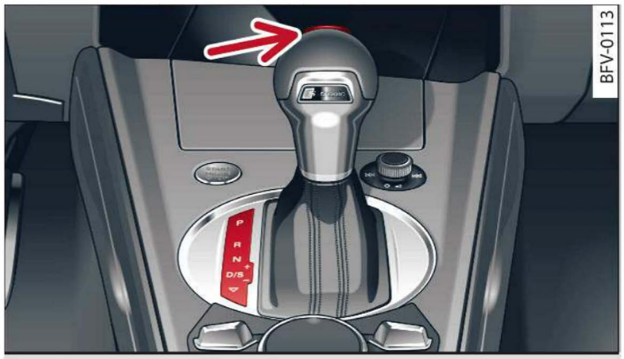


Fig. 81 Detail of the centre console: Selector lever with interlock button

Starting the engine

- The selector lever must be in position P or N. In the case of low outside temperatures (below -10 ℃), the engine can only be started when the selector lever is in position P.

Driving away from a standstill

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the interlock button (the button in the selector lever handle), set the selector lever to the desired position (e.g. D) ⇨ *page 77* and release the interlock button.
- Wait for the gearbox to engage the gear (a slight movement can be felt).
- Release the brake and press the accelerator ⇨ ⚠.

There are several convenient functions to help you drive away on gradients ⇨ *page 75*.

Stopping briefly

- Press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle when stationary (for instance at traffic lights).
- Do not press the accelerator.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling away, apply the parking brake before moving off on steep gradients ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ (!).
- As soon as you accelerate as normal with your seat belt fastened, the parking brake will automatically be released and the vehicle will start moving.

Stopping/parking the car

If you open the driver's door while the selector lever is not in position P, the vehicle can roll away. The message **Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P** appears on vehicles with convenience key*. A buzzer will also sound.

- Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the selector lever to P.

In some situations (such as when driving on mountain roads) it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual shift programme so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit the driving conditions ⇨ *page 81*.

On level ground it is sufficient to move the selector lever to P. On a gradient the parking brake should be applied first and the selector lever should be moved to P ⇨ *page 74*. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism and makes it easier to move the selector lever out of position P.

⚠ WARNING

– The driver should never get out of the vehicle when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must apply the parking brake and engage the parking lock P.
– If the engine is running and a gear is engaged (D/S or R) or the vehicle is in “tiptronic” mode, you will need to hold the car with the footbrake. Otherwise, the car will “creep” forwards as the power transmission is not ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fully interrupted even when the engine is idling.
– The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) and possibly cause an accident.
– Do not press the accelerator while selecting a gear with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
– Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
– Before you drive down a steep gradient, reduce the speed and use “tiptronic” to select a low gear.
– Never allow the brake to drag when driving downhill and do not use the brake pedal too often or for long periods. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.
– To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the footbrake or parking brake if you have to stop.
– Never attempt to hold the vehicle with the clutch when stopping on a gradient. The clutch is disengaged automatically if it is overloaded and becomes too hot - accident risk! If the clutch is overloaded, the indicator lamp will light up and a message will appear ⇨ *page 83*.

CAUTION

– When you have stopped on a gradient, do not try to stop the vehicle rolling back by accelerating when a gear is engaged. This could cause the automatic gearbox to overheat and become damaged. Apply the parking brake or press the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.
– If you allow the car to roll with the selector lever in position N with the engine switched off, the automatic gearbox will be damaged as it will not be lubricated.
– In certain driving and traffic conditions, for instance in stop-and-go traffic, if you have to pull away frequently or if the vehicle creeps forwards over a long distance, the gearbox can overheat and become damaged. If the indicator lamp or the warning lamp lights up, stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and let the gearbox cool down ⇨ *page 83*.
– If you allow the car to roll with the engine switched off, the S tronic gearbox will be damaged as it will not be lubricated ⇨ *page 278, Tow-starting / towing away*.

Note

For safety reasons the parking brake will only release automatically if the driver's seat belt is engaged in its buckle.

Downhill speed control

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The downhill speed control function helps the driver when driving down steep gradients.

Downhill speed control is activated on a downhill gradient when the selector lever is in D/S and the driver presses the brake pedal. The gearbox automatically selects a suitable gear for the gradient. The downhill speed control function attempts to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the foot brake was applied (subject to the laws of physics and technical limitations of the power train). It may be necessary to adjust the speed again using the foot brake. The downhill speed control can change down to 3rd gear but no further, so it may be necessary to change to tiptronic mode on very steep gradients. In this case, change down manually to 2nd or 1st gear in tiptronic mode to use the engine braking effect and reduce the load on the brakes.

Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with cruise control system* ⇨ *page 86*, downhill speed control is activated when you set a cruising speed. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

The downhill speed control function cannot defy the laws of physics and may therefore not be able to maintain a constant speed in certain circumstances. Always be prepared to use the brakes!

Manual gear selection (tiptronic mode)

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The tiptronic feature allows the driver to also change gear manually.

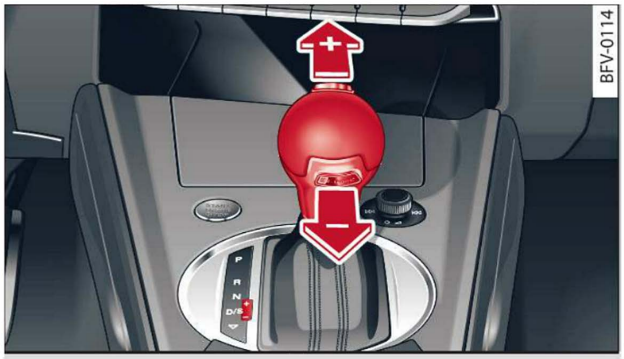


Fig. 82 Centre console: Manual gear selection using selector lever

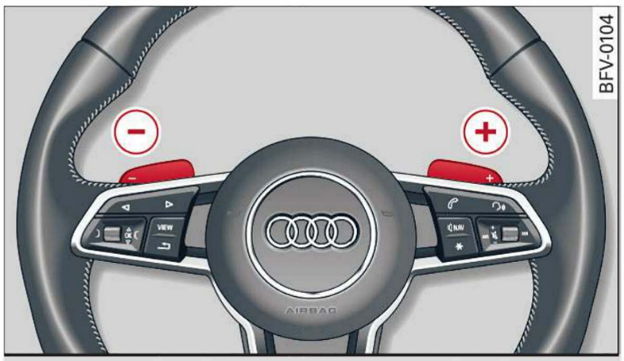


Fig. 83 Steering wheel: Manual gear selection with paddle levers*

Gear selection with selector lever

The tiptronic mode can be selected either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- From position D/S, push the selector lever to the right into the tiptronic selector gate to activate tiptronic mode. As soon as the automatic gearbox has activated this mode, the letter **M** will appear on the infotainment display ⇨*page 77, Fig. 79*; e.g. **M4** means that the vehicle is in 4th gear.
- Briefly push the selector lever forwards ⊕ ⇨*Fig. 82* to change up a gear.
- Briefly pull the selector lever back ⊖ to change down a gear.

Gear selection with paddle levers*

You can use the paddle levers when the selector lever is in position D/S or **M** (= tiptronic selector gate).

- To shift up a gear, briefly pull the paddle lever ⊕ ⇨*Fig. 83*.
- To shift down a gear, briefly pull the paddle lever ⊖.
- Applies to TT RS: To select the lowest/highest possible gear, hold the paddle lever ⊖ / ⊕ for longer.

If you use the paddle levers when the selector lever is in positions D/S, the gearbox will remain in manual mode for a while. To switch back immediately to automatic mode after changing gears manually, pull the paddle lever ⊕ ⇨*Fig. 83* for approximately 1 second.

If you want to use the paddle levers permanently, push the selector lever from position D/S to the right into the tiptronic selector gate.

The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

Applies to RS model: When accelerating, the gearbox does **not** automatically shift up into the next gear shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached. Remember to shift to the next gear in good time.

The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.

Kick-down feature

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The kick-down feature is designed to give maximum acceleration.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed right down past the point of resistance at full throttle, the gearbox will shift down to a lower gear, depending on road speed and engine speed, and the engine power will be fully exploited. The upshift to ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the next higher gear is delayed until the engine reaches maximum rpm.

WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Coasting mode

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

In coasting mode, you can use the vehicle's kinetic energy to drive without using the accelerator on certain stretches of road. This saves fuel by allowing you to take your foot off the accelerator earlier and let the vehicle coast (for instance when approaching a speed restriction in a built-up area).

Switching on coasting mode

Important: Selector lever must be in D, gradient must be less than 12 %.

- ▸ Select **efficiency** mode in drive select* ⇨*page 100* (you only have to do this once).
- ▸ Take your foot off the accelerator.

If you have selected the “on-board computer” display, the message **Coasting mode** will then appear. The gearbox automatically disengages the clutch at speeds above 20 km/h and lets the vehicle coast without the engine braking effect. The engine ticks over at idling speed while the vehicle is coasting.

Stopping coasting mode

- ▸ Press the brake pedal or accelerator.

To use the engine braking effect and overrun fuel cut-off again, all you need to do is tap the brake pedal briefly.

You can improve your fuel economy and help to reduce emissions by using a combination of the **coasting mode** (i.e. coasting with low fuel consumption on a longer stretch of road) and the **overrun fuel cut-off** (i.e. using the engine braking effect with no fuel consumption on a shorter stretch of road).

WARNING

- – If you are approaching an obstruction when coasting mode is switched on, please remember that the vehicle will not slow down as quickly as usual when you take your foot off the accelerator - risk of accident!
- – The vehicle can pick up speed if you are driving down a slope in coasting mode - risk of accident!
- – If other people are using your car, you should draw their attention to the coasting mode.

Note

- – Coasting mode is only available in **efficiency*** mode (drive select*).
- – The message **Coasting mode** only appears when the current fuel consumption display is selected. The gear is no longer displayed when you are in coasting mode (e.g. E instead of E6).
- – The coasting mode is deactivated temporarily on gradients of 15 % or greater.

Launch control programme

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The launch control programme enables maximum acceleration.

Important: The engine must be warm and the steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.

- ▸ Deactivate the start/stop system * ⇨*page 73*. The LED in the button will light up.
- ▸ Deactivate the hold assist* ⇨*page 76*. The LED in the button will go out.
- ▸ Press the OFF button once briefly while the engine is running [1)].

[1)] The ESC lamp lights up permanently and the message **Stabilisation control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability** appears temporarily in the infotainment display to indicate the deactivation status.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Briefly pull the selector lever back from position D/S to select position S, or move the selector lever to the right into the tiptronic gate, or select **dynamic** mode in drive select* ⇨*page 100*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- ▸ At the same time, press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot until the engine revs are high and steady.
- ▸ Take your left foot off the brake.

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.
– Only use the launch control programme when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your manner of driving and accelerating the vehicle does not inconvenience or endanger other road users.
– Please note that the driven wheels may start to spin when the sport mode is switched on, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads - danger of skidding!
– When acceleration has been completed, you should deactivate the sport mode again by briefly pressing the OFF button.

Note

– The gearbox may be hot after you have used the launch control programme. In this case, the programme may not be available for several minutes. The programme will be available again after a cool-down period.
– Accelerating with the launch control programme places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.

Gearbox malfunction

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

Gearbox malfunction! Please stop the vehicle and select P

There is a malfunction in the gearbox. Park the vehicle safely and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please stop vehicle

The gearbox is overheating and could be damaged. Stop the vehicle and let the gearbox cool down with the engine idling and the selector lever in position P. If the indicator lamp and the message disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Do not drive on if the warning lamp stays on and the message does not disappear. You should obtain professional assistance.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving. See owner's manual

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: no reverse gear. You can continue driving

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving in D until engine off

Park your vehicle well away from moving traffic. Obtain professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

You can continue driving at moderate speed. You can resume normal driving if the indicator lamp goes out.

Gearbox: please press brake pedal and select gear again

If a gearbox malfunction has occurred due to overheating, this message will appear once the gearbox has cooled down again.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Releasing the selector lever manually (LHD vehicles)

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The selector lever can be released manually if the electrical power supply should fail.



Fig. 84 Selector lever: Removing the cover

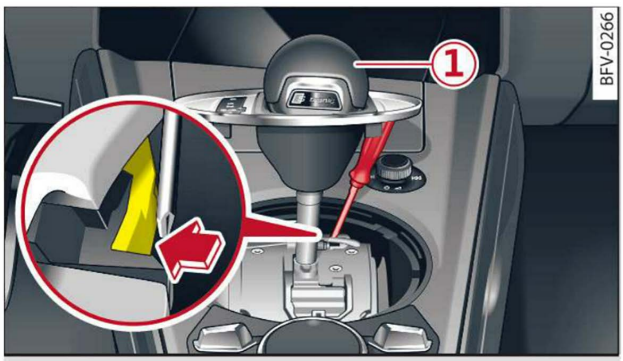


Fig. 85 Manually releasing the selector lever from position P

This section describes how to manually release the selector lever on left-hand drive vehicles.

The manual release mechanism is located on the right underneath the selector gate. Releasing the selector lever requires a certain degree of practical skill. We therefore advise you to obtain professional assistance.

To release the selector lever, you will need the screwdriver from the vehicle's tool kit, which is located in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 270*. Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert.

Removing the selector lever cover

- Apply the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ ⚠ to prevent your vehicle from moving.
- Insert the flat-blade side of the screwdriver into the opening at the side of the gear lever boot and lever off the boot ⇨ *Fig. 84*.
- Take hold of the selector lever boot and carefully turn it inside out over the gear knob ⇨ *Fig. 85*.

Releasing the selector lever manually

- Press the yellow release mechanism sideways with the screwdriver and hold it in place ⇨ *Fig. 85*.
- Now press the interlock button on the selector lever (1) and move the selector lever to position N.
- After manually releasing the selector lever make sure you clip the gear lever boot back into the gearshift gate.

If the power supply should ever fail (discharged battery, etc.) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever must first be moved to position N. This is possible after operating the manual release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

The selector lever must not be moved out of position P if the parking brake is not applied. If this does not work, use the brake pedal to hold the vehicle or use wheel chocks or similar to block one of the front and rear wheels. If you do not apply the brake, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Releasing the selector lever manually (RHD vehicles)

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The selector lever can be released manually if the electrical power supply should fail.

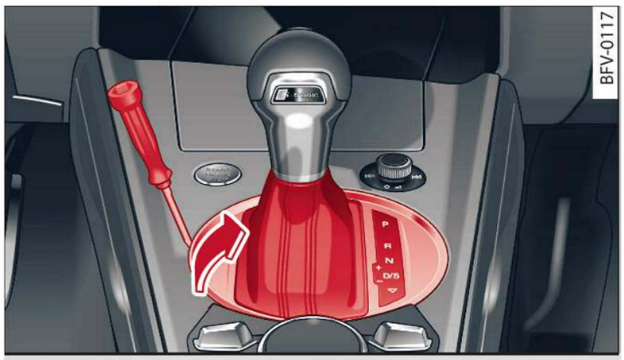


Fig. 86 Selector lever: Removing the cover

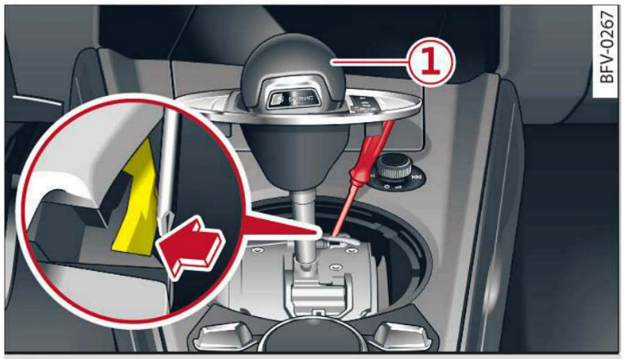


Fig. 87 Manually releasing the selector lever from position P

This section describes how to manually release the selector lever on right-hand drive vehicles.

The manual release mechanism is located on the right underneath the selector gate. Releasing the selector lever requires a certain degree of practical skill. We therefore advise you to obtain professional assistance.

To release the selector lever, you will need the screwdriver from the vehicle's tool kit, which is located in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 270*. Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert.

Removing the selector lever cover

- Apply the parking brake (P) ⇨ ⚠ to prevent your vehicle from moving.
- Insert the flat-blade side of the screwdriver into the opening at the side of the gear lever boot and lever off the boot ⇨ *Fig. 86*.
- Take hold of the selector lever boot and carefully turn it inside out over the gear knob ⇨ *page 84, Fig. 85*.

Releasing the selector lever manually

- Press the yellow release mechanism sideways with the screwdriver and hold it in place ⇨ *Fig. 87*.
- Now press the interlock button on the selector lever (1) and move the selector lever to position N.
- After manually releasing the selector lever make sure you clip the gear lever boot back into the gearshift gate.

If the power supply should ever fail (discharged battery, etc.) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever must first be moved to position N. This is possible after operating the manual release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

The selector lever must not be moved out of position P if the parking brake is not applied. If this does not work, use the brake pedal to hold the vehicle or use wheel chocks or similar to block one of the front and rear wheels. If you do not apply the brake, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver assist systems

Speed warning function

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function can help you keep below a pre-set maximum speed. It can be set, changed and deleted on the infotainment system.

The speed warning function will warn you if the vehicle exceeds the pre-set maximum speed. The system gives an audible warning signal if the set speed is exceeded by a small amount. At the same time, an indicator lamp and a message will appear on the instrument cluster display. The indicator lamp and the message will disappear when the road speed drops below the set value.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, etc.

Setting speed limit warning

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning** > **manual**.

Note

– Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the statutory speed limits.
– On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a speed of 120 km/h. This speed limit warning is preset at the factory.

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system allows you to drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h or higher.



Fig. 88 Control lever for cruise control system

- Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *Fig. 88* to switch on the system.
- Drive at the speed you wish to set the system to.
- Press the button marked (A) to store the speed.

The instrument cluster will indicate the stored speed, and the indicator lamp will light up.

A constant speed is maintained by adjusting the engine power or braking the vehicle accordingly.

WARNING

– Always direct your full attention to the road, even when you are using the cruise control system. It is always the driver who is responsible for determining the speed and for keeping a safe distance to the other vehicles on the road.
– For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in city traffic, stop-and-go traffic, on roads with a lot of bends or in difficult or slippery driving conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, etc.) - risk of accident!
– When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the cruise control system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator - this will override the cruise control system which, as a result, will not brake the vehicle.
– The automatic braking function may be deactivated if a system fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while the cruise control system is activated. All the other cruise control functions remain activated as long as the indicator lamp is lit.

Note

– Vehicles with manual gearbox: The set speed cannot be reached if the currently selected gear is too high or too low or if the engine would overrev or fail to run smoothly at the target speed. Make sure to change up or down a gear in good time.
– The brake lights come on when the system brakes the vehicle.

Adjusting the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or reduce the cruising speed in steps of 1 km/h, **briefly push** the lever one level upwards or downwards towards (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 86, Fig. 88*.
- To increase or reduce the cruising speed in steps of 10 km/h, **briefly push** the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 86, Fig. 88*.
- To increase or reduce the speed gradually, **hold** the lever towards (+)/(-) until you reach the desired cruising speed.

Overriding the set speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase speed in the normal way, for example to overtake another vehicle. Once you release the accelerator, the system will revert to the speed you stored initially.

However, if the vehicle exceeds the programmed speed significantly for a long time, the cruise control system will be deactivated temporarily.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster will go out, but the programmed speed will remain stored.

Pre-selecting a speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can pre-select a desired speed while the vehicle is stationary.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *page 86, Fig. 88*.
- Press the lever up towards (+) or down towards (-) in order to increase or reduce the cruising speed setting.

This function allows you to enter the desired cruise control setting speed ahead of time, for example before joining a motorway. Once you are on the motorway, you can activate the cruise control system by pulling the lever to position (1).

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Switching off temporarily

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Push the lever towards (2) (click stop not engaged) ⇨ *page 86, Fig. 88*.

Switching off completely

- Push the lever to position (2) (click stop engaged), or
- Switch off the ignition.

The speed setting will remain stored after the system is temporarily deactivated. To resume the programmed cruising speed, release the clutch or brake pedal and pull the lever to position (1).

The stored speed will be deleted once the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

Do not resume the programmed cruising speed if this is too high for the traffic conditions - this can cause accidents.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speed limiter

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter



Fig. 89 Speed limiter: illustration

At speeds above approximately 30 km/h, the speed limiter helps prevent the driver from exceeding a set cut-off speed. The indicator lamp LIM lights up as soon as you switch on the speed limiter.

Speed limiter displays

(1) - The speed limiter is in passive mode, but a cut-off speed has not yet been set.

(2) - The speed limiter is in passive mode, and a set cut-off speed has been stored.

(3) - The speed limiter is activated. The indicator lamp LIM flashes briefly when the speed limiter is applied.

WARNING

Always switch the speed limiter off after use to prevent it from being activated unintentionally.

– Even when using the speed limiter, the driver maintains full responsibility for controlling the vehicle's speed.
– Always direct your full attention to the road, even when you are using the speed limiter. It is always the driver who is responsible for determining the speed and for keeping a safe distance to the other vehicles on the road.
– For safety reasons, the speed limiter must not be used in adverse weather or difficult driving conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, etc.) - risk of accident!
– Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do do so safely.

CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter



Fig. 90 Control lever for cruise control system

- ▸ Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *Fig. 90* to switch on the system.
- ▸ Press button (B) to select the speed limiter. The message LIM **Speed limiter: selected** will appear on the instrument cluster.
- ▸ Press button (A) to store the cut-off speed while the car is moving.

The instrument cluster will indicate the stored cut-off speed, and the indicator lamp LIM will light up.

While the speed limiter is switched on, you can switch to the cruise control system* ⇨ *page 86*. Press button (B).

The last cut-off speed set for the speed limiter remains stored and can be applied again when you switch back into speed limiter mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the cut-off speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

- To increase or reduce the cut-off speed in steps of 1 km/h, **briefly push** the lever one level upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 88, Fig. 90*.
- To increase or reduce the cut-off speed in steps of 10 km/h, **briefly push** the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖.
- To increase or reduce the cut-off speed continuously, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖ and **hold** the lever until the desired speed is reached.

Overriding the cut-off speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

To override the speed limiter temporarily, press the accelerator fully past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

Speed limiting is suspended temporarily. The indicator lamp LIM flashes while the system is deactivated; the cut-off speed setting will remain stored. The system is reactivated automatically as soon as your speed drops below the original stored setting.

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

Switching off temporarily

- Push the lever towards ② (click stop not engaged) ⇨ *page 88, Fig. 90*. The instrument cluster will indicate the stored cut-off speed, and the indicator lamp LIM will light up.

Switching off completely

- Push the lever to position ② (click stop engaged), or
- Switch off the ignition.

The cut-off speed setting will remain stored after the system is temporarily deactivated. To resume the programmed cut-off speed, pull the lever to position ①. The vehicle speed is limited to the stored cut-off setting as soon as your current driving speed drops below the stored cut-off speed.

The stored cut-off speed will be deleted once the ignition is switched off.

Automatic deactivation

LIM Speed limiter: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The speed limiter has been automatically deactivated because the system has detected a fault which could impair its function. Try switching on the speed limiter again later.

WARNING

The speed limiter may be deactivated if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while the speed limiter is activated.

Note

If a system fault requires the speed limiter to switch off automatically, for safety reasons it does not switch off completely until the driver releases the accelerator pedal once or deactivates the system manually.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

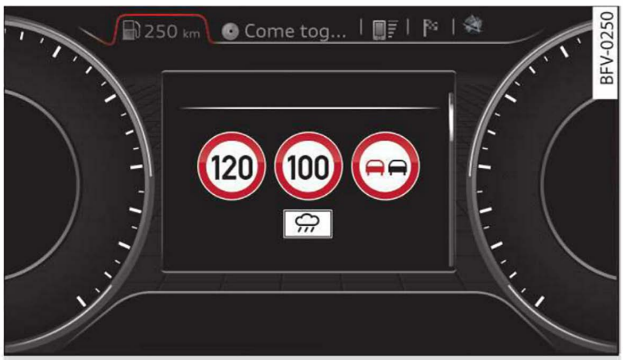


Fig. 91 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

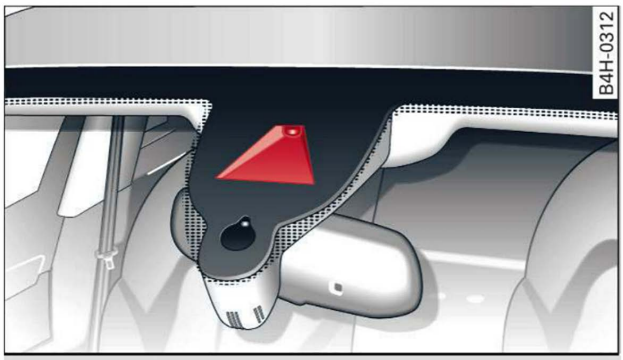


Fig. 92 Windscreen: Camera window for traffic sign recognition

Traffic signs detected by the camera appear in the infotainment display to keep you informed of current speed restrictions and no-overtaking zones. In cases where the system is able to detect temporary speed limits applicable in wet weather or at certain times of day ⇨ *Fig. 91* it will also display these traffic restrictions.

General notes

The traffic sign recognition system can detect standardised speed limit signs within the camera's range of vision. It makes use of the navigation data to evaluate the detected speed limits and show them on the display. Under certain conditions, the system will also display the legal speed limits on roads without speed limit signs.

Traffic sign recognition is not available in all countries. For a current list, see the Internet (e.g. www.audi.com). The system is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

– If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
– In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
– At high speeds.
– If the camera's range of vision ⇨ *Fig. 92* is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 263*.
– If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
– If traffic signs deviate from the standard appearance (round with red border).
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
– If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
– If traffic signs or routes have changed (navigation data out of date).

Some types of slow moving vehicles (such as heavy goods vehicles) carry speed stickers which, if detected by the system, may affect the display.

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using traffic sign recognition. The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

– Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.
– The traffic sign recognition system does not warn you if you exceed the speed limit and does not alter the speed of your vehicle to obey the speed limit.
– The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if **50** is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

Controls

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition



Fig. 93 Instrument cluster: Secondary display

Calling up traffic sign menu

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > **On-board computer**, or
- Use the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel to switch to the "Car" tab and scroll the thumbwheel to select the desired menu.

Secondary display

If the infotainment display is currently showing a function other than traffic sign recognition, the currently speed limit will be displayed automatically in the bottom right-hand corner as a secondary display to the selected system ⇨ *Fig. 93*. If the system is able to detect a temporary speed restriction in a given situation, it will update the display accordingly.

Temporary speed restrictions are displayed in the following situations:

– A temporary speed restriction for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating.
– A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
– A speed restriction for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights (or front fog lights, depending on your vehicle's equipment) are switched on.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

No traffic sign recognised

No relevant navigation data are available, and no speed limit has been detected.

Function unavailable in this country

The vehicle is being driven in a country outside the system's operational area. For a current list of supported countries, go to www.audi.com.

Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted. See owner's manual

This message appears, for instance, in the event of a navigation system fault. The limited functionality may cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error).

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is currently unable to function properly and will be deactivated. This can happen, for instance, if the camera is dirty and a navigation system malfunction occurs simultaneously.

Fault. See owner's manual

The function of the system is impaired; the system will be deactivated. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Traffic sign recognition: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed ⇨ *page 90*.

Please switch on the ignition to display

When the ignition is switched off, this message will appear to indicate that the system is not available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi active lane assist (lane departure warning feature)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

The active lane assist uses a camera in the windscreen to detect lane markings (subject to general system limitations). If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system corrects the steering to warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings. You can override this steering input at any time. The steering wheel vibrates slightly if you cross a lane marking. The vibration warning must be activated beforehand on the infotainment system. The active lane assist is functional when it detects a demarcation line on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving.

As the system is designed for driving on motorways and other major roads, it is only active above a speed of about 65 km/h (may vary in different export markets).

Applies to vehicles with side assist*: If you operate the turn signals while the active lane assist and side assist are active, the steering will be corrected just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

Applies to vehicles without side assist*: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

WARNING

– The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn the driver that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. As the driver you are always responsible for staying in your own lane.
– The system can assist you to keep the vehicle in the lane, however it is not capable of driving on its own. Never take your hands off the steering wheel.
– In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering.
– In certain circumstances, not all of the lane markings may be detected by the camera. A corrective steering input can only be initiated if the system detects a lane marking on the side in question.
– Variations in the road surface or objects on the road may be misinterpreted as lane markings. In this case, the steering may be corrected unexpectedly or not at all.
– The camera's view might be obstructed, for example by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, a lot of water on the road, adverse light or dirt on the windscreen. If this happens, the active lane assist may not detect the lane markings or may respond incorrectly.
– In certain circumstances, for instance if visibility is poor, the setting for the steering input may be switched internally from “early” to “late” [1].
– In certain driving conditions, such as ruts in the road surface, adverse cambers or side winds, the assistance provided by the steering correction may be insufficient to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
– For safety reasons, the active lane assist must not be used in poor weather or in difficult or slippery road conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, snow, etc.) - risk of accident!

[1] The steering input function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 94 Turn signal lever: Button for active lane assist

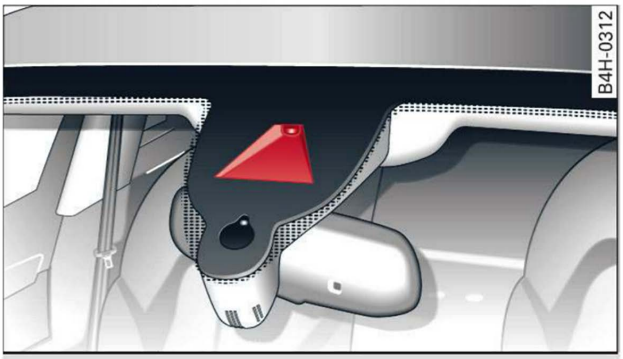


Fig. 95 Windscreen: Camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 94* to switch the system on/off. The indicator lamp or in the instrument cluster will light up or go out.

Indicator lamps

Ready: The indicator lamp lights up when the system is fully functional. The system is ready to intervene.

Not ready: The indicator lamp lights up when the system is switched on but not ready to intervene. The causes for this can include the following:

– There are no lane markings.
– The system cannot detect the relevant lane markings (e.g. temporary markings for road works or markings obscured by snow, dirt, rain or adverse light).
– The vehicle's speed is below 65 km/h, the speed at which the lane assist system is activated (the threshold may vary in different export markets).
– The traffic lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.

Note

– Make sure that the camera window ⇨ *Fig. 95* is not covered with stickers or similar objects. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 263*.
– On vehicles for some export markets: once the system is activated, it is "ready" each time the ignition is switched on.

Infotainment display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

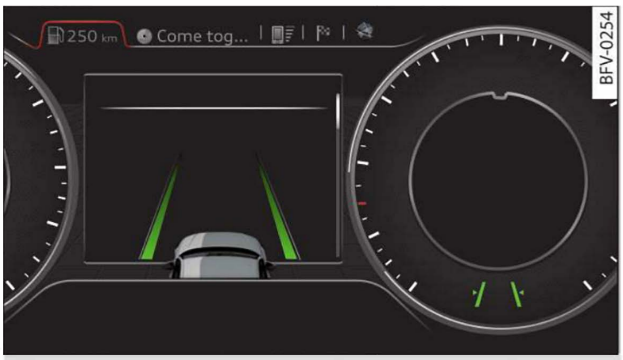


Fig. 96 Instrument cluster: active lane assist switched on and ready to warn

You can use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to call up the active lane assist display ⇨ *page 20*.

Green line(s)	The active lane assist is switched on and ready to warn.
Red line(s) (left or right sides)	The active lane assist warns you before you cross the lane demarcation ⇨ *Fig. 96*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates slightly.
Grey line(s)	The active lane assist is switched on but not ready to warn.

Driver messages on the infotainment display

Should the active lane assist be deactivated automatically, the indicator lamp on the display will go out and one of the following messages will appear:

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This message is displayed when the camera is no longer functional after the system has continuously failed to detect the lane markings. This can have the following causes:

– The outside of the camera window ⇨ *page 93, Fig. 95* is dirty or frosted. Remove dirt or ice from this area of the windscreen.
– The inside of the camera window is misted up. In this case, wait for the camera window to demist before switching on the active lane assist system again.
– Due to the road conditions, the system has not been able to detect the lane markings for a long period. Do not switch the active lane assist system on again before the lane markings are discernible.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

A temporary fault is preventing the active lane assist system from being switched on. Try switching on the active lane assist system again later.

Audi active lane assist: fault. See owner's manual

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Audi active lane assist: please take over steering

This message will appear if you do not steer the vehicle yourself. In this case, the active lane assist will switch to “not ready for warning” but will not be deactivated completely. The system can assist you to keep the vehicle in the lane. However it is your own responsibility to steer and control the vehicle.

WARNING

Please note that the messages only appear with a delay or are not displayed at all on vehicles with additional equipment (such as steering wheel knobs) fitted on the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Setting the steering input time and vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

You can change the active lane assist settings on the infotainment system to suit your individual preferences.

Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi active lane assist**.

Steering input[1)]

early: If this setting is selected, a continuous steering input assists the driver to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.

late: If this setting is selected, the steering is not corrected until just before a wheel touches a detected lane marking.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional steering wheel vibration warning on/off.

Note

Your personal settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key which is being used (only applies to some countries).

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Lap timer

You can use the lap timer in the display to record and evaluate lap times. The times are recorded in minutes, seconds and tenths of a second. The hour will appear in the display and the tenths of a second will disappear if the session lasts for over 60 minutes.

Individual lap times stop automatically after 99 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds. A new lap will then start automatically. ▶

1) The steering input function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The lap timer stops after a maximum of 30 laps. You can then evaluate the lap times or start a new session.

The lap timer is operated using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel ⇨ *page 95*.

WARNING

Please direct your full attention at all times to the road! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the lap timer functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations - accident risk!

Note

You can call up information from the on-board computer while the stopwatch of the lap timer is running.

Calling up the lap timer and recording lap times

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer



Fig. 97 Multi-function steering wheel: Controls

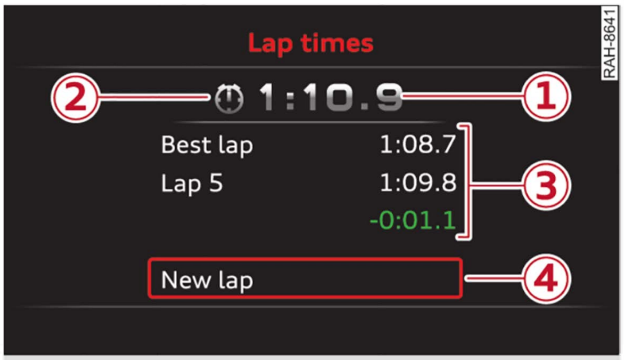


Fig. 98 Instrument cluster: Lap timer

Calling up the lap timer

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Lap times**.
- Scroll the thumbwheel (A) ⇨ *Fig. 97* until **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** ⇨ *Fig. 98* appears.
- Press the thumbwheel (A) to confirm your selection.

Recording lap times

- To finish measuring the current lap time, press the thumbwheel (A) on the menu item **New lap**. The next lap time starts running immediately. The previous lap time moves to the top of the display (1). The current lap time is shown in the centre line in area (3).

The symbol will stay green if the current lap time is the best time so far. The symbol will turn red if the lap time is not as good (2).

Displaying split times and interrupting the lap timer for a break

- To display a split time, scroll the thumbwheel (A) until **Split time** appears in line (4). Press the thumbwheel (A) to confirm your selection. The split time appears in area (3) for approximately 10 seconds. The current lap time continues running in the meantime.

If you want to take a break (pause) immediately after displaying the split times, first press the thumbwheel (A) to confirm the menu item **Back - select OK**.

- To pause the timer, scroll the thumbwheel (A) until **Pause** appears in line (4). Press the thumbwheel (A) to confirm your selection. The pause symbol appears in area (3).
- Press the thumbwheel (A) to resume the lap time.

If you interrupt the lap timer to take a break, you can resume recording later on, even if you switched off the ignition in the meantime.

Legend for infotainment display ⇨ *Fig. 98*:

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

①	Last recorded lap time
②	Symbols: - : Start time - : Worst lap time - : Best lap time - : Split time - : Pause
③	Current lap time
④	Menu: - Start lap 1 by driving off (start lap) - Start by driving off (start lap) - New lap (start another lap) - Split time (lap sector time) - Pause (interrupt lap timer) - Cancel lap - Reset timer (zero all lap times)

Evaluating lap times and resetting the lap timer

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can use the lap timer to evaluate the fastest, slowest and average lap times.

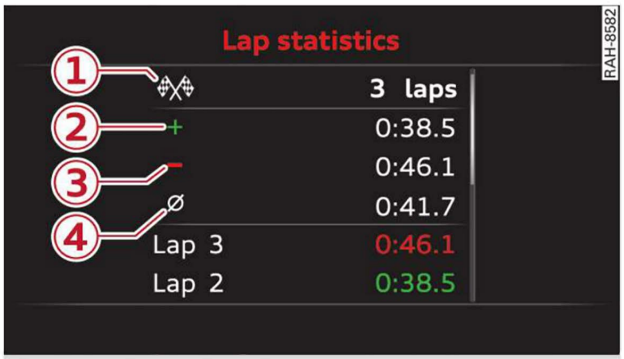


Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: Lap timer

After you have evaluated the lap times, you can resume the existing session or start a new session (i.e. start again with lap 1).

- ▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Lap statistics**. The fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "–" and the average time "Ø" will appear in the display. To show the individual lap times, scroll the thumbwheel Ⓐ up/down.
- ▸ Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to resume the existing session.
- ▸ To reset the lap timer and clear the lap times, press the left control button on the multi-function steering wheel. Then scroll the thumbwheel Ⓐ to select the desired setting with the cursor (red frame). Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm your selection.
- ▸ To restart the lap timer and record new laps, press the thumbwheel Ⓐ.
- ▸ To exit the lap timer, press the MENU button.

Explanation of evaluation in ⇨ *Fig. 99*:

①	Total number of laps
②	+ : Best lap time
③	: Worst lap time
④	Ø : Average lap time

Note

– Recorded lap times cannot be deleted individually from the overall results.
– The data recorded in the lap timer remain stored after the ignition is switched off.

Sport displays

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit and sport displays

The sport displays include the G meter, the engine data and the tyre pressure display. You can call up the sport displays in the central area or in the additional display in the driver information system.

Calling up the sport displays in the central area

- ▸ Call up the first tab (on-board computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- ▸ Select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: left control button > **Sport displays**.
- ▸ Scroll the left thumbwheel ⑦ ⇨ *page 21* on the multi-function steering wheel until the desired sport display appears in the instrument cluster.

Calling up the sport displays in the additional display

- ▸ On the multi-function steering wheel, select right control button > **Additional display**.
- ▸ Select the desired additional display. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

G meter

The G meter shows the lateral and longitudinal forces generated. The maximum values measured are stored and displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

- To reset the stored values, select the following on the multi-function steering wheel: right control button > **Reset values**.

Engine data

The engine data display shows the current power and torque levels.

Tyre pressure display

The tyre pressure display shows the current inflation pressures and temperature. Also refer to ⇨ *page 260, Tyre pressure monitoring system*.

Audi side assist (lane change assist feature)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

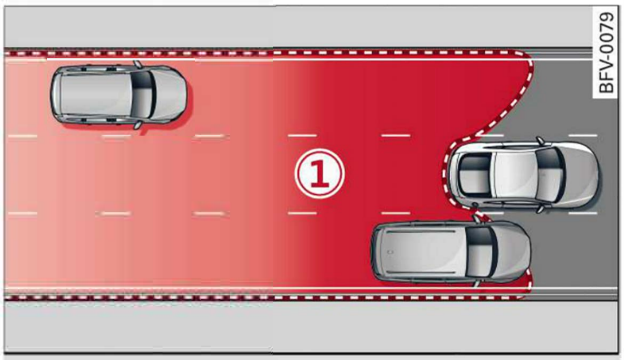


Fig. 100 Area covered by the radar sensors



Fig. 101 Warning lamp on exterior mirror

The side assist function assists the driver in monitoring following traffic and the blind spots on both sides of the car. Within certain system limits, it warns you if it detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle in the area covered by the sensors (1) ⇨ *Fig. 100*: if it judges a lane change to be critical, the warning lamp (2) on the exterior mirror lights up ⇨ *Fig. 101*.

The warning lamp on the left-hand mirror assists the driver when changing lane towards the left and the warning lamp on the right-hand mirror assists the driver when changing lane towards the right.

Information mode

As long as you do not operate the turn signal, the side assist will merely *inform* you of the presence of vehicles that it has detected and judges to be critical. In this case, the warning lamp on the relevant exterior mirror will light up at low intensity.

The intensity of the warning lamp in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

If you operate the turn signal, the side assist will *warn* you if it registers what it judges to be a critical vehicle. In this case, the warning lamp on the relevant exterior mirror will flash brightly. Please check the situation in the exterior mirror and by looking back over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 98*.

Note

You can adjust the brightness of the warning lamp on the exterior mirror ⇨ *page 99*.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

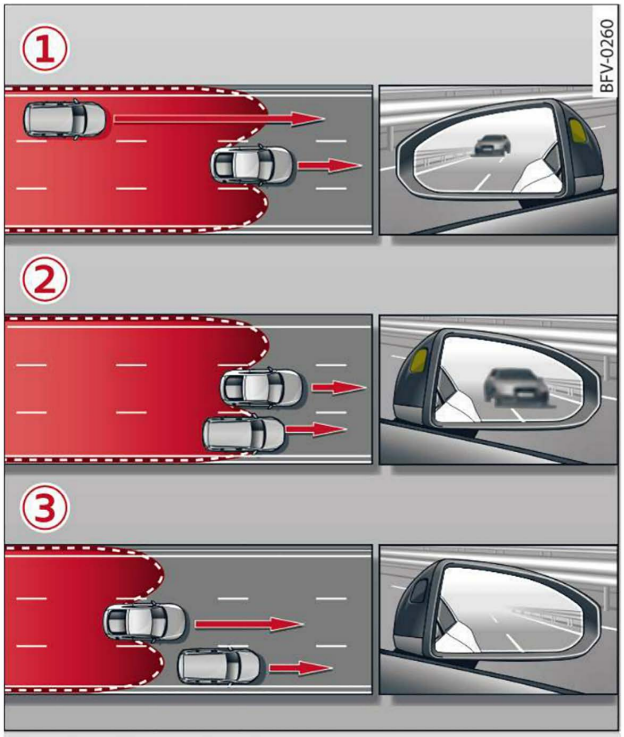


Fig. 102 Driving situations



Fig. 103 Rear of vehicle: Location of the sensors (example)

The side assist is active above a speed of about 30 km/h.

① Vehicles approaching from behind

In certain cases, a vehicle is judged to be critical in the event of a lane change even if it is still some distance away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the earlier the warning will appear on the exterior mirror.

② Vehicles moving at a similar speed

The warning lamp in the relevant exterior mirror will warn you of vehicles that are moving with the flow of traffic at about the same speed as you if they are judged to be critical in the event of a lane change. In all cases, the side assist will give a warning for the vehicles it has detected at the latest when they enter the “blind spot”.

③ Other vehicles being overtaken

When you are overtaking another vehicle slowly, with a speed differential of less than 15 km/h, the warning lamp in the exterior mirror will light up as soon as the other vehicle enters your blind spot.

If you are overtaking another vehicle quickly, with a speed differential of more than 15 km/h, the warning lamp will not light up.

System limitations

The radar sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations the warning lamp on one of the exterior mirrors may light up even if no vehicle is travelling in an area that could be critical in the event of a lane change. For example:

– When you are travelling in a narrow lane or when you are not travelling in the centre of the lane. In this case the system may monitor another lane and register a vehicle that is *not* in fact travelling in an adjacent lane.
– When you are driving into a bend. The side assist may react to a vehicle two lanes away.
– If the system detects other objects (such as crash barriers, etc).
– In poor weather conditions. The functionality of the side assist is then restricted.

The radar sensors ⇨ *Fig. 103* must not be obstructed by stickers, bicycle racks, deposits or any other substances which could impair the function of the system. For notes on cleaning, please refer to ⇨ *page 263*.

WARNING

– Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The side assist feature is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver. The driver is always responsible for the safety of lane changes and other manoeuvres. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– In certain situations, the system may not function properly, or the functionality of the system may be restricted. For example:
  – If other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly. The warning lamp may not light up in time.
  – In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or road spray.
  – If you are travelling in very wide lanes, in tight bends or over crests. The system may not detect vehicles in the adjacent lane because they are outside the area covered by the sensors.

CAUTION

Impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel arches or underbody can cause misalignment of the sensors. This can impair the functionality of the system. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Note

The warning lamps on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The system can be switched on and off on the infotainment system.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The warning lamps in the exterior mirrors light up briefly each time the ignition is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.

Adjusting brightness of warning lamp

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The brightness of the warning lamp can be adjusted on the infotainment system.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The brightness of the warning lamp in both the information and warning modes is regulated automatically according to the ambient light level. If you are in very dark or very light surroundings when you adjust the brightness of the warning lamp, the automatic brightness control may already have reached the lowest or the brightest setting. In such a case it is possible that you won't notice a difference while you are adjusting the brightness or that you will only notice it once the light surroundings have changed.

Please adjust the brightness of the warning lamp for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. When you change the brightness, the warning lamp on the exterior mirror will light up briefly with the intensity set for the information mode. The intensity of the lamp in the warning mode is linked to the intensity in the information mode and is adjusted automatically.

Note

– The side assist is not active while the settings are being adjusted.
– Your personal settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key which is being used.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

Should the side assist be deactivated automatically, a driver message will appear on the infotainment display.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The radar sensors are blocked. The area in front of the sensors must not be obstructed by bicycle ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

racks, stickers, deposits or any other substances. If necessary, clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 98, Fig. 103*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The side assist is temporarily inoperative and cannot be switched on (for instance if the battery is not sufficiently charged).

Audi side assist: fault. Please contact workshop

The system cannot detect vehicles reliably and will be deactivated. The sensors are out of alignment or defective. Have the system checked by a qualified workshop soon.

Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions)

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. The four modes **efficiency***, **comfort**, **auto** and **dynamic** allow the driver, for example, to change from a sporty mode to a more comfortable one via the drive select button in the centre console or via the infotainment system. In addition, the **individual** mode allows you to adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic engine set-up with a lighter steering response.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The possible vehicle set-up in each mode depends on which equipment is installed on your vehicle.

Engine and automatic gearbox*

The response of the engine and automatic gearbox* to accelerator pedal movements will be more spontaneous or balanced, depending on which mode you select. In efficiency* mode the automatic gearbox* selects the next gear at lower engine speeds and the coasting mode is activated ⇨ *page 82*. This helps to reduce fuel consumption.

Suspension control (Audi magnetic ride)*

The suspension control uses sensors to collect information on steering movements, braking and acceleration input by the driver, road surface quality, road speed and vehicle loading. With drive select you can choose between dynamic and comfort-oriented suspension set-ups (dynamic and comfort modes), or opt for a more balanced set-up (auto mode).

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. The light, indirect steering response in comfort mode is particularly suitable on long motorway trips, for instance. The steering has a tighter, more direct feel in dynamic mode.

Air conditioner*

The air conditioner runs in a particularly economical mode when the efficiency* setting is selected. When this function is selected, **eco*** is shown in the display of the automatic air conditioner.

Cruise control system*

The acceleration response is particularly economical in efficiency* mode.

Engine sound*

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected mode and ranges from subdued to dynamic.

Note

- On some models the vehicle's maximum speed can only be obtained in the auto and dynamic modes.
- On vehicles with manual gearbox, an **E** appears in the gear-change indicator when efficiency* mode is activated.
- Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: If you press the accelerator right down past the point of resistance in **efficiency*** mode, the engine power is automatically controlled to give your vehicle maximum acceleration.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– On vehicles with automatic gearbox, if you select efficiency* mode when the selector lever is in position D, **E** will automatically appear on the infotainment display.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can choose between efficiency, comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.*



Fig. 104 Centre console: Button for drive select

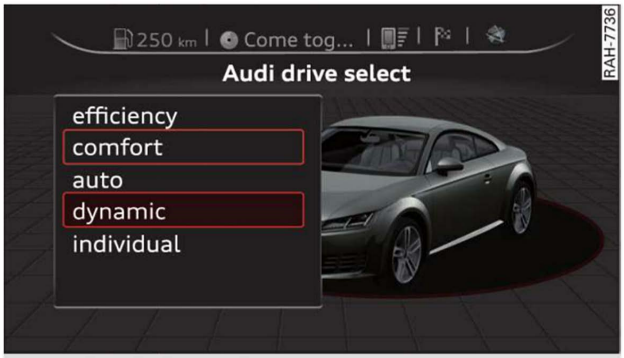


Fig. 105 Infotainment: Drive select

- Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 104*, or
- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.
- Move the cursor (red frame) to select the desired setting.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the engine.

efficiency* - trims the vehicle to an especially fuel-saving set-up and helps the driver adopt an economical driving style.

comfort - alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride.

auto - gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride and is a good choice of set-up for everyday use.

dynamic - gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving.

individual - ⇨ *page 101*.

WARNING

Always keep an eye on the traffic when using the drive select controls - Risk of accident!

Configuring individual mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can configure your own personal vehicle set-up.

- Press the button ⇨ *page 101, Fig. 104* > **individual** > right control button, or:
- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Audi drive select** > **individual** > right control button.

The **individual*** driving mode will automatically be activated when you have finished configuring the settings.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select. The following table provides an overview of the characteristics. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine and **Gearbox**	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic
Steering	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic
Suspension control*	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic
Engine sound*	Subdued	Balanced	Dynamic
Applies to TTS: **quattro**	Balanced	Balanced	Dynamic
Applies to TT RS: **quattro**	Balanced	Neutral	Dynamic

Note

Your settings in **individual*** mode are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key currently in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking aids

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid/parking system plus/park assist

Various systems are available to help you when parking or manoeuvring in tight spaces, depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle.

The **rear parking aid** gives an acoustic warning if there are any obstacles *behind* the car ⇨ *page 104*.

When you are parking, the **parking system plus** warns you acoustically and optically about obstacles detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 104*. On vehicles with **park assist**, the area detected at the side of the vehicle Ⓢ ⇨ *page 104, Fig. 106* is also monitored.

The **reversing camera** uses the infotainment system display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking or manoeuvring ⇨ *page 106*. In addition, you are assisted by the functions of the parking system plus ⇨ *page 104*.

The **park assist** helps you to find suitable parking spaces, to manoeuvre the vehicle into spaces parallel or perpendicular to the roadside and to drive out of spaces parallel to the kerb ⇨ *page 108*.

WARNING

- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The electronic systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Please note that certain surfaces, such as clothing fabrics, cannot be detected or displayed by the system - risk of accident!
- The sensors and cameras have blind spots in which neither people nor objects are registered. It is particularly important to ensure that there are no small children or animals near the vehicle - risk of accident!
- Impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arches or underbody can cause misalignment of the sensors. This can impair the effectiveness of the parking aids. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

- The system may not always be able to detect objects such as the following:
  - Chains, trailer draw bars, posts or fences
  - Objects above the sensors, such as wall protrusions, etc.
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire fences or powder snow
- As your car moves closer to low obstacles, they may disappear from the sensors' field of vision. Please note that you will no longer be warned about these obstacles.
- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Note

- In certain situations, a warning may be given by the system even if there is no obstacle within range of the sensors. This can be caused by the following, for instance:
  - Certain road surfaces or long grass
  - External ultrasound sources, e.g. from street cleaning vehicles
  - Heavy rain or snow or dense exhaust fumes
- To familiarise yourself with the system, we recommend that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.
- You can adjust the volume of the beeps.
- There is a slight delay in the picture display.
- To ensure that the acoustic parking aid works properly, the sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear parking aid

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

The rear parking aid is an acoustic parking system.

Description

Sensors are located in the rear bumper. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps).

Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 263*.

The measuring range of the sensors starts at about:

Rear	Side	0.90 m
	Centre	1.60 m

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach the obstacle. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 103*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 103*!

The volume of the warning beeps will be gradually reduced after about four seconds if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (it will not be reduced if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m).

Activating

The rear parking aid is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/park assist

The parking system plus provides acoustic and visual assistance when parking.

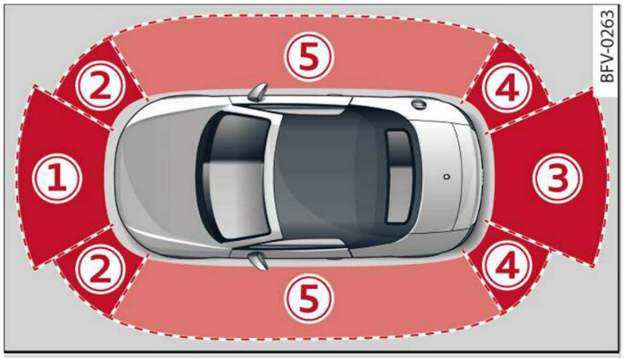


Fig. 106 Diagram

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a graphic display.

Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 263*.

Approximate range for each display zone:

①	1.20 m
②	0.90 m
③	1.60 m
④	0.90 m
⑤*	0.90 m[a)]

a) Applies to vehicles with park assist

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach the obstacle. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle (or less than approx. 0.20 m away in zone ⑤*). Stop moving immediately ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 103*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 103*!

The volume of the warning beeps will be gradually reduced after about four seconds if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (it will not be reduced if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Zone (5)* is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch on the ignition or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while or a door is opened, the ambient surroundings may have changed. Zone (5)* is displayed in black on the infotainment system for this reason.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 107 Centre console: Button for parking aid



Fig. 108 Proximity graphic (vehicles with park assist*)

Switching on

- Engage reverse gear, or
- Press the P button in the centre console ⇨ *Fig. 107*. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

Switching off

- Drive forwards faster than 10 km/h, or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch off the ignition.

Automatic activation

The parking aid is activated automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle from a distance of approx. 95 cm at speeds below 10 km/h. You will hear the warning beeps when the obstacle is within a distance of approx. 50 cm. If the parking aid is switched off by pressing the P button, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:

– The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
– The ignition is switched off and on again.
– The parking brake is applied and released again.
– Position P is selected (automatic gearbox).

Segments in the graphic display

You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the segments in front of and behind the vehicle (vehicles with parking system plus*) or the segments surrounding the vehicle (vehicles with park assist*) ⇨ *Fig. 108*. The red lines indicate the anticipated path of the vehicle, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment indicates an obstacle that has been detected beyond the path of travel. Red segments represent objects detected within the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 103*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 103*!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reversing camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera

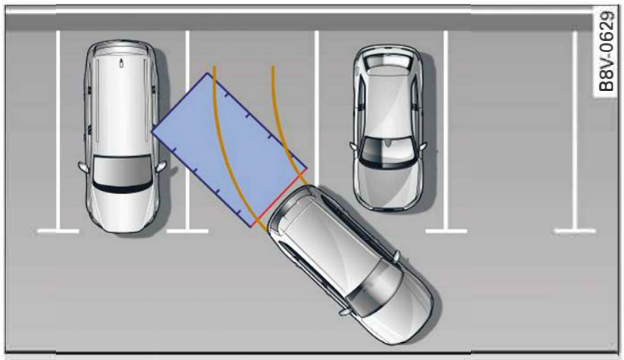


Fig. 109 Diagram: Orientation lines for parking

The reversing camera assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera

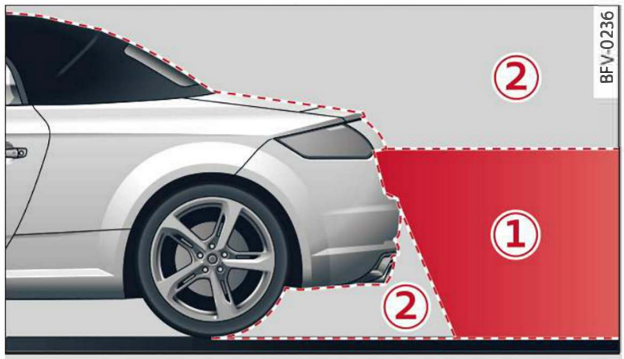


Fig. 110 ①: Area covered by the reversing camera; ②: area NOT covered by the reversing camera



Fig. 111 Boot lid: Location of reversing camera

The reversing camera is located above the rear number plate. Please ensure that the lens of the reversing camera ⇨ *Fig. 111* is kept free of deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the parking aid. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 263*.

① ⇨ *Fig. 110* represents the area covered by the reversing camera. Only this area is shown in the picture on the infotainment display. Objects out of range of the camera in area ② do not appear in the picture.

WARNING

- Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 103*.
- For safety reasons, you should not use the system if the position and installation angle of the reversing camera have been changed, e.g. due to an accident. Have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- Only use the reversing camera to assist you if it is supplying you with a good and clear picture. The quality of the picture can be impaired by adverse light, dirt on the lens or a defect.
- Only use the reversing camera when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. Objects on the screen are modified and depicted inaccurately.
- In certain situations, people or objects on the display may appear closer or further away than they really are:
  - Objects which are not touching the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a tow-bar or the rear end of a truck. In this case, do not use the orientation lines as a guide.
  - When you are reversing from a horizontal surface up a gradient or down a hill.
  - When approaching protruding objects.
  - When the vehicle has been loaded with a greater load on the rear.

CAUTION

- Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 103*.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The orange orientation lines on the infotainment display show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera

Switching on

- Engage reverse gear, or
- Press the P button in the centre console ⇨ *page 105, Fig. 107*. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

Switching off

- Drive forwards faster than 10 km/h, or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch off the ignition.

Note

– The graphic on the left of the display helps identify the critical area of the vehicle.
– You can change the display and adjust the volume of the beeps ⇨ *page 112*.

Parking perpendicular to the roadside

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera

This view can be used when parking your vehicle in a garage or parking bay.

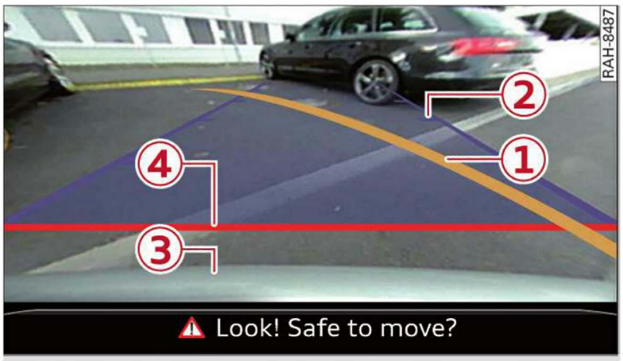


Fig. 112 Infotainment display: Approaching a parking space



Fig. 113 Infotainment display: Aligning the vehicle

- Switch on the infotainment system and select reverse gear.
- The orange orientation lines ① represent the path of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space ⇨ *Fig. 112*. You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the markings ②. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 metre. The blue marking is an extension of the vehicle outline and reaches about five metres to the rear of the vehicle.
- Reverse into the space and adapt the steering angle to the parking space, using the orange lines to assist you ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 106*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 106*. ③ represents the rear bumper. Stop moving, at the latest, when the red orientation line ④ is bordering on an obstacle.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Park assist with 360° display

Description

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of parking spaces.

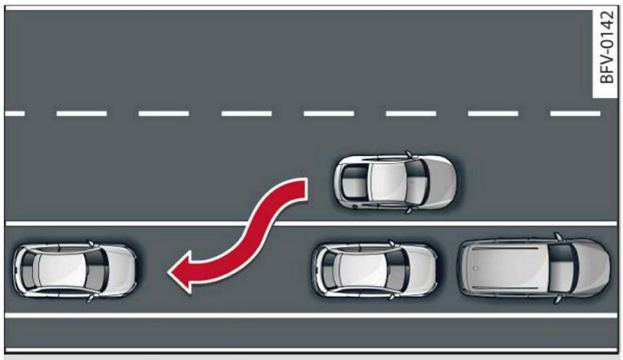


Fig. 114 Diagram: Parking parallel to the roadside

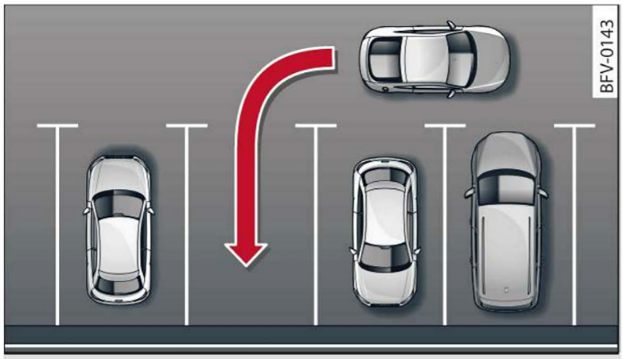


Fig. 115 Diagram: Parking perpendicular to the roadside

The park assist helps you to find suitable parking spaces, to manoeuvre the vehicle into spaces parallel or perpendicular to the roadside and to drive out of spaces parallel to the kerb. The parking space can be located between two vehicles or behind one vehicle. The park assist takes over the steering while the driver is parking the vehicle in the usual way.

The parking system plus is an integral component of the park assist ⇨ *page 104* and helps you during the parking manoeuvre.

The park assist sensors are located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers. Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 263*.

In short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!

WARNING

- Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 103*.
- Please note that the park assist only handles the steering. As the driver you are always responsible for braking and accelerating.
- It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
- The front of the vehicle swings out during the parking manoeuvre. Please take all necessary measures to ensure that other road users are not endangered.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

CAUTION

- Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 103*.
- In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims.
- Certain conditions in and around the parking space can cause unexpected results when parking.
  - Objects such as pillars, posts, etc.
  - Road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow, ice, etc.

Note

- The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 114*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle on tight bends.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 116 Centre console: Button for park assist

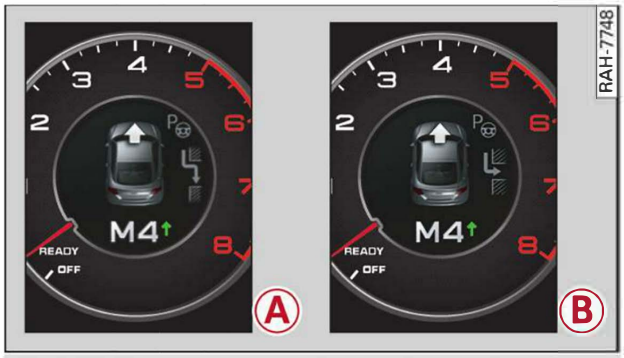


Fig. 117 Instrument cluster: Looking for a parking space. (A) parallel to the roadside, (B) perpendicular to the roadside

- To park parallel to the roadside, press the button once ⇨ *Fig. 116*. Display (A) ⇨ *Fig. 117* will appear on the infotainment system. Or:
- To park perpendicular to the roadside, press the button twice. Display (B) will appear.
- The LED in the button is lit if the park assist is switched on.
- To switch off the park assist, press the button. The LED in the button will go out.

Looking for a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 118 Instrument cluster: Prompt to keep driving forwards (a parking space has been detected)

The section below describes how to park parallel to the roadside. The procedure for parking perpendicular to the roadside is similar.

Important: For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.

- Activate the turn signal for the side on which you want to park.
- To park parallel to the roadside, drive forwards at not more than 30 km/h. Or:
- To park perpendicular to the roadside, drive forwards at not more than 20 km/h.
- The system will display a parking space when it finds one ⇨ *Fig. 118*. Please check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle.

If you exceed a speed of about 50 km/h, the park assist will be switched off.

The park assist will display a parking space only if it is long and wide enough for the vehicle.

If you operate the left turn signal, the display will show the left side of the road (and vice-versa).

Note

– You can activate the park assist after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press the button and operate the turn signal.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The best parking results will be achieved if you position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or the kerb before you start the actual parking manoeuvre.
– If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals to park on the other side, even if you have already activated the park assist.

Parking parallel to the roadside

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The driver is responsible for parking the vehicle.



Fig. 119 Instrument cluster: Prompt to select reverse gear



Fig. 120 Instrument cluster: Manoeuvring into a parking space

▸ Drive forwards until the arrow is displayed ⇨ *Fig. 119* ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 108*, ⇨ (!) *in Description on page 108*.
▸ After stopping for a moment, select reverse gear.
▸ Wait until the following text appears in the display: **Park assist: steering assistance active. Please drive slowly and operate the brakes yourself**.
▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator gently ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 108*, ⇨ (!) *in Description on page 108*.
▸ Follow the instructions on the display ⇨ *page 111* and the acoustic warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete. The arrows show the required direction of travel.

The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals (accelerator, brake, clutch*). The maximum parking speed is 7 km/h. The park assist will be deactivated if you drive too fast or move the steering wheel by hand. To continue the parking manoeuvre, press the button again. The park assist display will reappear in the instrument cluster.

Driving out of a parking space parallel to the roadside

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The driver is responsible for manoeuvring the vehicle out of the parking space.

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, the park assist can help you to manoeuvre the vehicle so that you can drive straight out of the parking space.

▸ Start the engine.
▸ Press the button ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 116*.
▸ Wait until the following text appears on the infotainment display: **To leave parking space select reverse gear and operate turn signal**.
▸ Operate the appropriate turn signal.
▸ Engage reverse gear.
▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator gently ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 108*, ⇨ (!) *in Description on page 108*.
▸ Follow the instructions on the display ⇨ *page 111* and the acoustic warning tones until you are clear to leave the parking space.
▸ The procedure is over when no more manoeuvring is necessary in order to drive out of the space. Take over the steering.

The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals (accelerator, brake, clutch*). The ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h. The park assist will be deactivated if you drive too fast or move the steering wheel by hand. To continue the parking manoeuvre, switch the engine off/on. Then press the button again. Alternatively, drive out of the parking space without using the park assist.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Park assist: steering assistance active. Please drive slowly and operate the brakes yourself

The park assist is ready. You can now park the vehicle. Watch the road ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 108*.

Park assist: ended. Please take over steering.

The park assist has finished the parking manoeuvre.

Park assist: cancelled. Continue steering vehicle!

The park assist has interrupted the parking manoeuvre to avoid a collision between the vehicle and an obstacle.

Park assist: cancelled. Steering input detected. Continue steering vehicle!

The steering assistant has been deactivated because the driver has intervened in the steering. To continue the parking manoeuvre, press the button again.

Reduce your speed! For the best results when passing the line of parked cars where you want to park, do not drive faster than 30 km/h (if parking parallel to the roadside) or 20 km/h (if parking perpendicular to the roadside) ⇨ *page 109*.

Park assist: cancelled. Speed too high. Continue steering vehicle!

You were driving too fast into the parking space. Do not exceed 7 km/h when driving into the parking space.

Park assist: currently unavailable. Stabilisation control (ESC) off

Switch the ESC on to use the park assist.

To leave parking space select reverse gear and operate turn signal

The park assist is ready. You can leave the parking space. Watch the road ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 108*.

Park assist: cancelled. Stabilisation control (ESC) input. Continue steering vehicle!

Take over the steering. Finish parking without the park assist or drive out of the parking space.

The park assist has interrupted the parking manoeuvre, because the ESC has been switched off. Take over the steering or switch on the ESC ⇨ *page 114* and start the parking manoeuvre again ⇨ *page 109*.

Park assist: ended. Please take over steering and continue driving.

The park assist has finished manoeuvring the vehicle out of the parking space. Please take over the steering.

Park assist: cancelled. Space too small

The assist function is unable to automatically steer the vehicle out of the parking space because the space is too small. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of the parking space without using the park assist.

Park assist: time limit exceeded

Park assist: cancelled. Time limit exceeded. Continue steering vehicle!

The parking manoeuvre was not completed within about six minutes after the park assist was activated. To continue the parking manoeuvre, press the button again.

Park assist: currently unavailable

Park assist: currently unavailable. Continue steering vehicle!

The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle. Try repeating the parking manoeuvre or switching the ignition off and on again.

Park assist: not stopped long enough ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After you select reverse gear, the vehicle has to remain stationary for a moment so that the park assist can activate the steering. Follow the directions given in the display.

Park assist: fault. Please contact workshop

Park assist: fault. Continue steering vehicle! Please contact workshop

Please contact a qualified workshop. The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle if a system fault occurs.

Park assist: cancelled. Space too small. Continue steering vehicle!

The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle in this space. Park the vehicle without using the park assist or look for a bigger space.

Adjusting graphic display and warning beeps

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/park assist

The settings for the graphic display and acoustic signals are controlled via the infotainment system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

Warning beeps

Front volume - Volume for the front and side* zones

Rear volume - Volume for the rear zone

In-car entertainment fader - The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is switched on.

You will hear a short test tone each time you make a new setting.

Note

The settings will be automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key in use.

Fault warnings

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid/parking system plus/park assist

Rear parking aid: fault. Obstacles cannot be detected

Parking aid: fault. Obstacles cannot be detected

If the LED in the P button starts flashing when you switch the system on, a system fault has occurred. If the fault is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, it will only be indicated by the flashing LED in the P button the next time you switch on the parking aid by engaging reverse gear. The fault warning can be displayed in the second tab of the driver information system as long as the fault is active.

Parking system plus*/parking system plus and park assist*

If a sensor or loudspeaker malfunctions, the P symbol will be shown on the infotainment system in front of or behind the vehicle. If a rear sensor malfunctions, obstacles will only be displayed in zones (1) and (2) ⇨ *page 104, Fig. 106*. If a front sensor malfunctions, obstacles will only be displayed in zones (3) and (4).

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Intelligent technology

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels. It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster starts flashing as soon as the ESC intervenes.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes. You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can shorten the braking distance. The braking force is automatically boosted if you press the brake pedal quickly in an emergency. You must keep pressing the brake pedal until the danger has passed.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the engine torque to match the amount of grip available. This helps the car to start moving, accelerate or climb a gradient.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheel and directs the power to the other driven wheel (or wheels on quattro* versions). This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilise the vehicle by changing the steering wheel torque.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control intervenes when cornering by braking the wheel(s) on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering. The relevant system may not intervene in the wet or snow.

Multicollision brake assist system

The “multicollision brake assist system” can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place upwards of a certain speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator,
– the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system,
– or the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

WARNING

– The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
– Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.

– When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.

Note

– The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

– The systems can make noises when they intervene.

Switching on/off

The ESC is switched on automatically when the engine is started.



Fig. 121 Centre console: OFF button

The ESC operates in several levels. Depending on which level is selected, the stabilising function of the ESC is restricted or switched off, and the vehicle is stabilised to a greater or lesser degree.

In the following special situations, it may be advisable to switch on the sport mode to allow a certain amount of wheelspin:

– Rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it
– Driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces
– Driving with snow chains

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Characteristics	The stabilising function of the ESC and traction control system (ASR) is restricted ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilisation function is no longer available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and traction control system (ASR) are switched off.	The stabilising function of the ESC and traction control system (ASR) is fully available again.
Controls	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press the OFF button for longer than 3 seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lamps	lights up.	and ESC OFF* light up.	goes out, or and ESC OFF* go out.
Driver messages	**Stabilisation control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilisation control (ESC): switched off. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilisation control (ESC): switched on**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

You should switch on the sport mode or switch off the ESC/traction control system (ASR) only if your driving ability and the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely - danger of skidding!

– The stabilising function is restricted when sport mode is switched on. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads.
– When the ESC/traction control system (ASR) is switched off, the vehicle will not be stabilised.

Note

– The ESC/traction control system (ASR) cannot be switched off and the sport mode cannot be switched on when the cruise control system* is on.
– In the event of a malfunction in the rear spoiler system or the Audi magnetic ride, it may not be possible to switch off the ESC/ASR or switch on the sport mode.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

Wear

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. Negative factors are, for instance, city traffic, frequent short trips or hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

Effect of moisture and salt

In certain conditions, such as in heavy rain, early morning dew, or after washing the car or driving through water, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads. The brakes should be “dried” by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

When you are driving at higher speeds with the windscreen wipers on, the brake pads are very briefly brought into contact with the brake discs. This automatic process which goes unnoticed by the driver is carried out at regular intervals and is intended to improve braking response in wet conditions.

The effectiveness of the brakes can also be temporarily reduced if the car is driven for some distance without using the brakes when there is a lot of salt on the road in winter. The layer of salt that accumulates on the discs and pads can be removed with a few cautious brake applications.

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages without using the brakes very much.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

If the brake pedal travel should ever increase *suddenly*, this may mean that one of the two brake circuits has failed. Drive immediately to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. On the way to the dealer, be prepared to use more pressure on the brake pedal and allow for longer stopping distances.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake servo

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal.

WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to inconvenience or endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).

CAUTION

- Never let the brakes "drag" by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This overheats the brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. If you still have to use the brakes, it is better to brake firmly at intervals than to apply the brakes continuously.

Note

- If the brake servo is out of action, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you normally would.
- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the front wheels is not obstructed, otherwise the brakes can overheat.

Electro-mechanical power steering

Electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering.

The degree of power assistance is adapted *electronically*, depending on the speed.

Warning/indicator lamps and driver messages

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

If the warning lamp lights up permanently and the message appears, there may be a power steering failure.

Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Do **NOT** drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering: fault. You can continue driving

If the indicator lamp lights up, the steering response may be heavier or lighter than usual. In addition, it is possible that the steering wheel will be off centre when driving in a straight line.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp or lights up only briefly.

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

On quattro models the engine power is distributed to all four wheels.

General notes

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the engine power is distributed to all four wheels. The distribution of power is controlled automatically according to your driving style and the road conditions. Also refer to ⇨ *page 113, Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities - both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Winter tyres

Thanks to its four-wheel drive, your car will have plenty of *traction* in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, we still recommend that winter tyres or all-season tyres should be fitted *on all four wheels* when winter road conditions are expected, mainly because this will give a better *braking response*.

Snow chains

On roads where snow chains are mandatory, this also applies to cars with four-wheel drive ⇨ *page 257, Snow chains*.

Replacing tyres

On vehicles with four-wheel drive, all four tyres must have the same rolling circumference. Also avoid using tyres with varying tread depths ⇨ *page 254, New wheels or tyres*.

Off-roader?

Your Audi does not have enough ground clearance to be used as an off-road vehicle. It is therefore best to avoid rough tracks and uneven terrain as much as possible.

WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast on icy or slippery roads just because the car still has good acceleration in these conditions – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed to warn the driver, as with a front-wheel drive car. So do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Rear spoiler

Applies to: vehicles with automatic rear spoiler

The automatic rear spoiler increases the car's stability.



Fig. 122 Centre console: Button for rear spoiler

The rear spoiler can be extended or retracted manually or automatically.

Automatic mode (normal operation)

- Automatic extension: The rear spoiler is automatically extended at road speeds above approximately 120 km/h.
- Automatic retraction: The rear spoiler is automatically retracted at road speeds below approximately 80 km/h.

Manual mode

- Manual extension: Briefly press the button ⇨ *Fig. 122* to extend the rear spoiler all the way out.
- Manual retraction: At road speeds up to about 20 km/h, press and hold the button to retract the rear spoiler. At road speeds between 20 km/h and 120 km/h, press the button briefly to retract the rear spoiler all the way back.

Warning and indicator lamps

/ Rear spoiler: fault. Please contact workshop

The rear spoiler may have failed to extend due to a malfunction. In this case, the car's handling may be different at high speeds. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay (but do not exceed 140 km/h) and have the fault rectified. The colour of the lamp depends on the current road speed. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

When extending or retracting the rear spoiler, please make sure that no persons or objects are close to the moving spoiler - risk of injury!

CAUTION

– If you need to push the vehicle, never put your weight on the rear spoiler - Risk of damage!
– To avoid damage to the rear spoiler, you should not lean on it or apply any other type of pressure.
– Do not operate the rear spoiler manually when the boot lid is open or any moving parts of the automatic rear spoiler are obstructed - risk of damage!

Note

Clean the rear spoiler housing every 2 to 3 months. The rear spoiler housing must be free of ice, snow and leaves in order to operate correctly.

Power management

This system helps to ensure reliable starting

The power management controls the distribution of electrical energy and thus helps to ensure that there is always enough power available to start the engine.

If a vehicle with a conventional electrical system is left parked for a long time, the vehicle battery will gradually lose its charge because certain electrical equipment (such as the immobiliser) continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. In some cases there may not be enough power available to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent power management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.

The main functions incorporated in the power management system are **battery diagnosis**, **residual current management** and **dynamic power management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis function constantly registers the condition of the vehicle battery. Sensors detect the battery voltage, battery current and battery temperature. This enables the system to calculate the current power level and charge condition of the vehicle battery.

Residual current management

The residual current management reduces power consumption while the vehicle is parked. It controls the supply of power to the various electrical components while the ignition is switched off. The system takes the battery diagnosis data into consideration.

Depending on the power level of the vehicle battery, the individual electrical components are switched off one after the other to prevent the vehicle battery from losing too much charge and to ensure that the engine can be started reliably.

Dynamic power management

While the vehicle is moving, this function distributes the available power to the various electrical components and systems according to their requirements. It ensures that on-board systems do not consume more electrical power than is being generated, and thus maintains the maximum possible vehicle battery power level.

Note

– The power management system is not able to overcome the given physical limits. Please remember that the power and life of the vehicle battery are limited.
– If the indicator lamp  ⇨ *page 15* appears, the starting ability may be impaired.

Points to remember

Starting ability has first priority.

Short trips, city traffic and low temperatures all place a heavy load on the vehicle battery. In these conditions a large amount of power is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

consumed, but only a small amount is supplied. The situation is also critical if electrical equipment is in use when the engine is not running. In this case power is consumed when none is being generated.

In these situations you will be aware that the power management system is intervening to control the distribution of electrical power.

When the vehicle is parked for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle for a period of several days or weeks, the power management will gradually shut off the on-board systems one by one, or reduce the amount of current they are using. This limits the amount of power consumed and helps to ensure reliable starting even after a long period. Certain convenience features, such as remote control unlocking, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

If you listen to the radio or use the other infotainment functions when the engine is not running, this will discharge the vehicle battery.

The infotainment display will show a warning message before the battery power drops to a level where the starting ability is impaired. This message warns you that the system you are using will soon be switched off automatically. You should therefore start the engine if you wish to continue using the system.

When the engine is running

Although the alternator generates electrical power, the vehicle battery can still become discharged while the vehicle is being driven. This can occur when a lot of power is being consumed but only a small amount supplied, especially if the vehicle battery is not fully charged initially.

To restore the necessary energy balance, the system will then temporarily shut off the electrical components that are using a lot of power, or reduce the current they are consuming. Heating systems in particular use a large amount of electrical power. If you notice, for instance, that the seat heating* or the rear window heater is not working, they may have been temporarily switched off or regulated to a lower heat output. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

You may also notice that the engine runs at a slightly faster idling speed. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern. The increased idling speed allows the alternator to meet the greater power requirement and charge the vehicle battery at the same time.

Information saved in the control units

The vehicle is fitted in the factory with electronic control units that, among other things, control the engine and the gearbox. The control units also monitor the exhaust system and the airbags.

The control units continually analyse data relevant to the vehicle while you are driving. In the event of faults or anomalies in the vehicle data, only these data are saved. As a rule, faults are shown by the warning lamps in the instrument cluster.

Data saved in the control units can only be read and analysed with special equipment.

A qualified workshop is only able to recognise and deal with faults by using the relevant saved data. Among other things, the saved data may contain the following information:

– Data relating to the engine and the gearbox
– Speed
– Direction of travel
– Braking force
– Seat belt warning system data

The control units installed will not under any circumstances record conversations in the vehicle.

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is **not** equipped with an event data recorder.

In an event data recorder, information about the vehicle is temporarily saved. In the event of an accident, you can therefore obtain detailed information about the course of events. On vehicles ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

with an airbag system, accident-related data such as impact speed, seat belt status, seat positions and trigger times can be saved. The exact information saved depends on the manufacturer.

The installation of an event data recorder is subject to the agreement of the vehicle's owner. This process is governed by legislation in some countries.

Reprogramming control units

All data for controlling components are saved in the control units. Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any convenience features are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual will no longer be accurate for the features that have been changed. We recommend having the reprogramming approved.

Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with information about possible reprogramming options.

Event memory

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out the event memory located in the footwell on the driver's side of the vehicle. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

The diagnostic connection must not be used for other purposes. Incorrect use can cause malfunctions – risk of accident!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi Media Interface

Notes on traffic safety

You should only use certain infotainment system functions, e.g. enter a navigation destination, while the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

Only operate the infotainment system when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle - risk of accident!

Note

Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.

Introduction

The Multi Media Interface (MMI) combines different communication, navigation and entertainment systems in your Audi. You can operate your MMI system via the MMI control console, the multi-function steering wheel or the speech dialogue system*.*

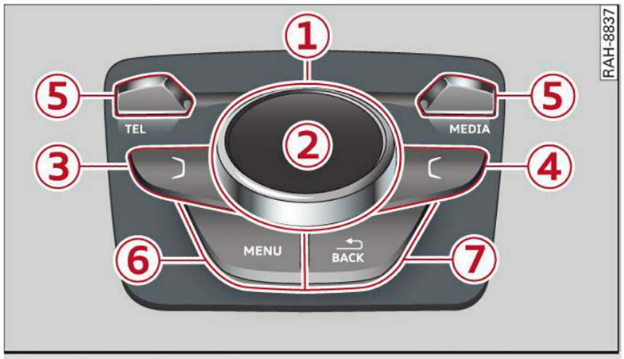


Fig. 123 MMI control console

Overview of MMI control console

① Rotary pushbutton with joystick function 122
② MMI touch pad* 124
③ Left control button 123
④ Right control button 123
⑤ Buttons for calling up menus directly 122
⑥ MENU button 122
⑦ BACK button 122

MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function

How to use



Fig. 124 MMI ON/OFF button with joystick function

Switching the MMI system on/off:

The MMI can be switched on/off manually.

– **To switch on manually**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button ① ⇨ *Fig. 124*. **Or**: Press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* or one of the buttons for calling up menus directly ⑤ ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123*.

– **To switch off manually**: Press and hold the ON/OFF button ① ⇨ *Fig. 124* until the MMI switches off. The MMI system will *not* be switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on if it was turned off manually the last time it was operated.

Other functions:

– **To adjust the volume**: Turn the ON/OFF button ① ⇨ *Fig. 124*.
– **To mute**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button.
– **To select the previous/next function (e.g. radio station/track)**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
– **To rewind/fast forward (e.g. track)**: Press and hold the ON/OFF button to the right ⏭ or left ⏮.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Note

If the engine is switched off and the vehicle battery charge level is low, the MMI system will be switched off automatically.

How to use the MMI

Selecting and confirming a function

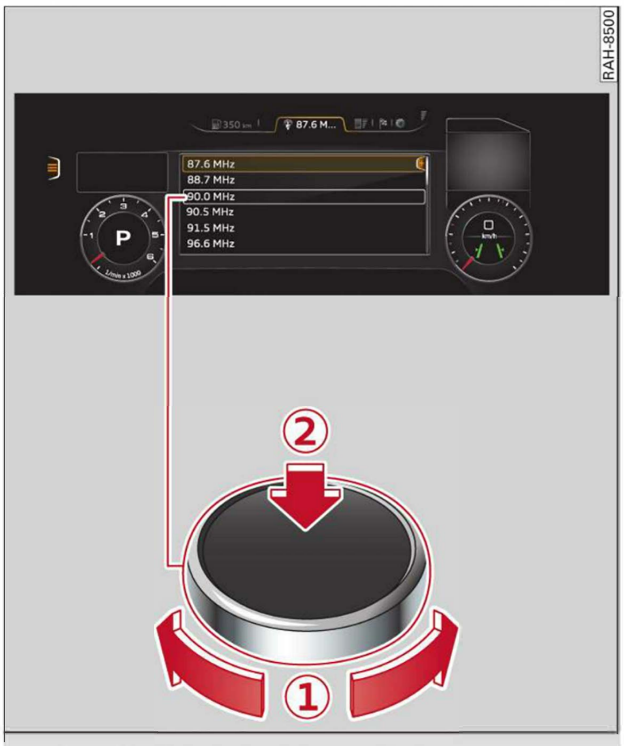


Fig. 125 How to use the rotary pushbutton

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- **To select a function**: Turn the rotary pushbutton (1) ⇨ *Fig. 125* to the desired function (e.g. setting a frequency).
- **To confirm the selection**: Press the rotary pushbutton (2) ⇨ *Fig. 125*.

Returning to the previous function level

- Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123*.

Calling up the main menu/menu



Fig. 126 Illustration: Main menu

Calling up the main menu

- Press the button marked MENU (6) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123*. The MMI menus (e.g. **Radio**) will be displayed ⇨ *Fig. 126*. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Calling up a menu directly

- Press the corresponding button to call up menus directly (5) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* in the direction of the menu you require (e.g. RADIO). You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Calling up the selection/options menu with the control buttons

You can use the selection menu to call up further functions for individual menu items (e.g. radio).

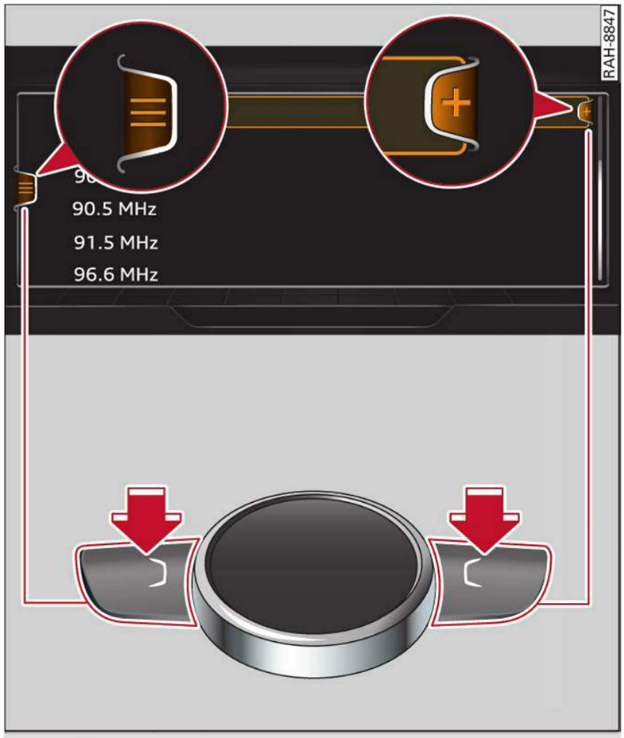


Fig. 127 Control buttons on MMI control console

Selection menu: You can use the selection menu to call up further functions for individual menu items (e.g. **Radio**).

Important: The symbol for the selection menu must be shown on the infotainment display ⇨ *Fig. 127*.

To call up/close the selection menu: Press the left control button ⇨ *Fig. 127*. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Options menu: You can use the options menu to select and confirm specific functions for individual menu items (e.g. **Radio**) and to make changes to settings.

Important: The symbol for the options menu [+] must be shown on the infotainment display ⇨ *Fig. 127*.

To call up/close the options menu: Press the right control button ⇨ *Fig. 127*. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Note

Please note that the control buttons are the other way around if Arabic is selected as the menu language.

Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

Example of a path description

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.

Using a path description

▸ Press the RADIO button.
▸ Press the left control button.
▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to **FM** in the menu.
▸ Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm **FM**.
▸ The function you have selected and confirmed is now set. In this example, the **FM** waveband is selected.

Note

Please note that the control buttons are the other way around if Arabic is selected as the menu language.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MMI touch

MMI touch pad

You can enter data on the MMI touch pad with the help of handwriting recognition.



Fig. 128 Entering a navigation destination

The MMI touch pad (2) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* is located on the rotary pushbutton (1) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123*.

Entering letters, numbers and characters

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

The MMI touch pad enables information to be entered with the help of handwriting recognition.



Fig. 129 Display when MMI touch is active

Important: A function requiring text or number input must be active and the symbol (1) ⇨ *Fig. 129* must be shown on the display.

– **Basic principle**: Use your finger to write an individual letter (capital or small letters) or numbers/symbols on the MMI touch pad. If the system positively identifies a character, it will be shown on the infotainment display (1) ⇨ *page 124, Fig. 128* and may be confirmed acoustically. It will then be shown in the entry field.
– **To enter a space**: Move your finger from left to right across the MMI touch pad.
– **To delete a character**: Move your finger from right to left across the MMI touch pad.
– **To delete characters quickly**: Move your finger quickly from right to left across the MMI touch pad.
– **To use the suggestion**: Press the rotary pushbutton.
– **To switch directly to the results list**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the right.
– **To enter Cyrillic characters**: Important: The Latin character set must be active. Press the right control button. Select and confirm **Switch to Cyrillic characters**.
– **To enter Latin characters**: Important: The Cyrillic character set must be active. Press the right control button. Select and confirm **Switch to Latin characters**.
– **To open the speller**: Select the right control button > **Open speller**. Text and numbers can be entered via the speller ⇨ *page 128*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

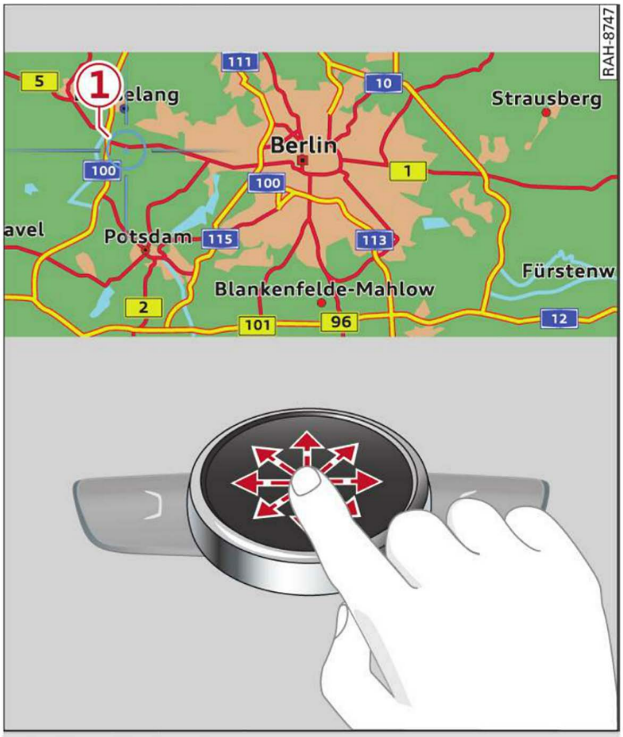


Fig. 130 Moving the crosshairs

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨*page 178, Fig. 159*.

– **To bring up/hide the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton to bring up the crosshairs (1) ⇨*Fig. 130*. To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button (7) ⇨*page 121, Fig. 123*.

– **To move the crosshairs on the map**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs are displayed.

– **To move the crosshairs quickly**: Move your finger quickly in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs are displayed (1) ⇨*Fig. 130*. The crosshairs will only stop moving again after a few seconds.

Moving the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

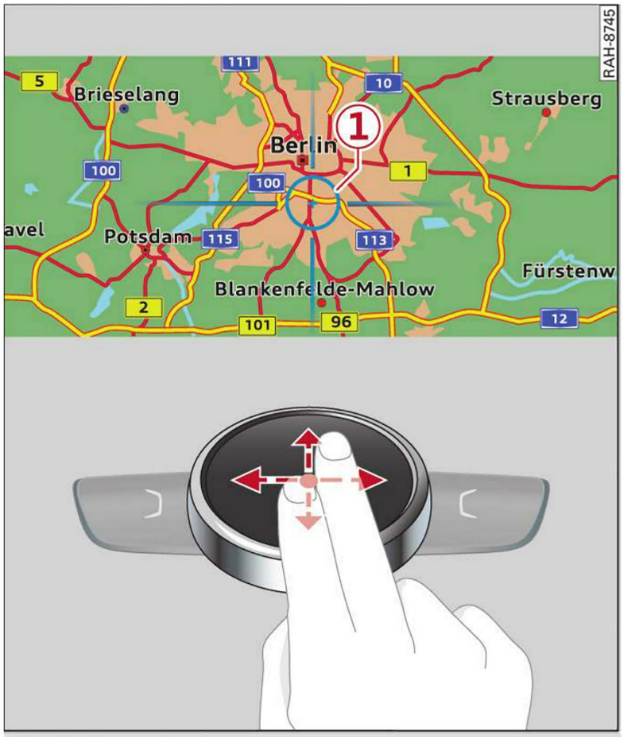


Fig. 131 Moving the map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨*page 178, Fig. 159*.

– **To bring up/hide the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton to bring up the crosshairs (1) ⇨*Fig. 131*.

– **To move the standard map/Google Earth map**: Move two fingers in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad ⇨*Fig. 131* while the crosshairs are displayed (1) ⇨*Fig. 131*.

– **To move the map quickly**: Move two fingers quickly in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad ⇨*Fig. 131* while the crosshairs are displayed (1) ⇨*Fig. 131*. The map will only stop moving again after a few seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Zooming in/out on map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

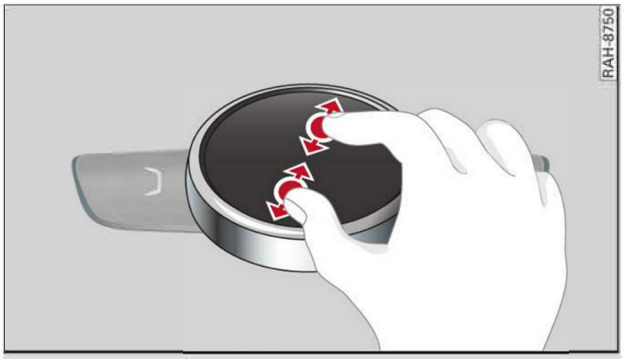


Fig. 132 Zooming in/out on map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 159*.

– **To zoom in/out on the map**: Press the rotary pushbutton to bring up the crosshairs. Place two fingers on the MMI touch pad and move them apart/together ⇨ *Fig. 132*.

To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123*.

Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Important: The **Balance/fader** option must be selected ⇨ *page 217*.

– **To move the crosshairs of the sound focus**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.
– **To store the location of the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton twice. **Or**: Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123*.

Operating the DVD main menu

Important: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 200* and the DVD main menu must be displayed.

– **To select a menu option**: Move your finger up/down or to the left/right on the MMI touch pad.
– **To confirm your selection**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Note

– You can set the volume of the MMI touch* spoken cues according to your own preferences ⇨ *page 218, MMI touch volume**.
– Please note the direction of writing/deleting characters if the menu language is set to Arabic.

Rotary pushbutton with joystick function

Using the rotary pushbutton with joystick function

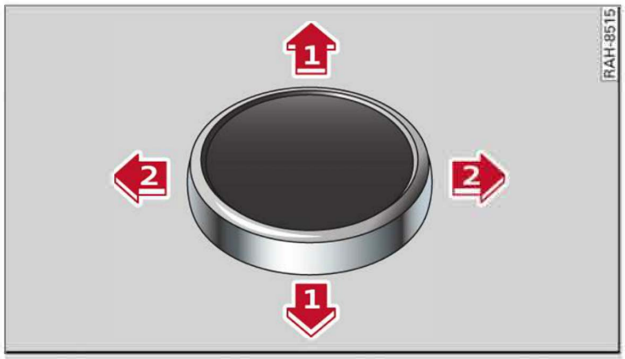


Fig. 133 How to use the rotary pushbutton with joystick function

You can push the rotary pushbutton up/down (1) ⇨ *Fig. 133* or to the left/right (2).

Calling up/closing the selection menu

Push the rotary pushbutton to the left to call up the selection menu ⇨ *page 123*.

Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* to return to the previous function. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton to the right to close the selection menu.

Calling up/closing the options menu

Push the rotary pushbutton to the right to call up the options menu ⇨ *page 123*.

Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* to return to the previous function. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton to the left to close the options menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Displaying the entry field*

Push the rotary pushbutton upwards to access the entry field or the beginning of a list in the central area.

Switching to the speller*

If the entry field is already open, you can switch directly to entry via the speller by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards again ⇨ *page 128, Speller for letters/numbers*.

On the map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 159*.

– **To display the entry field***: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.
– **To display the route**: If route guidance is active, you can have the route displayed by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards ⇨ *page 170*.
– **To zoom in/out of the map**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left/right to make the map scale larger or smaller.

Adjusting the sound focus*

Important: The balance/fader option must be selected ⇨ *page 217*. The crosshairs must be displayed.

– **To adjust the sound focus using the crosshairs**: The crosshairs can be moved horizontally. Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left or right. To move the crosshairs vertically, press the rotary pushbutton. Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left or right. Press the rotary pushbutton again to save the setting.

Operating the DVD main menu

Important: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 200*.

– **To select a menu option**: Move the rotary pushbutton with joystick function up or down, or to the left or right.
– **To confirm your selection**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Note

Please note that the control buttons are the other way around if Arabic is selected as the menu language.

Calling up the selection/options menu with the rotary pushbutton

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function



Fig. 134 Calling up the selection/options menu with the rotary pushbutton

To call up/close the selection menu: Press the rotary pushbutton to the left (2) to call up the selection menu ⇨ *Fig. 134*. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* to return to the previous function.

To call up/close the options menu: Press the rotary pushbutton to the right (2) ⇨ *Fig. 134* to call up the options menu. You can then use the rotary pushbutton to select and confirm a function.

Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 123* to return to the previous function.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speller for letters/numbers



Fig. 135 Illustration: Speller for letters/numbers

You can use the speller for letters/numbers to enter letters, numbers and characters in the MMI. This option is available while the entry field (2) is active ⇨ *Fig. 135*.

– **To call up/close the speller for letters/numbers**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards/downwards while the entry field is active. **Or**: Select the right control button > **Open speller**/**Close speller**.

– **To enter a letter/number**: With the selection line activated, turn the rotary pushbutton (10) ⇨ *Fig. 135* to select the desired letter/number. Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm the letter/number. Your entry will appear in the entry field (2). When you have entered all characters, select and confirm LIST (1). **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton downwards.

– **To enter diacritics (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö)***: With the selection line activated, turn the rotary pushbutton to select a letter (10) ⇨ *Fig. 135*. To open the corresponding set of diacritics, press and hold the rotary pushbutton. Turn the rotary pushbutton to select a diacritic while in the character selection line (10) ⇨ *Fig. 135*. Press the rotary pushbutton to apply the diacritic. To close the set of diacritics without selecting a character, press and hold the rotary pushbutton again. **Or**: Select and confirm äöü (7) ⇨ *Fig. 135*. Select and confirm a diacritic.

– **To delete a character**: Select and confirm ⌫ (12) ⇨ *Fig. 135*. To delete all characters in the entry field, select ⌫ (12) ⇨ *Fig. 135* and press and hold the rotary pushbutton until all characters have been deleted.

– **To enter a special character**: Select and confirm !&? (6) ⇨ *Fig. 135* or 123 (8). Use the speller for numbers to select and confirm the special character desired (such as a hyphen or full stop).

– **Input help**: In some cases (such as in the navigation system*), the system will suggest a word* to complete your entry while you are still making it (11) ⇨ *Fig. 135*. You can confirm the word by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards.

– **Results list**: In some cases (such as in the directory), the system will switch to the results list (3) ⇨ *Fig. 135* automatically. Select and confirm a suggestion from the list.

Requirement: The entry field (2) ⇨ *Fig. 135* must be active.

– **To switch between the speller and the MMI touch pad***: The handwriting recognition feature is automatically activated for the MMI touch pad*, which means you can simply start writing.

Overview of the symbols in the speller

The symbols of the speller for letters/numbers are explained in the following table: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Symbol / marking	Description
①	LIST or ▾	To switch to the results list.
②	Entry field	The current entry is displayed. *Menu language Arabic*: A vertical line on the left/right side of the cursor indicates where the next character will be inserted.
③	Results list	A list of suggestions for the letters already entered is displayed.
④	⬆	To switch from lower case to upper case letters and vice versa. *Menu language Arabic*: To show additional Arabic characters.
⑤	[+	To open further speller options (e.g. **Close speller**, **Clear entry field** or **Switch to Cyrillic characters**).
⑥	!&?	To display punctuation marks and special characters (e.g. hyphen or full stop).
⑦	äöü	To display diacritics (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö) or the Cyrillic alphabet. *Menu language Arabic*: To switch between Arabic and Latin characters.
⑧	123/ABC	To switch the speller from letters to numbers and vice versa
⑨	␣	To enter a space in the entry field.
⑩	Character selection	The character selected will be highlighted.
⑪	▲	The entry suggestion* can be accepted by pushing the rotary push-button upwards.
⑫	⌫	To delete the character to the left of the cursor. *Menu language Arabic*: Note the direction of writing.

Note

Diacritics are not available for every letter.

Search function

You can enter search terms in any order using the search function.



Fig. 136 Example: Search function in the telephone menu

The search function is available in the **Car***, **Radio***, **Media***, **Telephone***, **Navigation*** and **Audi connect*** menus.

Calling up the search function

- Select: MENU button > *the desired menu item* (e.g. Telephone).
- If necessary, turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field ① ⇨ *Fig. 136* for the **search function** is displayed. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards to call up the entry field ① ⇨ *Fig. 136*.

The handwriting recognition feature is automatically activated for the MMI touch pad*, which means you can simply start writing.

Searching for an entry

- Enter one or more search terms in the entry field in any order. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces.

The system may make suggestions to complete your entry ③ ⇨ *Fig. 136* depending on what you have entered. Further entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results ② ⇨ *Fig. 136*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the desired term is not yet displayed, continue entering letters until it appears.

The first few letters of the search terms will often be sufficient to bring up a list of results. In the **Telephone*** menu, for example, write the initials of the contact you are looking for, separating them with a space.

Confirming an autocomplete suggestion

Important: An autocomplete suggestion ③ ⇨ *Fig. 136* must be displayed.

- **When using MMI touch**: Press the rotary pushbutton.
- **When using the speller**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.

Using an entry from the results list

- **When using MMI touch**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the right. Select an entry from the list and confirm it.
- **When using the speller**: Select and confirm LIST ① ⇨ *page 128, Fig. 135*. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton downwards. Select an entry from the list and confirm it.

Menus and symbols

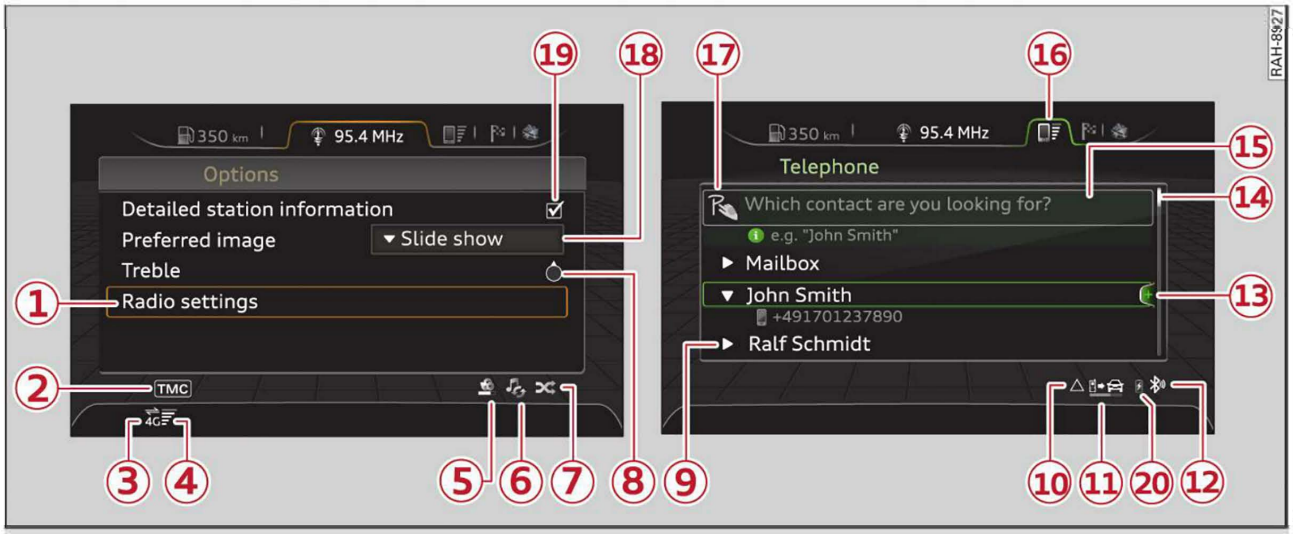


Fig. 137 Illustration: Menus and symbols

	Symbol / marking	Explanation
①	Selected option	Selected function
②	TMC	Reception of TMC/TMCpro*/online traffic information ⇨ *page 182*
③	2G/3G/LTE*	Network coverage of the active connection ⇨ *page 166* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE***: LTE network When a data connection has been established, a symbol indicating the active data connection ⇨ *page 166* appears in the status line of the infotainment display
④	Signal strength bars for data connection*	Reception strength of the active connection, or **PIN**: Enter the SIM PIN code **PUK**: Enter the PUK code **SIM**: Insert the SIM card ⇨ *page 159*
⑤	Jukebox* import process	Copying audio/video files to the jukebox* ⇨ *page 193*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Symbol / marking	Explanation
⑥	Repeat track	The track currently playing will be repeated ⇨ *page 204*
⑦	Random playback	All tracks in the playlist will be played in random order ⇨ *page 204,* **Random playback**
⑧	Rotary control	Settings for the selected function can be made by turning the rotary pushbutton
⑨	Arrow	Information can be called up by pressing the rotary pushbutton
⑩	Roaming	Connected mobile phone/inserted mini SIM card has left its mobile network
⑪	Import procedure	Import/update of contacts in the directory/call list
⑫	Bluetooth*	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 194*/⇨ *page 142*
⑬	Options menu	Select and confirm specific functions for individual menu items and make changes to settings
⑭	Scrolling bar	Signifies a long list. You can move within lists by turning the rotary pushbutton
⑮	Entry field	Entries that can be changed using the speller for letters/numbers ⇨ *page 128* or the MMI touch pad* ⇨ *page 124*
⑯	Signal strength bars for mobile phone*	Reception strength of mobile phone network of a connected mobile phone ⇨ *page 142*
⑰	MMI touch*	Can be used via the MMI touch pad
⑱	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that can be called up by pressing the rotary pushbutton
⑲	Checkbox	You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the rotary pushbutton.
⑳	Battery*	Battery charge level of the connected mobile phone during wireless charging ⇨ *page 146*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech Dialogue System
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favourites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Drive me to (XY)
- Enter address
- Stop route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- Online destinations
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favourites

NAVIGATION

- Drive me to (XY)
  - Business address / Private address
- Start / stop route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favourites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Exclude next route section / Exclude next street
- Manual / Automatic traffic avoidance
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information / Train information
- City events
- Online news
- Twitter

RADIO

- Radio favourites
- Last stations
- FM and DAB
- FM / DAB / AM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Ensemble (XY)
- Traffic programme on / off

MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favourites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

RAH-5045

Fig. 138 Overview of commands

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speech dialogue system

How to use the speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can operate many infotainment functions conveniently by voice.

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on, you must not be talking on the phone, and the parking aid must not be active.

- **To switch on**: Briefly press the button (2) on the multi-function steering wheel ⇨ *page 23, Fig. 10* and give a spoken command after the **beep** signal.
- **To switch off**: Press and hold the button for several seconds. **Or**: Say the command **Cancel**.
- **To pause**: Say the command **Pause**. To end the pause, press the button.
- **To make a correction**: Press the button once (5) ⇨ *page 21, Fig. 8*. **Or**: Say the command **Correction**.

Input help

The system guides you through the input routine with cues and messages.

– **Input help messages on screen**: After the speech dialogue system is switched on, a selection of possible commands will be shown. The command display can be switched on/off via MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialogue system**.
– **Spoken input help cues**: To have the system play the commands currently possible, press the button on the multi-function steering wheel and say **Help**.

How to help the system understand you

Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.

Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.

Avoid speaking when the speech dialogue system is saying a cue.

Close doors and windows and soft top* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.

Keep the air outlets of the air distribution system pointed away from the microphone, which is fitted in the vicinity of the front interior lights in the headliner/on the driver's seat belt*. For more information about the seat belt microphone, refer to ⇨ *page 157*.

The system should only be operated by the driver, since the handsfree microphone is directed towards the driver.

Other settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 218, Speech dialogue system*.

WARNING

– Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations - accident risk!
– The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

Note

– The dialogue is paused when an incoming telephone call is received; you can continue the dialogue by ignoring the call. If you answer the call, the dialogue will be cancelled.
– No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.
– You can select an entry from a list both via the speech dialogue system and using the rotary pushbutton.
– The speech dialogue system does not support commands in Arabic, Norwegian or Hungarian.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notes on the overviews of commands

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

The following overviews show you the commands that you can give to operate the MMI via the speech dialogue system.

Alternative commands are separated by the symbol "**/**"; for example you can say: **Telephone** /(or) **Navigation** /(or) **Radio**.

Commands that belong together and should be spoken as a sequence are marked with the symbol "**>**"; for example you can say: **Enter address** > (and subsequently) **Enter country**.

As a rule, only the main commands are displayed. However, the system may also recognise some synonyms. For example, for **business address** you can also say **work address**, **office address**, **the office** or **at work**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can give global commands any time, irrespective of the menu currently selected.

Function	Say:
Calling up the menu	**Telephone / Directory / Navigation / Radio / Media / Audi connect* / Car / Tone**
Having the system play the possible commands	**Help / Help Speech dialogue system / Help Telephone / Help Navigation / Help Map / Help Radio / Help Media / Help Audi connect***
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call John Smith** / **Enter number / Redial / Directory / Read text message**
Navigation functions	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, e.g. **Navigate to John Smith** / **Enter address / Stop route guidance / Map / Online destinations* / Online destination (XY)***
Calling up the favourites	**Favourites** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page / Previous page**
Correcting a command	**Correction**
Switching off the speech dialogue system	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 141*, and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 134*.

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the menu item selected: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	Say:
Calling a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call John Smith**
Dialling a specific number stored for a contact	**Call (XY) business / private / land line / mobile**, e.g. **Call John Smith private**
Dialling a phone number when an address card is open	**Call / Call business number / Call private number / Call land line / Call business mobile**
Calling a contact from the favourites list	**Telephone favourites** > *desired contact when requested* > **Dial**
Displaying the call list	**Call list**
Calling the last number dialled	**Redial**
Dialling a telephone number	**Enter number** > *enter phone number in blocks of individual digits when requested*, e.g. **07441 234 567** > **Dial**
Correcting an entered phone number	**Correction / Delete number**
Displaying contact information	**Directory** > *desired contact when requested*, e.g. **John Smith**
Listening to voice mail messages	**Call mailbox**
Entering the SIM PIN code	**Enter PIN** > *enter PIN in individual digits when requested* > **Store**
Correcting an entered PIN	**Correction / Delete PIN**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Note

– If you have a mobile phone that transmits first names and surnames separately, you can select directory contacts both by entering the full name (“first name, surname” or “surname, first name”) and by saying only the first name or surname.

– For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or contact an Audi dealer.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and Audi connect

Important: The requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 159*.

Function	Say:
Calling up an Audi connect service	**Audi connect** > *follow the directions given by the system*.

Note

Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and SIM card reader

A mini SIM card with a messaging option must be inserted in the control console's SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 144* and the option **Telephone installed in vehicle (SIM card)** must have been selected ⇨ *page 145*.

Or: Your mobile phone must have message access rights activated in its Bluetooth settings (MAP - Message Access Profile) and must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 142*. Please refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone to find out whether it supports this function.

Function	Say:
Having a new message read out	**Read new text message**
Having messages read out	**Read text message**

Note

For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or contact an Audi dealer.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system and navigation system

Important: The **Navigation** menu must have been opened ⇨ *table on page 134*.

You may be able to say the following commands to enter a destination, depending on the menu item selected:

Function	Say:
Calling up a list of recent navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Calling up the favourites	**Navigation favourites**
Calling up your home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with assistance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country** / **Enter district** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making corrections while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, e.g. **Drive me to John Smith**
Navigating to a specific address stored for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business** / **private**, e.g. “Navigate to John Smith private”
Navigating to favourites	**Navigation favourites** > **Line (XY)** / *line content* > *start route guidance when requested*
Starting route guidance when an address card is open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	Say:
Entering a new destination/stopover while route guidance is active	**Enter destination** > *desired address when requested* > *confirm new destination/stopover when requested*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Cancelling the active route guidance	**Stop route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a special destination with search area with assistance from the system	**Special destination** > **Change search area** > *enter desired category or subcategory when requested*, e.g. “Restaurant”
Categories for entering special destinations	**Audi Service / Railway station / Airport / Hotel / Hospital / Parking space / Service area / Restaurant / Filling station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering special destinations	**In immediate vicinity / In vicinity of route / In vicinity of destination / In vicinity of stopover / In new town / In new country**
Entering an online destination*	**Online destination (XY)**, e.g. “**Online destination Palace Hotel**”
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Important: The **Navigation** or **Map** menu must be open. You can say the following commands to make additional navigation settings:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map / Day map / Night map / Change map colours automatically**
Map type	**2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map / Standard map / Traffic map / Google Earth map***
Displaying the route list	**Route list**
Displaying remaining distance/time while route guidance is active	**Destination info**
Highest speed query	**How fast can I go here?**
Setting the navigation cues during active route guidance	**Voice guidance on / Voice guidance off / Voice guidance compact / Voice guidance complete / Voice guidance traffic**
Dynamic traffic avoidance	**Manual traffic avoidance / Automatic traffic avoidance / Switch off traffic avoidance**
Excluding the next section of the route	**Exclude route**
Excluding a certain section of the route	**Exclude route for (XY) metres/kilometres/yards/miles / Exclude next street / Exclude next section of route**

Note

– Depending on the selected menu language and the country you are in, you may have to spell destinations to enter them for route guidance. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Important: The **Radio** menu must have already been opened.

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the waveband selected:

Function	Say:
Selecting a waveband	**FM and DAB*** / **DAB*** / **FM** / **AM**
Tuning to a station from the station list	**Station (XY)** / **Ensemble (XY)***[a] / **Last stations**
Selecting a station from the favourites	**Radio favourites** > **Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)**
Receiving traffic news stations and switching traffic announcements on/off	**Traffic announcements on** / **Traffic announcements off**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

a) Applies to the DAB* waveband

Media

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Important: You must be in the **Media** menu.

You may be able to say the following commands depending on the medium active:

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox*** / **CD** / **DVD** / **SD card 1** / **SD card 2** / **Audi music interface*** / **iPhone*** / **USB*** / **Bluetooth*** / **Wi-Fi*** / **Medium (XY)**, e.g. “Rachel's player”
Selecting audio/video* files from the jukebox*	**Media favourites** / **Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Videos**
Selecting audio files from an iPod (source: Audi music interface*)	**Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Composers** / **Podcasts** / **Audiobooks**
Navigating in a structure of folders/ list	**Folder up** / **Line (XY)**
Selecting random playback	**Switch on random playback** / **Switch off random playback**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166.*

Natural commands

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

The following overview shows a selection of commands that enable you to speak more naturally with your vehicle.



Fig. 139 Natural commands

Note

The natural commands are not available for all languages.

External speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with external speech dialogue system

Important:

The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on.

You must not be speaking on the phone.

The parking aid and the Audi speech dialogue system must not be active.

A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 141*.

The mobile phone connected must feature a speech dialogue function that can be controlled externally.

- **To switch on**: Press and *hold* the button on the multi-function steering wheel and give a spoken command after the external speech dialogue system has been activated.
- **To resume a dialogue**: Press the button if necessary and say a new command. **Or**: Select and confirm **Continue** on the MMI control console.
- **To restart a dialogue**: After a dialogue has been ended, the system remains active for a short period during which you can start a new dialogue at any time. Briefly press the button. **Or**: Select and confirm **Restart speech dialogue** on the MMI control console.
- **To switch off**: Press and hold the button for several seconds. **Or**: Select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control console.

Note

– No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.
– This function depends on the mobile phone you are using. For further information regarding your mobile phone, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

– AUDI AG only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You have different options for making calls in your vehicle via the MMI; this depends on your vehicle's equipment and the features of your mobile phone.

Handsfree operation

After connecting your mobile phone to the MMI system via Bluetooth, you can operate the handsfree system and the telephone functions conveniently via the MMI. Your phone calls will be made via the antenna of your mobile phone.

With the Audi phone box*, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. The use of the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality ⇨ *page 146*.

Car phone*[1)]

As part of Audi connect*, the Audi phone box* includes a car telephone function which can be used via a separate mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* or an rSAP[2)]-enabled mobile phone. With the car telephone function, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. The use of the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality ⇨ *page 146*.

Once a connection has been established successfully, you can also change the profiles at a later time. Refer to ⇨ *page 213, Connection manager*.

WARNING

– According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm should be kept between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker.
– Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
– If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.

– The speech dialogue system* ⇨ *page 133* must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
– Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off your engine.
– Today's driving conditions require the full attention of drivers. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 121, Notes on traffic safety*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Note

– For information regarding which Bluetooth connections and functions your mobile phone supports, contact your mobile network service provider or consult the mobile device database at **www.audi.com/bluetooth**.
– The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle. The connection can be susceptible to interference from other electronic devices. ▶

1) Not available in all markets. On vehicles with Audi connect* and Audi phone box*

2) Remote SIM Access Profile

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– We recommend using the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot when the car phone is in use so that your mobile phone's apps retain access to the Internet.

Setting up

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

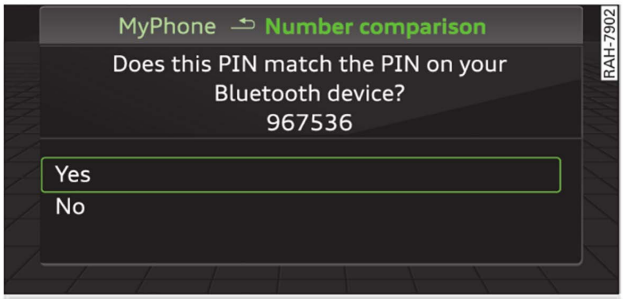


Fig. 140 PIN display for entry on mobile phone

Important

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 215* and the mobile phone must be activated.

The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone.

A mini SIM card must not be inserted in the SIM card reader*.

Connecting a mobile phone

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile phone** > **Continue**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown on the infotainment display. **Or**: Search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired mobile phone from the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▸ The MMI will generate a PIN for the connection ⇨ *Fig. 140*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN to establish a connection on your mobile phone. **Or**: If the PIN is already being displayed on your mobile phone, confirm it on the phone and on the MMI. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN.
- ▸ If you wish to connect your mobile phone via the remote SIM Access Profile, please also enter your SIM card's PIN in the MMI[1)].
- ▸ Please note any additional system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory and allow access to your messages separately.

After connecting successfully

After the connection has been established successfully, you will be shown a short message containing information on the profiles used to establish the connection. You can also change the profiles afterwards. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 215*.

In addition, the contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the directory of the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

You can configure your vehicle's mobile Wi-Fi hotspot[1)] and the Audi connect services* ⇨ *page 159* immediately after connecting an rSAP-enabled mobile phone. **Or**: Select TEL button > right control button > **Connection manager** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*. ▶

1) Not available in all markets. Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile on vehicles with Audi connect* and Audi phone box*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

- You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones using the connection manager ⇨ *page 213*.
- You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on, the devices are within range of the car and the ignition is on. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
- You will need to authorise the MMI connection on your mobile phone to enable automatic connection.
- Please note any system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory and allow access to your text messages separately.
- You receive the SIM PIN code from your mobile network service provider together with the SIM card. If you enter the SIM PIN code incorrectly three times[1] in a row, the SIM card will be blocked. A PUK (personal unblocking key) must be entered in order to reactivate the SIM card.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.
- For further information regarding your mobile phone, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone. For information on using a phone in your car, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or ask an Audi dealer.

Operating two phones via the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

You can connect two mobile phones to the MMI system using the Audi phone box (e.g. your business mobile as the primary phone and your personal mobile as an additional phone). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

The first mobile phone that you connect is shown as the primary phone on the MMI system. The second mobile phone is connected as an additional phone.

The system will always display the phone book on the primary phone while it is connected. To use the phone book on the additional phone, you have to swap the primary phone and additional phone ⇨ *page 144*.

Connecting a mobile phone as the primary phone

Connect your mobile phone to the MMI system via Bluetooth. The first mobile phone that you connect is shown as the **primary phone** on the MMI system.

Refer to ⇨ *page 142, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*.

Connecting a mobile phone as an additional phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system as the primary phone. **Or**: Your own mini SIM card[2] for making and receiving calls must be inserted in the SIM card reader*.

Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect additional phone**.

Refer to ⇨ *page 142, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*. ▶

1) The number of possible attempts depends on the SIM card.

2) Not available in all markets. On vehicles with Audi connect* and Audi phone box*

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For example, you have connected your business mobile to the MMI system as the primary phone and your personal mobile as the additional phone. To call a contact stored in your personal phone book, you now have to swap the primary phone with the additional phone because the system always displays the phone book from the primary phone.

Using a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*

Refer to ⇨*page 144, Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card*.

Connecting a mini SIM card as an additional phone

Insert your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*. Refer to ⇨*page 144, Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card*.

Then connect a mobile phone to the MMI system as an additional phone* via Bluetooth.

You can now use the option **Switch primary & additional phone*** so that the mini SIM card is connected as an additional phone*.

Swapping the primary phone and additional phone

Important: A primary phone and additional phone must be connected.

To swap the primary phone with the additional phone, select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Switch primary & additional phone**.

Note

– Please note that the system only ever displays the directory on the primary phone.
– Please note that, when your mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader*, any mobile phones for making and receiving calls which are already connected to the MMI via Bluetooth will be disconnected.
– You can see in the connection manager ⇨*page 213* whether your mobile phone is connected as a primary phone or additional phone. **Or**: The device name of the primary phone connected to the system (e.g. myPhone) is displayed in the **Telephone** menu.
– If the primary phone is not connected to the MMI automatically when the ignition is switched on, e.g. because it is out of range of the vehicle or because the Bluetooth function is switched off, a phone which was previously connected as an additional phone will be connected automatically as the primary phone.
– You can send and receive messages on both the primary phone and additional phone ⇨*page 147, Fig. 143*. You do not have to swap the primary phone and additional phone to do so.
– Using the function **Store as default telephone** in the **Connection manager**, you can store one of your connected mobile phones as the default phone ⇨*page 215*.

Making and receiving calls using your own mini SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect and Audi phone box



Fig. 141 Mini SIM card (actual size)

The SIM card reader is located in the glove box (20) ⇨*page 8, Fig. 2*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you make calls using a separate mini SIM card[1)], you can be reached on the telephone number of the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader. Depending on the type of mini SIM card, this may be the same number as for your current mobile phone contract (twin/Multi SIM card) or another number from a different mobile phone contract.

Important

The vehicle must be stationary, the ignition must be switched on and the **Telephone** menu must have been called up.

Using your own mini SIM card

- ▸ The missing corner of the mini SIM card should be at the front left. Slide the mini SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader ⇨ *Fig. 141* until you feel it engage.
- ▸ If requested, enter the PIN code for your mini SIM card in the MMI.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To allow the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Select and confirm either **Telephone installed in vehicle (SIM card)** or **Personal mobile phone (Bluetooth)**.

Telephone installed in vehicle (SIM card): The external car aerial is used. The SIM card is used for phone calls and Audi connect*.

Personal mobile phone (Bluetooth): The external car aerial is only used in conjunction with the Audi phone box*. The mini SIM card in the card reader is only used for Audi connect*.

- ▸ You can set whether you would also like the system to establish a data connection for the Audi connect services* ⇨ *page 160*. Please observe the notes on using Audi connect ⇨ *page 159*.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, either one or two symbols (depending on the connection type) will appear in the status line of the infotainment display to indicate the signal strength ④/⑯ ⇨ *page 130, Fig. 137*.

You can go back and change whether calls are made using the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader or your mobile phone via MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 215*.

In addition, the contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the directory of the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Removing a mini SIM card

- ▸ Briefly press the mini SIM card. The card will then eject from the slot. Remove the mini SIM card.

CAUTION

– To avoid damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm) ⇨ *Fig. 141*. Please contact your service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
– Should you have inserted a different SIM card size in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances attempt to remove it yourself as this may damage the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop.
– If you use SIM card adapters, the vibrations caused by the movement of the vehicle may cause the SIM card to become detached from the adapter - risk of damage to the SIM card reader.

Note

If your mobile phone does not support the remote SIM Access Profile (e.g. iPhone), you can use the contacts from your mobile phone by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the **Directory/contacts** profile ⇨ *page 214, Directory*.

1) Not available in all markets.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

You can use the Audi phone box to charge your mobile phone's battery. You can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls, which reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.*

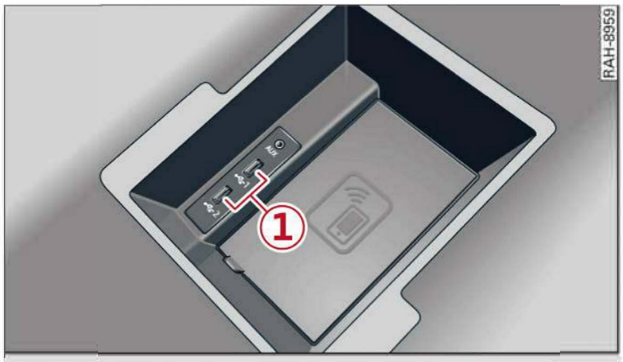


Fig. 142 Audi phone box with connections

The Audi phone box is located in the centre console's storage compartment (24) ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 2*.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected via Bluetooth ⇨ *page 142*.

– **To establish a connection with the external car aerial**[1]: Place your mobile phone onto the middle of the telephone symbol in the Audi phone box with the phone's display facing upwards. When doing so, make sure that there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone ⇨ *Fig. 142*.
– **To charge a mobile phone wirelessly**: Place your Qi compatible[2] mobile phone onto the middle of the symbol in the Audi phone box ⇨ *Fig. 142* with the phone's display facing upwards. The mobile phone will be charged.
– **To charge a mobile phone via a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile phone to the Audi music interface (1) ⇨ *Fig. 142* using a USB adapter cable.

You can charge your mobile phone using special USB adapters ⇨ *page 197, Fig. 171*.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres. This could result in serious injuries and also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. Always keep the centre armrest closed when driving.
– The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.

Note

– The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.
– If the mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box in a bag or a protective case, this may interfere with the connection to the external aerial.
– There must not be any metallic objects in the Audi phone box if you wish to use its charging function or the external aerial*.
– The charging time and the temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.
– Your mobile phone can be charged in the Audi phone box when the ignition is on.
– To avoid malfunctions, ensure that the mobile phone is correctly placed inside the Audi phone box.
– The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
– An enhanced transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile phone is placed inside.
– Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.
– USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.

1) Additional car telephone function only with Audi connect*.
2) The Qi standard enables you to charge your mobile phone wirelessly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– When you charge your mobile phone wirelessly, the charging procedure may be interrupted if you place your remote control key in the Audi phone box together with the mobile phone.

Using the telephone

Calling up the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 143 Example: Telephone functions in the selection menu

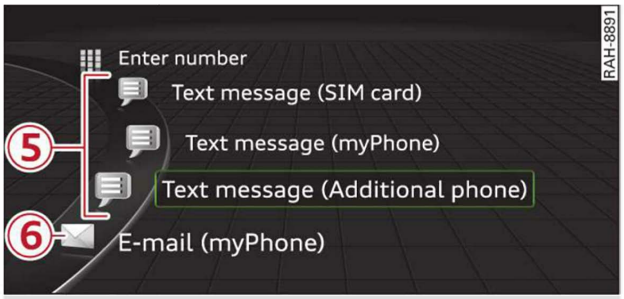


Fig. 144 Example: Further telephone functions in the selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨*page 142*, or a mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨*page 144, Fig. 141*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following telephone functions are available ⇨*Fig. 143*:

① Call list 147
② Favourites 149
③ Directory 153
④ Enter number 148
⑤ Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (myPhone)*/Text message (additional phone)* 150
⑥ E-mail (myPhone)*/E-mail (additional phone)* 151

Your mobile phone's device name is displayed in the **Telephone** menu, e.g. Text message (MyPhone) ⇨*Fig. 143*.

Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

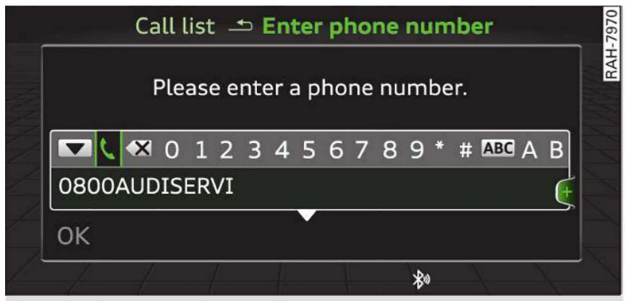


Fig. 145 Speller for numbers



Fig. 146 Dialling a telephone number from the call list

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Call list

Important: The call list must contain a telephone number.

Turn the rotary pushbutton to show the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number in the call list.

Symbols in the call list ⇨*Fig. 146*:

① Missed calls
② Numbers dialled
③ Received calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: To call the selected contact.
– **Connect additional phone*/Switch primary & additional phone***: Refer to ⇨*page 143*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Edit number before making call**: To edit a telephone number before making a call. Select and confirm **OK** to use the changes. **Or**: Press the left control button to go back without making the changes.
– **Send text message**: To send the selected contact a text message.
– **Delete call list**: Select and confirm if you wish to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.
– **Store as favourite**: To store the selected contact as a favourite.

Favourites

Important: A telephone number or a contact must have been added as a favourite ⇨ *page 149*.

Select and confirm a favourite in the favourites list.

Directory

Important: You must have stored a contact on your mobile phone.

Select and confirm a telephone number in the directory ⇨ *page 153*.

Enter number

– **To enter a telephone number using numbers**: Enter a telephone number using the speller for numbers ⇨ *Fig. 145*.
– **To enter a telephone number using letters**: Select and confirm ABC using the speller for numbers. Enter a series of letters, e.g. *AUDI-SERVICE* using the speller for letters.
– **To dial a telephone number**: Select and confirm ✆. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton downwards. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **To delete letters/numbers individually**: Select and confirm ⌫.
– **To delete all the numbers/letters you have entered at once**: With the selection line activated, turn the rotary pushbutton to ⌫ and press and hold the rotary pushbutton. **Or**: Select the right control button > **Clear entry field**.

You can enter **DTMF** tones ("touch-tones") using the speller while you are talking on the phone.

Answering/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **To answer a call**: Select and confirm **Answer**.
– **To decline a call**: Select and confirm **Ignore**.
– **To mute an active call**: Select and confirm **Mute**.
– **To end a call/cancel the dialling process**: Select and confirm **End call**. **Or**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

To answer a further call: Refer to ⇨ *page 148, During a telephone call*.

Caller information: Depending on whether the caller is stored in the directory and whether the telephone number is transmitted with the call, the caller's *name*, his/her *telephone number* or **Unknown** will appear on the infotainment display. A photo of the caller may also be shown if one has been assigned to the contact in your mobile phone and transmitted to the MMI. You can find out if your mobile phone supports this function by asking your mobile network provider, consulting your mobile phone's operating manual or visiting **www.audi.com/bluetooth**.

Note

Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.

During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A call must be in progress.

▸ Press the right control button.

The following options may be available during a call depending on the mobile phone being used and the type of connection:

– **To make a further call**: Select **Find contact** > **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > *an entry from the list*.
– **To answer a further call when you are talking on the phone and have another call on hold**: Select **Replace**. The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.
– **To answer a further call**: If you are already talking on the phone when someone else calls, ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

select **Answer** to place the current call on hold and to answer the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.

Other functions are:

Switch microphone off: If you select and confirm this option, the caller will no longer be able to hear you; you will still be able to hear the caller.

Hold/Resume: You can put a call on hold and retrieve it later from the hold queue. Select and confirm a call to resume it.

Transfer call to mobile phone*: Select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile phone** to transfer your current call from the MMI to your mobile phone.

Retrieve call*: Important: A call must be in progress. Select and confirm **Retrieve call** to transfer the current call from your mobile phone to the MMI.

Switch: You can switch between two phone calls (one of them will be on hold at any given time). Select **End call** to end whichever call is active. The call on hold will remain in the hold queue and can be continued by pressing the right control button > **Resume**.

Merge to conference: Up to five callers and one caller on hold can be added to a conference (depending on the network service). To set up a further call, place all the members of an existing conference on hold by pressing the right control button > **Hold**. Press the left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > *an entry from the list*. You can add the contact you have called to the conference using the right control button > **Merge to conference**. Select **Resume** if you want to retrieve all participants in an existing conference from the hold queue.

Connection manager: Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Telephone settings: Refer to ⇨ *page 155*.

Note

– If you are using the handsfree profile (**Handsfree**), the call waiting option must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation.
– For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone.
– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.
– The display for the incoming call may remain visible for several seconds afterwards; this depends on the type of mobile phone you are using. Should you use the functions **Replace** or **Ignore**, it is possible that the current call will be ended.

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

In addition to the mailbox number, you can store up to 50 contacts in the list of favourites, in any order.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

– **To store an existing telephone number as a favourite**: Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**. Select and confirm a contact/a telephone number from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**. Enter a name for the favourite or accept the suggestion. Select and confirm **Store**.
– **To rename a stored favourite**: Select and confirm **Favourites** > *select a favourite from the list*. Select: right control button > **Rename favourite**.
– **To move a stored favourite**: Select and confirm **Favourites** > *select a favourite from the list*. Select: right control button > **Move favourite**. Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.
– **To delete a stored favourite**: Select and confirm **Favourites** > *select a favourite from the* ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

list. Select: right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone function or mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on your mobile phone and your mobile phone contract, you may be able to send and receive text messages via the MMI.

Important

Your own mini SIM card with a messaging option must be inserted in the control console's SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 144, Fig. 141*.

Or: A mobile phone with Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 142*.

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (myPhone)/Text message (additional phone)***.

Inbox

All the text messages you have received are displayed.

Sent text messages

All the text messages you have sent are displayed.

Outbox

All the text messages to be sent are displayed.

Note

– Please note that, depending on your SIM card (e.g. if you are using a Multi SIM card), you may need to activate the function for sending and receiving text messages. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone.
– For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or contact an Audi dealer.
– In order to send text messages via the MMI, you will require a mobile phone with the Message Access Profile which also supports sending messages.

Write text message

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone function or mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (myPhone)/Text message (additional phone)*** > **Inbox** > right control button.

Write text message

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Enter a recipient. Select and confirm **Send**.

Reply*

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Select and confirm **Send**.

Message options

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone function or mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (myPhone)/Text message (additional phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent text messages/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on which menu you have selected:

Reply*

You can reply to a text message you have selected in the **Inbox**.

Forward

You can forward a text message you have selected to another recipient.

Resend*

You can re-send a text message you have selected.

Delete this text message*

You can delete a text message you have selected. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Read[1)]

You can have the MMI read an opened text message to you.

Text message settings*

Activate **Text message notifications** to have a notification displayed when a new text message is received. An envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status line of the infotainment display if there are any new text messages.

The number of your mobile network service provider's **Text message centre** is displayed. If no number has been stored, you can enter the number of the text message centre. For more information, contact your service provider.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Telephone settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 155*.

Note

Messages deleted using the MMI are also automatically deleted on the mobile phone.

E-mail*

Applies to: mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on your mobile phone, you may be able to send and receive e-mails via the MMI.

Important: Your mobile phone must have message access rights activated in its Bluetooth settings (MAP - Message Access Profile) and must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 142*. Please refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone to find out whether it supports this function.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (myPhone)/E-mail (additional phone)***.

Write new e-mail

– **To use a template**: Select and confirm the template you require from the list.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

All the e-mails you have received are displayed.

Sent

All the e-mails you have sent are displayed.

Outbox

All the e-mails to be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All the e-mails which have been stored but not yet sent are displayed.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Note

– For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or contact an Audi dealer.
– Please connect your mobile phone to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot* so that the e-mail app on your mobile phone retains access to the Internet. This helps to ensure that e-mails can be sent and received. If you cannot receive e-mails despite being successfully connected, please contact your e-mail service provider or your mobile network provider.

Message options

Applies to: mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (myPhone)/E-mail (additional phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following options may be available depending on which menu you have selected:

Storing an e-mail as a template

There are already ten e-mail templates stored on the MMI. You can store up to ten additional templates.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Continue with last edited e-mail

You can continue with the e-mail you last edited.

Reply*

You can reply to an e-mail you have selected in the **Inbox**.

Reply to all*

You can reply to all the recipients of an e-mail you have selected in the **Inbox**.

Forward

You can forward an e-mail you have selected to another recipient.

Delete this message*

You can delete an e-mail you have selected.

Read[1)]

You can have the MMI read an opened e-mail to you.

E-mail settings*

Activate **E-mail notifications** to have a notification displayed when a new e-mail is received. An envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status line of the infotainment display if there are any new e-mails.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Telephone settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 155*.

Note

Messages deleted using the MMI are also automatically deleted on the mobile phone connected.

Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > **Mailbox**.

– **To enter the mailbox number**: Enter the number desired. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **To dial the mailbox number**: Select and confirm **Mailbox**.

Note

– This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider before you can use it. For more information, contact your service provider.
– The mailbox number depends on your service provider.

Emergency call functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Enter number** > *enter emergency number (e.g. 112)* > **OK**.

WARNING

– Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when a vital communication (e.g. medical emergency) is involved.
– Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Emergency numbers are not the same for all countries. Please make sure that you know the emergency number for the country you are in.

Directory

Calling up the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After a mobile phone has been connected successfully, the contacts from the mobile phone are automatically imported into the directory of the MMI system.



Fig. 147 Directory

Important: You must have stored a contact on your mobile phone.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.

– **To select a contact**: Select and confirm a contact in the directory. The telephone numbers for the contact you have selected will be displayed. Select and confirm a phone number to start the call.
– **To use the search function**: Refer to ⇨*page 129*.

The contacts are displayed in alphabetical order; they can be sorted by first name/surname ⇨*page 156*.

You can connect several different mobile phones to the MMI system, or use different mini SIM cards in the SIM card reader*, allowing you to manage up to four private directories.

You can open the directory via the **Telephone*** menu and via the **Navigation*** menu.

Note

– Please pay attention to any synchronisation queries on your mobile phone. You must confirm any synchronisation queries from the directory before the contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone into the MMI directory.
– Which contacts are displayed on the MMI depends on the mobile phone you are using. For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or contact an Audi dealer.
– The system will always display the directory of the mobile phone currently connected.
– In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
– If the mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨*page 144*, the SIM card entries and the contacts in the local MMI memory are displayed.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible anytime and are therefore not protected against access by other users.

Using contacts from another mobile phone

Applies to: vehicles with SIM card reader

If a mini SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader and is used for telephone calls, you can access the phone book on another mobile phone.

Important: A mini SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader.

▸ Refer to ⇨*page 214, Directory*.

Note

– When the MMI system has downloaded the phone book from the mobile phone, the contacts from the SIM card will no longer be shown in the MMI directory.
– When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will load the mobile phone's ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system. If this is not the case, the MMI system will show the contacts from the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader.

Searching for a contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- ▸ To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact you are looking for individually, separating them with a space. Enter additional letters if necessary.
- ▸ Select and confirm a contact in the directory. The telephone numbers for the contact you have selected will appear.
- ▸ Select and confirm a phone number to start the call.

Note

– You can scroll rapidly through long lists by turning the rotary pushbutton quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of entries in the list.
– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 129*.

Showing contact details*

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 148 Show contact details

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Call**: Select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Add navigation destination**: To start navigating*, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to call up further options for the contact details.

– **Read contact**: The MMI system automatically creates a name tag for each contact in the directory, which you can have the system read to you.
– **Store as favourite**: Refer to ⇨ *page 149, Favourites*.
– **Send text message***: You can send the selected contact a text message ⇨ *page 150*.
– **Delete contact**: You can delete a contact you have selected.

Note

You can only edit/delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.

Importing/exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the directory.

Important: An SD card must be inserted in the SD card reader ⇨ *page 192*, or a USB mass storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 197*.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

– **To import contacts from a storage device**: Select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
– **To export contacts to a storage device**: Select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
– **To select all contacts at once for import/export**: Select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB** ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

device 1/USB device 2 > **All** > **Start import/ Start export**.

– **To import contacts from your myAudi account**[1]: Select and confirm **Import contacts** > **myAudi account**. Enter your myAudi user data.

You must have a **myAudi account** before you can import contacts from the myAudi account. You only have to enter your myAudi user data/myAudi PIN once. When you store a vehicle in your myAudi account, you will receive the myAudi PIN in the account.

Note

– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.
– For more information on the myAudi account, please refer to **my.audi.com**.
– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory you are using.
– You can import up to 1000 contacts. You can call up the memory capacity of the directory any time ⇨ *page 156*.
– Never store important data on SD cards or USB mass storage devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of data or media.
– It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.
– There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.

Settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Call forward: Forwarding of incoming calls to your mailbox or to another phone number can be switched on/off. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Call waiting: If this option is activated ☑, you will be informed of incoming calls when you are on the phone. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Transmit caller ID: Sending your telephone number in outgoing calls can be activated/deactivated. With the **Network-dependent** option, the setting agreed in your mobile network service contract will be used. The settings apply only to the **Telephone** menu in the MMI system. When the Bluetooth connection has been terminated, the settings of your mobile phone apply. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Telephone mode*

On vehicles with a car telephone kit, you can choose between three different telephone modes to optimise the network response:

– **Automatic**: The car telephone automatically switches between the GSM (2G), UMTS (3G) and LTE networks. This depends on the network, the network reception, and the position of the vehicle. In this mode, there might be restrictions when using Google Earth or Wi-Fi.
– **Telephony optimised**: The car telephone kit registers with the GSM network (2G). In this mode, the reception is prioritised for making and receiving calls. There may be restrictions when using Google Earth or Wi-Fi.
– **Data service optimised**: The car telephone registers with the GSM (2G), UMTS (3G) or LTE network. This depends on the network, the network reception, and the position of the vehicle. In this mode, the reception is prioritised for the ▶

[1] The conditions for using Audi connect services* must be met and you must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com, added a vehicle to the account and stored contacts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

use of data services. There may be restrictions when making and receiving calls.

If you select the telephone mode **Automatic** or **Telephony optimised**, there may be network restrictions if you try to use Audi connect services* and make telephone calls at the same time.

Ring tone and volume settings[1)]

You can switch the MMI ring tone on or off using the **Mute telephone** function. Ring tones are played when you select the function **Ring tone**. Select an entry from the list and confirm it. For the settings **Ring tone volume/Message volume**, see ⇨ *page 217*. You can adjust the **Microphone input level** during an active phone call using the rotary pushbutton.

Network settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 215*, **Network settings***.

Serial number (IMEI)*

The serial number of the telephone module installed in the MMI system is displayed.

Switch on telephone/Switch off telephone

Applies to: vehicles with car telephone kit

The car telephone will be turned “on” automatically when the ignition is switched on, as long as it was *not* switched off separately the last time it was used.

Note

– You can bond several mobile phones to the MMI system; however only two* connections are active at a time.
– All bonded Bluetooth devices can be deleted by resetting the **Bluetooth** function to the factory settings ⇨ *page 213*.
– If you select the telephone mode **Automatic** or **Telephony optimised**, there may be network restrictions if you try to use Audi connect services* and make telephone calls at the same time.

Further options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Bluetooth settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 215*.

Online settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 215*.

Wi-Fi settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

Data connection settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 166, Configuring the data connection*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Directory settings**.

Memory capacity

The **Memory capacity** of the directory will be displayed.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the MMI's directory. Up to 4,000 contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone into each directory, and up to 1,000 contacts can be imported from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to their **surname** or **first name**.

Import contacts

Refer to ⇨ *page 154, Importing/exporting contacts*. ▶

1) Depends on the connected mobile phone

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Export contacts

Refer to ⇨ *page 154, Importing/exporting contacts*.

Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

Hiding contacts without a number

If this function is switched on ☑ and if no number has been stored for a contact, the contact is displayed greyed out in the directory.

Seat belt microphone

Applies to: vehicles with seat belt microphone

The seat belt microphone is ideally positioned for the best possible communication quality when using the handsfree system, irrespective of your height and sitting position.



Fig. 149 Seat belt microphone

The seat belt microphone is activated as soon as you put on the seat belt. Make sure that the microphones are on the outside of the seat belt ⇨ *Fig. 149*.

When the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the system switches from the seat belt microphone to the roof microphone.

Note

– If you switch off* the passenger's airbag, the passenger's seat belt microphone is deactivated even if the belt is buckled.
– If the opening for a microphone is dirty, this can impair the quality of handsfree communication. In this case, clean the seat belt microphone using a fine brush.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone are met ⇨*page 142*. **Or:** Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure ⇨*page 142*.
The mobile phone does not support the **remote SIM Access Profile** (e.g. iPhone).	Insert a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* and use the functions of the car telephone kit independently of your mobile phone. When the mini SIM card is inserted, you can also use the contacts from your mobile phone by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the **Directory** profile ⇨*page 214*.
Using the MMI with **two SIM cards** (in the SIM card reader* *and* in a mobile phone).	The MMI only ever accesses *one* SIM card at a time. A mini SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader* has priority over one in a mobile phone. However, you can still access the contacts on another mobile phone via Bluetooth if a mini SIM card is inserted ⇨*page 214*.
After the mobile phone was connected **not all/none of the contacts** were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used. For further information, please contact your mobile network service provider, see the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or consult the Audi "Tested mobile phones" database located at **www.audi.com/bluetooth**.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible with the system or the Bluetooth function of your mobile phone may have been deactivated. For more information, contact your system administrator.
Applies to vehicles with Audi phone box: Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted.	Applies to vehicles with Audi phone box: Check whether your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is on the middle of the phone symbol in the Audi phone box ⇨*page 146* and that there are *no* other objects in the Audi phone box. Do not place your remote control key in the Audi phone box together with your mobile phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi connect

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Audi connect services allow online information to be directly transmitted and integrated into the vehicle.

Thanks to a Wi-Fi hotspot, it is possible to use a mobile device to access the Internet when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please always observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 121, Notes on traffic safety*.
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
- Audi connect services should only be used via a Wi-Fi hotspot when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

Note

Please also refer to ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect* before using.

Setting up

Before you start

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

An Internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect. You can establish a connection by using one of the following options:

Option 1

Using a separate mini SIM card in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 159*

Option 2[1)]

Connecting an rSAP⇨ *page 160* enabled mobile phone via Bluetooth

Option 3[2)]

Using a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone) as a personal Wi-Fi hotspot for the MMI ⇨ *page 161*

Using the SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with SIM card reader



Fig. 150 Mini SIM card (actual size)

Important

The vehicle must be stationary.

The ignition must be switched on.

Inserting a SIM card

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect**. ▶

1) Not available in all markets. Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile on vehicles with Audi connect and Audi phone box*.

2) Not available for all countries and models

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ To establish an Internet connection for Audi connect services, confirm the prompt on the display with **Accept**.
- ▸ The missing corner of the mini SIM card should be at the front left. Slide the mini SIM card into the slot in the SIM card reader ⇨ *Fig. 150* until you feel it engage.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Enter PIN**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN code for your SIM card in the MMI.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To allow the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Confirm the system query of whether an Internet connection should be established with **Yes, connect once** or **Yes, always connect if necessary**.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength and type of connection will appear in the status line of the infotainment display ③/④ ⇨ *page 130, Fig. 137*.

You can now use Audi connect.

The available Audi connect services will be listed on the infotainment display.

Removing a SIM card

- ▸ Briefly press the mini SIM card. The card will then eject from the slot. Remove the mini SIM card.

CAUTION

– To avoid damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm) ⇨ *Fig. 150*. Please contact your service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
– Should you have inserted a different SIM card size in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances attempt to remove it yourself as this may damage the SIM card reader. Please contact a qualified workshop.
– If you use SIM card adapters, the vibrations caused by the movement of the vehicle may cause the SIM card to become detached from the adapter - risk of damage to the SIM card reader.

Connecting an rSAP enabled mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 151 Is your mobile phone rSAP enabled? This QR code takes you directly to the mobile device database (data connection costs vary according to your mobile phone contract).

Important

Your mobile phone must support the Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile (Bluetooth rSAP).

For information regarding which Bluetooth connections and functions your mobile phone supports, contact your mobile network service provider or consult the mobile device database at **www.audi.com/bluetooth** ⇨ *Fig. 151*.

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system and the mobile phone must be activated.

The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone.

Access to your SIM card (*SIM Access*) must be activated on your mobile phone.[1)] ▶

[1)] Not available in all markets. Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile on vehicles with Audi connect* and Audi phone box*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Connecting a mobile phone

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile phone** > **Continue**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown on the infotainment display. **Or**: Search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired mobile phone from the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▸ Enter the PIN to establish a connection on your mobile phone. **Or**: If the PIN is already being displayed on your mobile phone, confirm it on the phone and on the MMI. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN.

If you wish to connect your mobile phone via the remote SIM Access Profile, please also enter your SIM card's PIN in the MMI[1].

Please note any additional system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory separately.

- ▸ Confirm the system query of whether an Internet connection should be established with **Accept**.

After connecting successfully

The Bluetooth symbol (12), signal strength symbol (4) and type of connection (3) ⇨ *page 130* will appear on the infotainment display when the mobile phone has been connected successfully.

You can now use Audi connect.

Note

– Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when they are within range and the ignition is on.

– You receive the SIM PIN and the PUK from your mobile network service provider together with the SIM card. If you enter the SIM PIN code incorrectly three times[2] in a row, the SIM card will be be blocked. A PUK (personal unblocking key) must be entered in order to reactivate the SIM card.

– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car.

– For further information regarding your mobile phone, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone. For information on using a phone in your car, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or ask an Audi dealer.

Using a personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect and personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Important

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

Your mobile device and mobile network provider must support the mobile Wi-Fi hotspot function.

The personal Wi-Fi hotspot on your mobile device must be activated.

Other devices must be permitted to access the mobile hotspot.

Connecting the MMI to a personal hotspot

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi** > **on**.
- ▸ Then select and confirm **Network search**. The devices found will be shown on the infotainment display.
- ▸ Select and confirm your personal Wi-Fi hotspot from the list.
- ▸ You may need to enter the password specified by your mobile device. ▶

1) Not available in all markets. Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile on vehicles with Audi connect* and Audi phone box*.

2) The number of possible attempts depends on the SIM card.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Select and confirm **OK**.

Note

– The **Connection to personal hotspot** option ⇨ *page 166* will be switched on (☑) automatically during the network search.
– Please contact your mobile network service provider to find out which functions your mobile device supports.
– Whether other devices can use the mobile Wi-Fi hotspot depends on your data plan.
– Audi recommends that you set a password to protect mobile wireless networks from unauthorised access.

Configuring using myAudi

Activating/configuring certain Audi connect services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Before you first use certain Audi connect services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account:

– If you do not yet have a personal myAudi account, please register on the Internet at **my.audi.com**.
– Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
– Activate/configure the Audi connect services you require for your vehicle in your myAudi account.
– When you call up certain services on the MMI, it may be necessary to also enter your myAudi user data/PIN in order to connect the vehicle to myAudi.

Detailed information on configuration can be found on the Internet at **my.audi.com**.

Logging into myAudi in the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Before you use some Audi connect services (e.g. Twitter), you will need to connect your vehicle to your myAudi account to use the personal settings from the account.*

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Login**.
▸ Enter your myAudi user data. **Or**: Enter your eight-character myAudi PIN.
▸ Confirm the entry with **OK**.

You can then call up the personal settings from your myAudi account in the vehicle.

Note

You will receive your myAudi PIN after setting up a myAudi account. For more information, please refer to **my.audi.com**.

Audi connect services

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 152 Example: Audi connect homepage with preview

Specific functions for individual Audi connect services may be available in the service's selection menu ⇨ *page 22*. Basic functions can be accessed in the relevant options menu:

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect service* > right control button.

Depending on the Audi connect service you wish to use, the following basic functions may be available:

Save as a preview

You can have a preview of selected Audi connect services displayed in the overview (1) ⇨ *Fig. 152*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Show on map

You can have selected content displayed on the map and use it for route guidance.

Read[1)]

You can have the MMI read out some types of content.

Start route guidance

If an entry contains a location (e.g. in **City events**), this can be used as a navigation destination in the MMI.

Refresh

The content of the Audi connect service selected is updated.

Change search area

The search area selected can be changed at any time. For more information on search areas, please refer to ⇨ *page 172, Entering a special destination*.

Closing an Audi connect service

You can close an Audi connect service at any time and go back to the overview, regardless of which function you have chosen ⇨ *Fig. 152*.

Parking information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on places to park and parking fees in the search area selected (e.g. **In immediate vicinity**).

▸ Select and confirm **Parking information**.

You can use the right control button to sort the car parks **by distance** or **by availability**.

Travel information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on landmarks in the search area selected.

▸ Select an confirm a landmark to have details displayed.

Fuel prices

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on filling stations with the cheapest fuel prices for your vehicle in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **Fuel prices**.

You can use the right control button to sort the fuel prices **by price** or **by distance**.

Weather

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on the current weather and weather forecasts for the search area selected (e.g. **In immediate vicinity**).

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Flight information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on flights and current arrival/departure times in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **Flight information**.

You can use the right control button to select the information you require.

City events

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on events of different categories in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **City events** > left control button > *a category*.

Online news

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

With this service, you can call up the latest headlines from your preferred news providers in the MMI.

Important: You must have subscribed to news feeds via your myAudi account and your vehicle must be connected to myAudi ⇨ *page 162*. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired news feed* > *a headline*.

Note

If you have not yet subscribed to any personal news feeds in your myAudi account, pre-configured news feeds will be shown.

Twitter

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can access the most important functions of your Twitter account via the MMI.

Important:

You must have linked your myAudi account to Twitter. For more information, please refer to **my.audi.com**.

You must have linked your vehicle to myAudi ⇨ *page 162*.

▸ Select **Twitter** > left control button > *function desired* (e.g. **Trends**).

You can choose the following categories in the **Twitter** menu:

– **My tweets**: New tweets and tweets you have composed are listed.
– **Home**: All the tweets from people you are following are displayed.
– **Trends**: Topics currently being favoured for discussion within a particular country.

Different functions will be available depending on the Twitter category you choose:

– **New tweet**: You can send a new tweet with the help of ready-made templates or text blocks personalised in your myAudi account.
– **Refresh**: The selected Twitter function is updated.
– **Favourite**: You can "favourite" a tweet to show that you like it.
– **Retweet**: You can repost a tweet to share it with other people.

Note

– For more information on how to connect your myAudi account to Twitter, please see **my.audi.com**.
– Further settings (such as your account, language, Tweet privacy, and location settings) *cannot* be changed in the MMI. If you wish to change anything in these menus, please do so on the Twitter website itself.
– Further information on the individual templates can be found at **my.audi.com**.
– You can only connect *one* Twitter account to your myAudi account.
– Audi connect enables you to access the Twitter service. Audi cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of Twitter.

Audi connect services in the navigation system

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

– Navigation with **Google Earth** and **Google Street View** ⇨ *page 181*.
– **Online point of interest search with speech dialogue system** (e.g. restaurants): For planning a route via the MMI control console and the speech dialogue system ⇨ *page 133*.
– Adding a destination to your MMI via your **myAudi account** ⇨ *page 173* or **Google Maps** ⇨ *page 181*.
– **Online traffic information***: Up-to-the-minute reception of information on accidents, roadworks and other incidents ⇨ *page 182*.
– **myAudi special destinations***: Your personal special destinations can be imported to your MMI via an SD card.
– **Map update***: Navigation map updates can be imported to your MMI using an SD card.

Note

– The Audi connect **map update** service using an SD card allows you to find out which software version is installed in your vehicle. You can then check whether a new version is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

available at **my.audi.com**. You can also have the new navigation data installed by an Audi dealer (carries additional charges).
– Further information on the **myAudi special destinations** and the **map update** can be found at **my.audi.com**.

Audi connect services for telephones

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

Creating contacts on your PC via your **myAudi account** and loading the contacts into the directory of your MMI system ⇨ *page 154*.

Audi connect services in the Media menu

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player and Audi connect

– **Wi-Fi audio player**: To access the media centre of your player (e.g. smartphone) connected via Wi-Fi ⇨ *page 195*.
– **Online media**: With assistance from the **Audi MMI connect** app, this function allows you to access and operate various online media services using the MMI.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Note

Please contact an Audi dealer for more information on Wi-Fi audio players and for a list of supported devices.

Further options

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

The following options are available to you in the overview of the Audi connect services:

– **Login**: Refer to ⇨ *page 162, Logging into myAudi in the vehicle*.
– **Connection manager**: Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.
– **Licence periods**: The validity and the time remaining on your licences is displayed. If the **Licence expiry warning** function is switched on, a message will be displayed before the licence expires.

Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use your MMI system as a Wi-Fi hotspot for connecting to the Internet on up to eight Wi-Fi devices.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

The following settings can be made:

Wi-Fi

The Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated when the vehicle leaves the factory. Switch the Wi-Fi hotspot **on** before establishing an Internet connection between your vehicle and your Wi-Fi device.

– **on**: The MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and visible to other devices. You can connect your Wi-Fi device to the MMI.
– **off**: The MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated. Wi-Fi devices will not be able to connect to the Internet.

Network key

The Wi-Fi connection between your vehicle and the Wi-Fi device (laptop or mobile phone) is encrypted. Before a connection can be established, you must enter the following values/settings when setting up your Wi-Fi device (these values can be edited as required):

– **Access point (SSID)**: Name of the Wi-Fi network.
– **Password**: A random MMI password is set at the factory. This password can be changed. The encryption type WPA2 requires the password to be at least 8 characters long. Please select a secure password.
– **Discoverability**: To switch the discoverability of your Wi-Fi network on or off. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Network search*

A list of the Wi-Fi networks available near you is displayed.

Connection to personal hotspot[1)]

The Wi-Fi hotspot of the MMI is activated. The MMI can establish an Internet connection to a personal Wi-Fi hotspot (e.g. smartphone). You can search for your personal hotspot and connect to the MMI using **Network search**. For more information, please refer to ⇨ *page 161*.

This mode is not available if your own SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader.

WARNING

- Do not allow the features of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from watching the traffic – taking your eyes off the road can cause an accident.
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
- No Wi-Fi devices may be used in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 235*.

CAUTION

- Depending on the configuration of the Wi-Fi device you are using (refer to the operating manual of your Wi-Fi device for more details), the SIM card of the device may be used in certain cases to provide the data connection for Internet-supported apps and services which use the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider. Some example cases are described below:
  - Data plan expired/used up
  - Data plan not valid abroad
  - SIM card in the card reader* is not a data SIM card
  - SIM card in the card reader* is defective/not valid
  - Network is switched automatically due to a low signal strength/data rate of the Wi-Fi hotspot, the eSIM* or the SIM card in the card reader*
  - Connection to Wi-Fi hotspot interrupted
- Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

- You might require a separate mobile phone contract with extra costs before you can use the Wi-Fi hotspot. For more information, contact your service provider.
- In vehicles without Audi connect*, the Wi-Fi hotspot can only be used for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.
- Further information can be found on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.

Configuring the data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You must configure a data connection before you can use Audi connect services.

▸ Select: MENU button > right control button > **Connection manager**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

You can select when you would like the system to establish an Internet connection in the **Data connection settings** menu. The online connection is ▶

1) Not available in all markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

severed automatically when data packets are no longer required.

The following options are available:

Connection setup

– **with request**: A data connection will only be established on request.
– **without request**: A data connection will be established automatically for the use of Audi connect services.
– **never**: A data connection will not be established. It is then not possible to call up Audi connect services.

When a data connection has been established, a symbol indicating the type of connection and the signal strength will appear in the status line of the infotainment display ③ / ④ ⇨ *page 130, Fig. 137*.

You can cancel an active data connection manually by setting the **Connection setup** option to **never**.

Data roaming

The **Data roaming** function is deactivated when the vehicle leaves the factory. **Data roaming** must be activated (☑) before you can use a data connection abroad. This setting is saved for the current SIM card/the mobile phone currently connected.

Audi connect (MMI)

With this function, you can **allow** or **deny** the use of Audi connect services if the connection is set to **no request** or **if requested**.

Connection settings

Depending on the SIM card used, the connection may be configured automatically. However, these settings can be changed. For more information, contact your service provider.

– **APN**: The system access point depends on your mobile network service provider and is assigned automatically.
– **User name**: The user name for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.
– **Password**: The password for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.

To store changed connection settings: Press the BACK button.

Reset configuration

An online profile is created and configured automatically. The **Connection settings** you have changed manually are reset to the default settings.

Note

– According to the factory settings, the data connection will be interrupted initially when you travel abroad to protect you from unexpected roaming charges. If you want to use Audi connect services abroad, you must first activate the **Data roaming** option.
– For more information on roaming charges, contact your service provider.
– Further information can be found on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.

Notes on Audi connect

Audi connect services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Note

– Audi connect services are only available with an existing mobile phone contract (or one set up separately) and if you are in an area with mobile phone network coverage. Depending on your mobile phone tariff, you may be charged for receiving data packets online, especially if you are using the system abroad. Because of the high level of data usage, we strongly recommend using an unlimited data plan.
– The mobile phone standard LTE* is not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
– In order to use Audi connect services, you will need a mini SIM card with a data option; to use LTE*, the SIM card will also need to have an LTE data option.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Whether Audi connect services can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– Please also observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 141, Telephone*.
– Further information on Audi connect is also available on the Internet at **www.audi.com**. For information on the conditions of your mobile phone contract, please contact your mobile network service provider.
– The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract. Further information can be found on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.

Data protection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Note

– AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that AUDI AG can provide the services and that you can use them. Your data are not passed on to third parties. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect services und allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.
– If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect portfolio you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case we pass on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. AUDI AG will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.
– Further information can also be found on the MMI in the options menu ⇨ *page 123* of the Audi connect service selected and on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Subject	Advice
Audi connect services: Some Audi connect services are greyed out/ not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account: Detailed information can be found on the Internet at **my.audi.com**.
Wi-Fi hotspot: No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigation

Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

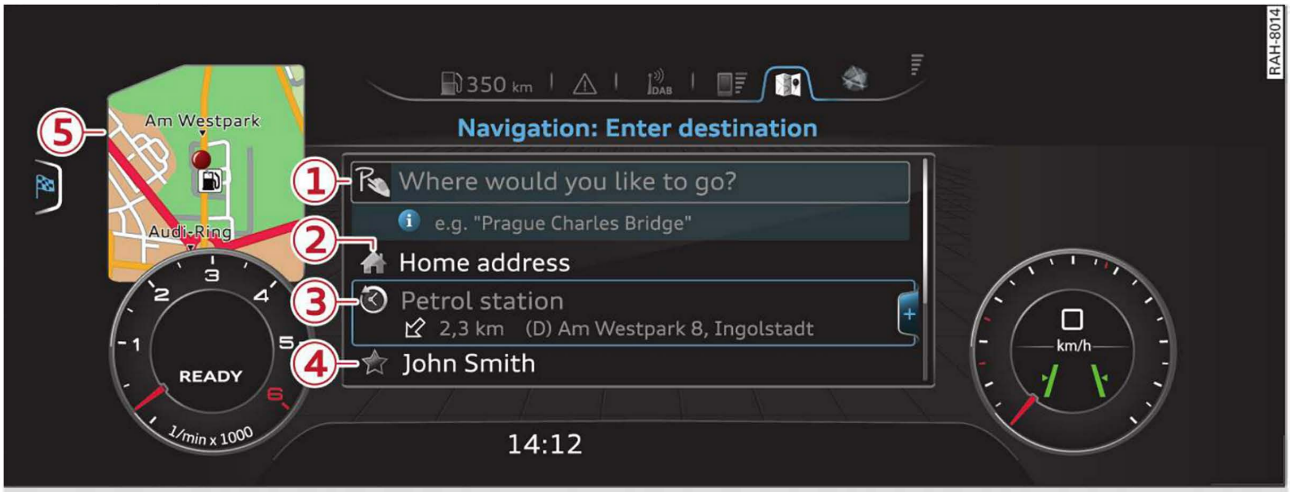


Fig. 153 Illustration: Entering a destination

▸ Select: NAV/MAP button.

After calling up the navigation system, the **Enter destination** menu ⇨ *Fig. 153* will be displayed. The following information can be shown on the infotainment display:

1. Entry field for the search function ⇨ *page 170*
2. Home address ⇨ *page 171*
3. Destinations recently travelled to ⇨ *page 170*
4. Stored favourites ⇨ *page 171*

The corresponding destination is displayed (depending on the vehicle's equipment) as a map preview* (5) ⇨ *Fig. 153* as soon as you select an entry from the list.

If you have connected a mobile phone to the MMI, your directory contacts are then listed if you have added navigation data to at least one contact.

The menu item **Favourites** (4) and your directory contacts are shown in the **Enter destination** menu when you have entered one or more letters in the entry field.

Switching between destination entry and map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed. **Or**: Press the left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– Today's driving conditions require the full attention of drivers. Please always observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 121, Notes on traffic safety*.
– Pay attention to traffic rules when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation of how best to reach a destination. Pay attention to traffic lights, no stopping signs, lane change restrictions, one-way streets, etc.

CAUTION

– Should the navigation directions contradict the current traffic regulations, you must always follow the traffic regulations.
– The volume should only be set at a level which enables you to hear distant police and emergency vehicles clearly - failure to do so could result in an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– Information on importing a map update to your MMI using an **SD card** can be found at **my.audi.com**.
– Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or interference caused by trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception and vehicle positioning can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
– Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.

Entering a destination

Searching for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the MMI touch pad to enter navigation destination details in any order (e.g. Forest Road London 20). You can search for special destinations, contacts, recent destinations or favourites in the same way to help you navigate to the desired address.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field is displayed.

– Write one or more search terms in the entry field (1) ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*. A list of all the results found will be shown on the infotainment display.
– Select a destination from the results list and confirm it.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

The route will be displayed as an overview on the map. Route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

– Select: right control button > **Country selection**.

All countries are preselected for the search function at the factory. You can use the **Country selection** function to deselect any countries you do not require. This speeds up the search and limits the number of results in the list.

Note

– The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
– Up to 50 entries are stored in the list of destinations to which you have recently driven.
– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 129*.
– For more information on making entries via MMI touch, please refer to ⇨ *page 124*.
– Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇨ *page 176*.

Loading a recent destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations you have most recently driven to are stored automatically and can be loaded directly as new destinations.

Important: You must have set a destination in the past.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

The destinations to which you have recently driven are displayed in the **Enter destination** menu and marked with the symbol (3) ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

– Select and confirm a recent destination.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Deleting recent destinations

– Select a recent destination from the list and confirm it.
– Select: right control button > **Delete**.
– Select and confirm **Delete this recent destination** or **Delete all recent destinations**.

The destination selected or all the recent destinations will be deleted and no longer displayed in ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the **Enter destination** menu ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.

– Select and confirm a line (e.g. **Street**, **House number** or **Country**) and enter the data you wish to use.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **To set a convenient map scale**: Turn the rotary pushbutton anti-clockwise or clockwise to change the map scale.
– **To activate the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton. The crosshairs will appear on the map.
– **To move the crosshairs**: Use the MMI touch pad to move the crosshairs to the destination.
– **To use the destination for route guidance**: Press the rotary pushbutton when the crosshairs are displayed. If you wish to set a stopover, select and confirm **Set as stopover** and then **Start route guidance**.
– **To hide the crosshairs**: Press the BACK button.

Additional information on the point selected with the crosshairs: If you use the crosshairs to preselect a location on the map, any existing information on this location (e.g. town name or special destinations) will be displayed ⑥ ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 159*.

Using home address/favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The home address option is a quick and easy way to have the system guide you home. The favourites make it easier to access destinations you require regularly.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

Using the home address as the destination

Important: A home address must have been stored ⇨ *page 175*.

Your home address is displayed in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

– Select and confirm the home address.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Using a favourite as the destination

Important: At least one destination must have been stored as a favourite ⇨ *page 175*.

– Enter one or more letters in the entry field for the search function. The favourites found will be shown on the infotainment display and marked with the corresponding symbol ④ ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
– Select and confirm the desired favourite.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Note

– Further home address settings can be found on ⇨ *page 175*.
– Further favourites settings can be found on ⇨ *page 175*.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate directly to entries in the directory.

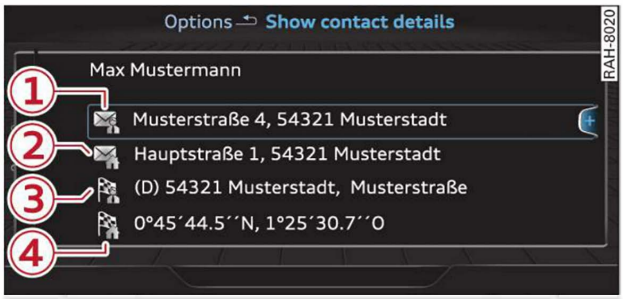


Fig. 154 Possible storage locations in directory

Important: A postal address with navigation data must be available for a contact or a navigation destination must have already been added for a contact.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨*page 169, Fig. 153*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

Directory contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and are displayed together with a location symbol:

① Business postal address
② Private postal address
③ Business navigation destination
④ Private navigation destination

– Select and confirm a postal address or a navigation destination. If you select a navigation destination, route guidance is started immediately.
– If you select a postal address, you can check the address details again.
– You can then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Further directory functions in the navigation system can be found on ⇨*page 175*.

Note

– Addresses which you have imported from your mobile phone into the MMI can also be used as navigation destinations.
– If a directory contact is greyed out, no navigation destination/postal address has yet been added for the contact.

Entering a special destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

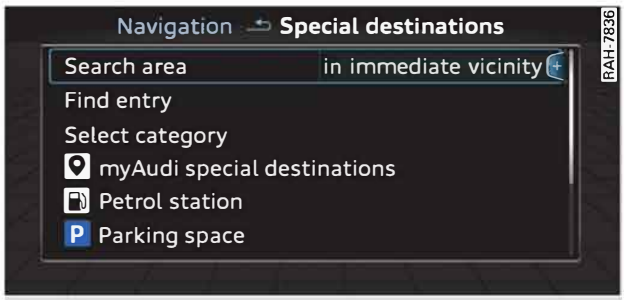


Fig. 155 Entering a special destination

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨*page 169, Fig. 153*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Special destinations**.

– **To change the search area**: Select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **To find a special destination in a specific category**: Select: **Select category** > *category desired*, e.g. **Restaurants**.

The following search categories are available:

In immediate vicinity: You can select special destinations from different categories. Special destinations in a radius of up to 200 km from the vehicle's position are listed.

In vicinity of route: Special destinations along the route can only be selected when the route guidance function is active. The special destinations are located directly on or in the immediate vicinity of your route.

In vicinity of destination/In vicinity of stopover: You can also select special destinations from different categories in the vicinity of the destination/stopover. For example, you can look for a hotel or a car park at the destination.

In new town: Enter the name of the town. You can select special destinations from different categories. You can use this function to find special ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

destinations in any town irrespective of the destination currently set or the vehicle position.

Note

– The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from the vehicle's current position. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.
– Sometimes there are destination entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely because they are too long. If you select one of these entries with the rotary pushbutton, detailed information on the selected entry will be displayed automatically after a few seconds.

Online point of interest search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can look for special destinations online.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 159*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area that was last set will be displayed in the entry field.

– **To change the search area**: Select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **To find an online destination in the selected search area**: Enter a new town if necessary. Enter a search term (e.g. restaurant) and select and confirm an online destination. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.
– **To find an online destination in a specific category**: Select: **Select category** > *category desired*, e.g. **Hotels**.

Please see ⇨ *page 172, Entering a special destination* for information on which search areas are available.

You can also use the speech dialogue system to search for online destinations ⇨ *table on page 136*.

Note

– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167*.
– Further information can be found on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.

Calling up destinations from myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can import navigation destinations from your myAudi account to the MMI.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at **my.audi.com**, added a vehicle to the account and stored one or more destinations.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
▸ If necessary, enter your myAudi login details or your myAudi PIN. The contacts stored in myAudi will be displayed.

– Select and confirm a contact > *desired destination*.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Note

– You only have to enter your myAudi login details once.
– You will receive your myAudi PIN after setting up a myAudi account. For more information, please refer to **my.audi.com**.

Entering a destination using coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Geographic coordinates**. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Select and confirm either **Latitude** or **Longitude**.
– Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the latitude/longitude.
– Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm your entry.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Adding a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter a new destination while route guidance is active.



Fig. 156 Example: Current route guidance with stopover

Important: A destination must already have been entered.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨*page 169, Fig. 153*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

– Enter a destination in the entry line (1) ⇨*page 169, Fig. 153*.
– Select a destination from the results list and confirm it.
– Select and confirm **Set as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

– Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the active route guidance is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ⇨*Fig. 156* under the stopover (1). Select and confirm the system request if necessary. The stopover will be deleted.

Further options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function chosen, the following options may be available to you when you are entering a destination:

Stop route guidance: The route guidance function must be active. The route guidance will be stopped. For more information, please refer to ⇨*page 175*.

Map settings: Refer to ⇨*page 180*.

Navigation settings: Refer to ⇨*page 176*.

Voice guidance: Refer to ⇨*page 177*.

Route criteria: Refer to ⇨*page 176*.

Show location on map: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered will be shown on the map.

Parking at this location: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. All the parking facilities near the location selected are shown on the infotainment display.

Special destinations along the route: All special destinations near the vehicle are displayed while route guidance is active.

Delete: The selected entry will be deleted. You can delete individual entries or all the entries (e.g. favourites or last destinations).

Audi connect for this location[1)]: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. Enables you to search for e.g. **City events** or **Travel information** around the selected location.

Online traffic data*[1)]: Reception of online traffic information ⇨*page 183* can be switched on/off.

Online traffic data: Reception of online traffic information ⇨*page 183* can be switched on/off. ▶

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country selection: Select all the countries in the list (☑) which, for example, you wish to include in your searches ⇨ *page 170*.

Store as favourite: Refer to ⇨ *page 175*.

Stop route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- ▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards. The active route guidance will be displayed ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 156*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete destination/Delete stopover** ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 156* under the line desired. The destination will be deleted. **Or**: Press the right control button > **Stop route guidance**.

Home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

Storing a home address

– Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*. After calling up the home address for the first time, you will be asked to set a home address.
– Select and confirm **Create now**.
– Enter a destination or select a destination from the list. **Or**:
– Select and confirm a destination > right control button > **Store as home address**.

A home address is stored in the MMI regardless of any mobile phone which may be connected. This home address is always available, even if no mobile phone is connected to the MMI.

Editing home address

– Select **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
– Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
– Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination will be stored as the new home address.

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

– **To store an existing destination as a favourite**: Search for the desired destination using the entry field. **Or**: Select and confirm a destination from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**.
– **To rename a favourite**: Select the left control button > **Favourites** > *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favourite**.
– **To move a favourite**: Select the left control button > **Favourites** > *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Move favourite**. Select and confirm the item desired.
– **To delete a favourite**: Select and confirm a favourite > right control button > **Delete this favourite/Delete all favourites**.

Directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be stored as a destination for each contact in the directory.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Important: A mobile phone must have been connected to the MMI system.

– Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
– Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.
– Enter a name. **Or**: Select and confirm a directory contact from the list.
– Select and confirm **Store business card**.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Other settings

Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
- Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the function selected, you can use the following settings:

Always display alternative routes

When this function is switched on ☑, up to three suggested routes and their characteristics are displayed on the overview map. Refer to ⇨ *page 177, Displaying alternative routes*.

Fuel warning

When the fuel gauge is in the reserve zone, a message will appear when this function is on ☑. A list of nearby filling stations will be displayed after you confirm this message. When you select one of the filling stations, the route to its location will be calculated based on the current position of your car.

Arrival notification*

The arrival notification is switched off when the vehicle leaves the factory.

When this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will inform you when you are approaching selected special destinations (e.g. imported myAudi special destinations). You can also have a sound played using the **Play notification tone** function.

Delete myAudi special destinations*

Destinations that you import from your myAudi account to your MMI are automatically saved. You can delete them individually or all at once.

Presentation mode

You can use the presentation mode to plan and "drive" a journey effectively without the need to move the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Select start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. Start the presentation mode to simulate route guidance.

Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

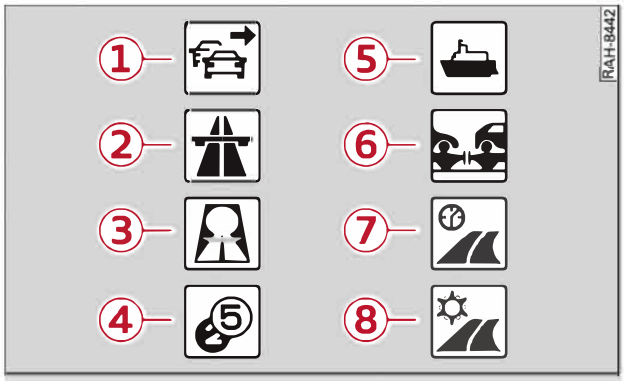


Fig. 157 Possible route criteria

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.
- Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① Traffic avoidance[1)]

– **automatic**: The route is automatically optimised using the current traffic information. If the MMI system does not display a detour route although the automatic traffic avoidance function is on and a traffic jam has been reported on the planned route, this is because the estimated time required for the detour is longer than the delay on the route with the traffic jam.
– **manual**: The MMI indicates that a better route is available and informs you of the potential time saving ⇨ *page 184*. You can then choose which route you would like to use.
– **off**: The route is not updated automatically. No optimised route is suggested.

② Motorways/ ③ Vignette roads[1)]**/ ④ Toll roads/ ⑤ Ferries/ ⑥ Motorail**[1)]: If you do not wish for the navigation system to include motorways, vignette/toll roads, ferries or car trains when calculating the route, you can select the ▶

[1)] This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

option **avoid**. You can also use the **Vignette roads** option to set the countries for which you possess a vignette.

⑦ Time restricted

– **avoid**: Roads that are closed at certain times of the day (e.g. pedestrian zones) are excluded from the route calculation.
– **automatic**: The MMI system determines whether the restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
– **with**: Roads that are closed at certain times of the day are included in the route calculation.

⑧ Seasonally restricted[1)]

– **avoid**: Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.
– **automatic**: The MMI system determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
– **with**: Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.

HOV lanes[2)]: Select **avoid** to exclude HOV lanes from the route calculation. Select **allow** to have the MMI system include HOV lanes in your navigation and display them on the map.

Voice guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨*page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: The navigation cues can be played in **complete** or **compact** form. You can use the **traffic** option to have the system play only those announcements on traffic obstructions that are relevant for your route. Select **off** if you do not want the system to play any navigation cues.

Voice guidance during calls: Navigation cues during a telephone call can be switched on/off.

Entertainment fader: Refer to ⇨*page 218*.

Volume of spoken cues: Refer to ⇨*page 218*.

Displaying alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

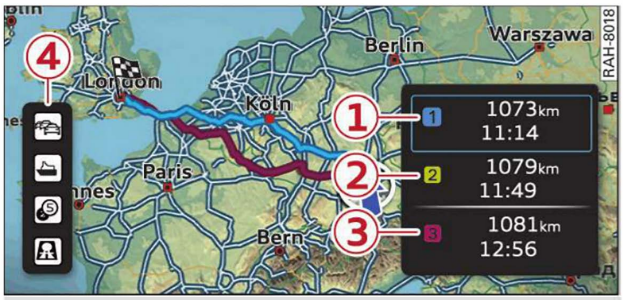


Fig. 158 Display of alternative routes

Important: A destination must have been entered and you must have started route guidance.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨*page 169, Fig. 153*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Display alternative routes**.

When this function is switched on, up to three suggested routes and their characteristics are displayed on the map ⇨*Fig. 158*.

The following information (if available) is displayed in the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, alternative fast ②, economical route ③)
– Distance to destination and estimated time of arrival
– Level of congestion on the route including length of delay

The route which was calculated on the basis of your route criteria is highlighted on the map. You may also be shown further information on particular characteristics of your route (e.g. ferry or motorail connections) ④ ⇨*Fig. 158*. For more information on the individual route criteria, please refer to ⇨*page 176*. ▶

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
2) This function is only available in the Mexican market.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can use the rotary pushbutton to preselect the possible alternative routes and have them displayed on the map. Select and confirm the route which you would like to use for route guidance.

Map

How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 159 Illustration: Map with crosshairs switched on



Fig. 160 Illustration: Map with crosshairs switched off

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *Fig. 160*.

Zooming

– Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise. You can also zoom in or out on the map using MMI touch ⇨ *page 126*. **Or**: Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel* ⇨ *page 22*.

Switching the crosshairs on/off

– **To switch on the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton while the map is being displayed.
– **To switch off the crosshairs**: Press the BACK button.

With the crosshairs switched on ⇨ *Fig. 159*:

① Orientation: The map is displayed either in the **2D north** or **2D driving position** perspective.

② Scale: Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise/anti-clockwise to zoom in or out. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

③ Zoom: When the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on, an “A” for “automatic” is shown in the zoom symbol.

④ The crosshairs: Move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch pad and select an item on the map as the destination. Alternatively, have information displayed on the map item.

⑤ Map content (special destinations, favourites): If several special destinations are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map.

⑥ Additional information on the position of the crosshairs: If you move the crosshairs onto a point on the map, any existing information on the current position of the crosshairs will be displayed. Press the rotary pushbutton to call up the destination details or start route guidance. If the crosshairs are switched off, the road you are currently on will be displayed.

⑦ Display of an upcoming turn-off. If no manoeuvre is coming up, the remaining distance to the destination/stopover is shown at this position along with the estimated arrival time.

⑧ For information on having a better route displayed, refer to ⇨ *page 184*.

With the crosshairs switched off ⇨ *Fig. 160*:

⑨ If a directional arrow is displayed, a bar graph will also appear. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point.

⑩ Speed display[1)]: Display of the maximum speed limit on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads.

⑪ Road the vehicle is currently on. When the vehicle is stationary, “offroad” is displayed here.

⑫ Location of the vehicle

⑬ Traffic information display (ONLINE* or TMC/TMCpro*)

⑭ Altitude display

⑮ Route information: Various information is displayed during route guidance (e.g. the upcoming manoeuvre including the calculated distance and road name). Traffic information or special destinations on your current route are also displayed.

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 160*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > *desired function*.

Switch to destination entry

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 169, Fig. 153*.

Traffic announcements

Up-to-date traffic information is shown on the infotainment display. Refer to ⇨ *page 182*.

Route list

The route list can only be displayed when the route guidance function is active; it contains information on the route, road names and the length of the route sections. On motorways, potential parking areas and service stations will be displayed. You can select them as e.g. a stopover.

Special destinations along the route

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

You can search for special destinations along your current route. Refer to ⇨ *page 172*.

Further options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 160*.
- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function chosen, the following additional options may be available in the **Map** menu: ▶

1) Applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stop route guidance: Refer to ⇨ *page 175*

Map settings: Refer to ⇨ *page 180*.

Route criteria: Refer to ⇨ *page 176*.

Voice guidance: Refer to ⇨ *page 177*.

Navigation settings: Refer to ⇨ *page 176*.

Online traffic data*: Refer to ⇨ *page 182*.

Display alternative routes: Refer to ⇨ *page 177*.

Parking in vicinity of route: Parking facilities near the vehicle are displayed.

Store current position: You can store your vehicle's current position as a favourite ⇨ *page 175* or as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 175*.

Audi connect for this location*[1]: Enables you to search for e.g. **City events** or **Weather** in the location entered.

Country information: With this option, you can view the speed limits for towns and country roads in the country you have selected. This information is displayed automatically when you cross a border in the route information (15) ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 160* if this is activated ⇨ *page 180*.

Exclude route*: When route guidance is activated, a section of the calculated route that you have set (max 20 km) will be avoided if possible. The navigation system will calculate an alternative route. The route you entered will only be blocked in the current route guidance; if required, you will need to re-enter the route you wish to avoid. If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 160*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the function selected, you can use the following settings:

Map colours

day/night: The map is displayed with a light/dark background colour.

automatic: When the lights are on, the map scheme will switch from day to night.

Map display

Standard ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 159*.

Google Earth* ⇨ *page 181, Fig. 161*.

Traffic ⇨ *page 183, Fig. 163*.

Map orientation

destination: The map indicates the destination and is set to face north.

2D driving position/2D north map: The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.

3D map: When this function is activated, the current vehicle position is displayed in a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel. If the map scale is more than 100 km, the map is set to face north.

overview: The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale varies according to the length of the route and is adapted automatically. The map is set to face north.

Route information

The display of route information such as the street you are currently on, upcoming turn-offs, traffic information or special destinations on the current route can be switched on/off.

Automatic zoom

on: The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will also be automatically adjusted so that you have a more detailed view. ▶

[1] This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

off: The map scale you have set will remain unaltered.

Map content

The display of map content such as traffic information, favourite destinations or restaurants can be switched on (☑) and off.

Google Earth map display

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can have the map display satellite images using the Google Earth map display.



Fig. 161 Google Earth map display



Fig. 162 Google Earth map display with Google Street View

Important: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨*page 159*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Google Earth**.

For this map display the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the **Standard** map display. The MMI has a memory capacity of 2 GB for temporarily storing the map/navigation data received online (corresponds to map/navigation data for about 4000 km of route guidance). You can also use the loaded satellite pictures for route guidance without an active data connection as long as these pictures are stored.

Google Street View

With Google Street View, you can explore many locations all over the world virtually from the perspective of a pedestrian. Google Street View is available as soon as the symbol ① ⇨*Fig. 161* is shown in crosshairs mode.

To activate Google Street View: Turn the rotary pushbutton to select a scale below 30 m.

The following options are available:

– **To explore a destination step-by-step**: Press the rotary pushbutton when the symbol ② ⇨*Fig. 162* is visible.
– **To zoom in/out of the current view (up to 4x)**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left/right when the symbol ③ ⇨*Fig. 162* appears.
– **To navigate in the street view**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Additional information

In the **Map content** menu ⇨*page 181*, you can activate the function to show additional information on the infotainment display. To show the additional information move the crosshairs onto an item on the map and press the rotary pushbutton.

Note

– You can delete the data stored by the Google Earth map display by selecting **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨*page 213*.
– Google Earth is an Audi connect service that is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
– When the Google Earth map display is switched on and the position 3D map type is selected, the map display automatically switches to the position 2D map while you are driving through a tunnel.
– For safety reasons, the Google Street View functions cannot be used while the vehicle is moving.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.
– Further information can be found on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.

Calling up traffic information

Dynamic traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the traffic information received via TMC/TMCpro*/online* - depending on availability - you can have the MMI guide you past traffic obstructions whenever possible. For this, the traffic avoidance must be switched on ① ⇨ *page 176*.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC/TMCpro* or the ONLINE symbol on the map ④ ⇨ *page 183, Fig. 163*.

Traffic information (TMC/TMCpro*)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 160*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC/TMCpro* symbol on the map:

Several traffic messages are summarised in the overview under the relevant road/motorway name.

– **To display all the traffic messages for a road/motorway**: Press the right control button. A list of all traffic messages on the road/motorway selected will be displayed.
– **To call up the detail view for a traffic message**: Select a traffic message from the list and confirm it.
– **To show the selected traffic message on the map**: Select: right control button > **Show on map**. The hatched line shows the stretch of road affected by the traffic obstruction.
– **To display the next piece of traffic information on the map**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Traffic information display

Coloured warning symbols: Traffic obstructions relevant for your route are shown in the top section of the list in order of the distance from your current location.

Warning symbols with ⮌: Traffic obstructions that you have avoided.

Greyed out warning symbols: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route. They are sorted according to road category (motorways, major roads, other roads), country and road number.

Note

– Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the rotary pushbutton.
– This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the Internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

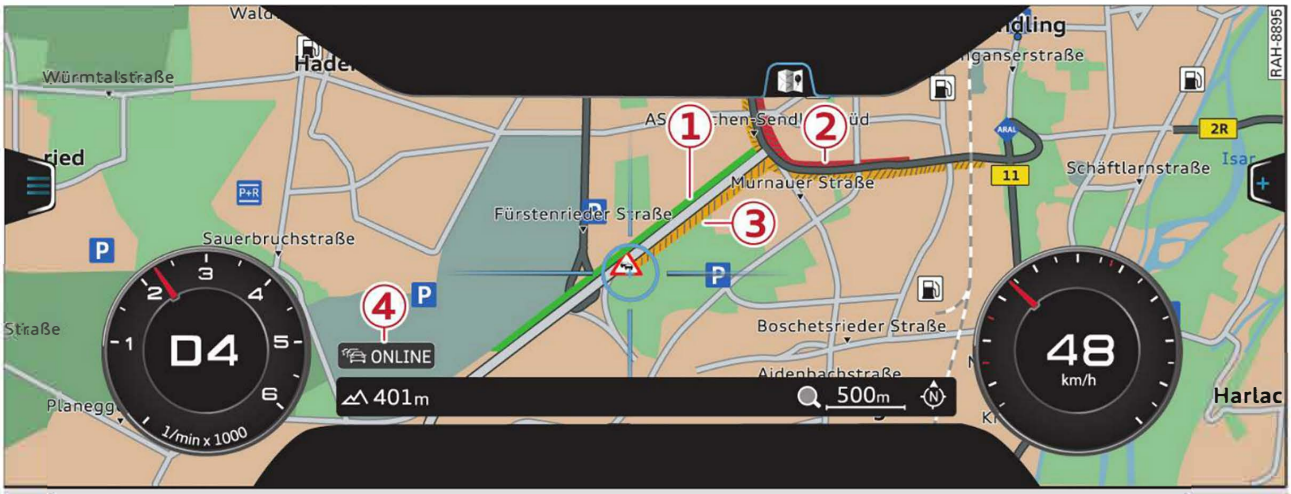


Fig. 163 Illustration: Online traffic information on the map

Important: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 159*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **To switch on online traffic information**: Press the right control button and turn **Online traffic data** on (☑).
– **To switch on the traffic map display**: To have the traffic information displayed in the best possible way, select the NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**.

You can also have the **online traffic information** displayed on the Google Earth map display ⇨ *page 181* or the standard map ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 159*.

If **Online traffic information** cannot be received, the traffic information will automatically be received via TMC/TMCpro* ⇨ *page 182*.

Traffic information display

① **Green**: no obstructions

② **Red**: traffic jam

③ **Orange**: slow-moving traffic

Hatched markings show the stretch of road affected by the traffic obstruction.

Coloured warning symbols: A traffic obstruction is ahead (when route guidance is active).

Greyed out warning symbols: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.

Red warning symbols: If route guidance is not active, all warning symbols are shown in red.

You can adjust the settings for the display of the coloured markings, warning symbols etc. in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 181*.

The traffic information is activated when the vehicle leaves the factory. You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time.

Prayer compass[1)]

Important: The display must be set to the map view ⇨ *page 178*.

– Select: left control button > **Mecca**. The direction of prayer in relation to the current vehicle ▶

[1)] The **prayer compass** function is only available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

position will then be shown on the infotainment display.

Note

– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.
– Every vehicle with active **Online traffic data** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. Should you not wish this to happen, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.
– The **online traffic information** network is not yet available in all countries or areas. Further information can be found on the Internet at **www.audi.com**.
– This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information via TMC, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving for the current route guidance. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

Dynamic traffic avoidance must be set to **manual** ⇨ *page 176* and the map must be displayed.

If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** and the time saving will be displayed on the map. In the map view, the symbol ⑧ ⇨ *page 178, Fig. 159* draws your attention to a better route.

Using a better route

– Press the rotary pushbutton. **Or**: Select the left control button > **Traffic messages**. The better route will be displayed along with your calculated arrival time.
– Select and confirm the better route.
– The better route will be used for the continuing route guidance.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Subject	Advice
Search function: The desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be stored in the navigation database. **Or**: Check that you have spelt the search term correctly and that the desired country has been selected for the search function via the **Country selection** option ⇨ *page 170*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio

Calling up the radio menu

The radio supports the following wavebands: FM, AM, DAB (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver* to receive radio stations from the FM/AM wavebands digitally.*



Fig. 164 FM/DAB station list

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After you call up the radio, the station list that was last open will be displayed.

To select a station: Select a station from the station list and confirm it.

To set a waveband: Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired waveband appears.

The following information is displayed in the station lists:

① Waveband

The current waveband of the station is shown in the FM/DAB* or DAB* station list and in the favourites list.

② Radio text (short display)

Programme information for the currently selected station is displayed in all station lists when available.

③ Frozen station name (FM)[1)]

Station names with this symbol have been stored permanently. Refer to ⇨ *page 187, Station names*.

Note

– The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries.
– The DAB* waveband also supports the transmission standards DAB+* and DMB Audio*, where available.
– The DAB* waveband is not available in the Mexican market.
– **HD Radio** is only available in the Mexican market.

Radio functions

Search function

You can enter search terms in any order using the search function. You can search in all wavebands by station name or programme type (e.g. **News***).*



Fig. 165 Entry field and results list for the search function

– **To call up the search function**: While in a station list (e.g. FM station list), turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field for the **search** function is displayed.
– **To use the search function**: Refer to ⇨ *page 129, Search function*.

You can also search for frequencies[2)].

Stations from the favourites ③ are displayed in the results list ① ⇨ *Fig. 165*. The symbol ② shows which station list you will switch to by selecting a particular station.

Further options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button. ▶

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
2) This function is not available for DAB* waveband.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following options may be available to you depending on the waveband:

– **Sound settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 217*.
– **Store as favourite**: Refer to ⇨ *page 188, Favourites*.
– **Tag this song for iTunes***:[1][2] Connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface*. Select and confirm **Tag this song for iTunes**. The track that is currently playing will be copied to your Apple device. Synchronise your Apple device with iTunes. The next time you call up your iTunes library, the tagged tracks will be displayed. If no Apple device is connected, the tagged tracks will be stored temporarily on the MMI system (max. 50 tracks). As soon as you connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface, the tags will be imported to the device.
– **Programme guide**:[3] The current and next radio programmes are listed in the digital **programme guide** for all supported stations. Select and confirm a radio programme to have more details on the programme displayed.
– **Manual station search**:[4] The frequency bar is displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**:[5] The previous/next receivable frequency will be set.
– **Radio settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 188*.

Announcements

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Announcements**.

Traffic announcements:[6]

– **off**: Traffic announcements are not played.
– **FM**: Traffic announcements can be received via **FM** and played by the system irrespective of the selected waveband.
– **FM/DAB***: You receive traffic announcements from both wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

DAB announcements*:[6]

Depending on station availability, information (e.g. news, weather information) may be played when the function ☑ is switched on.

Volume of announcements:[6]

Refer to ⇨ *page 218,* **Announcements**.

Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a waveband (e.g. **FM**) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

To browse radio text entries: Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise.

Important: A radio text entry must be displayed, and the station must be transmitting a telephone number, navigation destination or a text message number as RadioText Plus information.

If a location, telephone number or text message number has been stored for a radio text entry, the entry will be displayed with a coloured frame. The following options are available:

Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message*:

– Select a radio text entry with RadioText Plus information and press the rotary pushbutton.
– Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***. **Or**: Press the BACK button to cancel the process. ▶

1) This function is only available in the Mexican market.
2) Still under development at the time of print.
3) Not in the FM, AM station lists
4) Not in the DAB* waveband or in the mixed FM/DAB* station list.
5) Not in the mixed station list FM/DAB*
6) This function is not available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

The availability of radio text and Radio Text Plus depends on the radio station.

Station names

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**. Select the desired station from the station list.

Variable station names:

Some stations use variable station names. Depending on how the station names are sorted, the position of a variable station name may change in the station list. You can lock the current name of a selected station permanently by selecting the **Lock station name**[1] option.

– **Lock station name**: Select the right control button > **Confirm**. The locked station name will be marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 185, Fig. 164*.
– **Unlock station name**: Select the right control button > **Unlock station name**. The name received for the radio station will be displayed.

Detailed station information



Fig. 166 Radio view: Detailed station information

Important: The system must be tuned to a radio station. The **detailed station information** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 189*.

Symbols in the detailed station information view ⇨ *Fig. 166*:

① Radio text availability

Radio text is available for the current station. Refer to ⇨ *page 186*.

② Slide show availability[1]

A **slide show** is available for the current station.

③ Picture view

You can choose to display a **slide show**[1], **cover art**[1] or the **station logo**[2]. Refer to ⇨ *page 189*, **Preferred image** *(DAB+*, HD Radio waveband)*.

To display the station list: Turn the rotary push-button. **Or**: Press the BACK button.

Radio menu

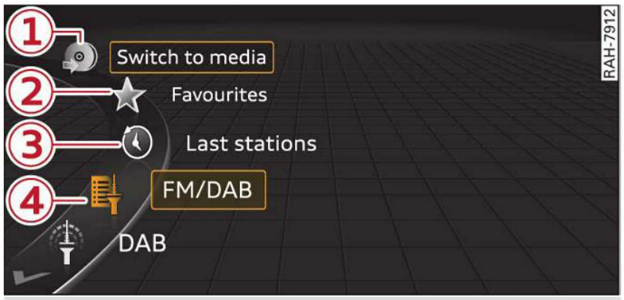


Fig. 167 Example: Radio menu

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

To set the waveband: Select and confirm the waveband you require in the radio menu ⇨ *Fig. 167*. **Or**: Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired waveband appears. The station list will be displayed.

① Switch to media

The **Media** menu will be displayed. Refer to ⇨ *page 200, Playing media*.

② Favourites

The favourites list will be displayed. The menu item **Favourites** appears if at least one radio station has been stored as a favourite. Refer to ⇨ *page 188, Favourites*. ▶

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
2) Station logos may not be available in all countries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

③ Last stations

The stations you have listened to most recently (from all wavebands) are shown in the list. Select and confirm a station to play it immediately.

④ FM/DAB*[1)]

The mixed FM/DAB station list* appears when DAB* is available. Refer to ⇨ *page 185, Calling up the radio menu*.

Other wavebands

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to select other wavebands in the selection menu ⇨ *Fig. 167*.

Favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.

▸ Press the RADIO button.

Important: You must be in a station list.

– **To store a favourite**: Select *a station from the list* > right control button > **Store as favourite**. **Or**: Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.

Important: At least one favourite must be stored in the favourites list.

– **To display the favourites list**: Select the RADIO button > **Favourites**.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

– **To listen to a favourite**: Select and confirm *a favourite from the list*.
– **To move a favourite**: Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Move favourite**. **Or**: Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds. Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.
– **To delete a favourite**: Select *a favourite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Other settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

Depending on the waveband setting, you can select the following options:

Alternative frequency* (FM, DAB*)[1)]

on: The tuner attempts to switch to an alternative frequency of the current station when the reception quality becomes weaker. When the reception is lost in the FM or DAB* waveband, the system will automatically (in the background) switch to an alternative station, if there is one available.

off: Switching to an alternative frequency is switched off. The current frequency will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received. In the FM waveband, the alternative frequency function is automatically switched on again when the station is changed.

Switch regional stations (FM, DAB*)[1)]

Important: The Alternative frequency function must be switched on.

Some stations divide up their programming by region and provide different content to different regions. When the function is on ☑, the system switches to alternative region-specific frequencies.

L band (DAB*)[1)]

There are two wavebands for the digital radio: Band III and L band. Ensembles in the band III usually have a larger range extending into several regions. They can be received at all times. In some regions DAB is broadcast in the L band. When this option is on, stations from the L band will also be received.

Station names (FM)[2)]

scrolling: Scroll texts transmitted by FM stations will appear on the infotainment display. ▶

1) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
2) This function is only available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fixed: Scroll texts transmitted by FM stations will not appear in the infotainment display. The current scroll text on the display will freeze.

FM/AM HD Radio[1)]

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

Station sorting (FM)[2)]

A-Z: The stations are displayed in the station list in alphabetical order. Radio stations with variable station names are displayed after the stations which have been sorted alphabetically. Radio stations with a frequency as their station name are displayed at the end of the list.

ID: The stations in the station list are sorted according to the station's ID (e.g. all BBC radio stations are sorted together). Radio stations with a frequency as their station name are displayed at the end of the list.

Station sorting (DAB)*[2)]

A-Z: The stations are displayed in the station list in alphabetical order.

Ensemble: Ensembles comprise various radio stations of a specific area (e.g. a town or region); they are listed together as an ensemble in the station list. To open/close the list of radio stations in an ensemble, select and confirm the ensemble. Available sub-programmes* (additional services provided by DAB* radio stations) are listed beneath the radio station (indented).

Detailed station information

When this function is switched on ☑ and the station or favourites list is open, the system switches to the **Detailed station information** view ⇨ *page 187* after approximately five seconds. Where available, information on the selected station (e.g. station name, artist, slide show[2)], station logo[3)]) may be shown.

Preferred image (DAB+*, HD Radio waveband[1)])

You can specify your preferred image for the **Detailed station information** option ⇨ *page 187*.

- **station logo**[3)]: The station logo is displayed if available.
- **cover art**: Album covers or genre artwork are displayed if available.
- **slide show**:[2)] Depending on availability, additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown (e.g. images from the studio, current photographs of artists or album covers).

Gracenote online database*

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 189,* **Preferred image** *(DAB+*, HD Radio waveband)*.

When this function is switched on ☑, album covers or genre artwork will, if available, be downloaded from the Gracenote online database for the track currently playing.

Region for station logos*[3)]

We recommend using the setting **automatic**. When driving abroad, or if the station logo is not displayed correctly, select and confirm the appropriate region.

Applies to journeys in Russia: Select and confirm the city in Russia from the list which is the nearest distance to your vehicle's current location.

Note

- If the **Traffic announcements** or **DAB announcements*** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button (1) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 124*. ▶

1) This function is only available in the Mexican market.
2) This function is not available in the Mexican market.
3) Station logos may not be available in all countries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Not all radio settings for the FM and DAB* wavebands are available in the mixed station list FM/DAB*.

Troubleshooting

Subject	Advice
A station with poor reception is no longer listed in the station list after you switch to another station.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇨ *page 188*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Media

Introduction

The MMI system includes various media drives and provides various options for connecting devices. For example, you can play audio/video* files from the jukebox or connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it via the MMI.

Notes

General

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the SD card reader and the connection for the USB mass storage device*) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and audio/video* files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

Digital rights management: Please note that copyright law applies to audio/video files.

The MMI media drives do not support DRM-protected files; these files are marked with the symbol .

Data storage: Never store important data on SD cards, the jukebox*, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. AUDI AG shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading times: The more files, folders or playlists are stored on a storage device, the longer it will take to load the audio files/video* files. We recommend using a storage device which contains only audio/video* files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the audio/video* files, you can create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album). The loading time will be extended additionally if you are importing data.

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote. Nevertheless, metadata may not be displayed in some cases.

Restricted performance: If you experience restricted performance, reset the **Media settings** to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 213*.

If you experience restricted performance from the Jukebox*, reset it to the factory settings ⇨ *page 213*.

For information on the characteristics of the supported media and file formats, please refer to ⇨ *page 206* onwards.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

CD/DVD mode

CD/DVD and format limitations: In view of the variety of CDs/DVDs and the difference in memory capacities, the functionality may be restricted in the case of some storage devices. Under certain circumstances, audio CDs/video DVDs that are copy-protected or CDs/DVDs that do not comply with the standard audio format, and multisession CDs cannot be played at all, or the functionality may be limited. We recommend always finalising the burning process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

Handling CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: To ensure perfect, high-quality playback and avoid scanning errors or damage to the media drive, always store CDs/DVDs in a suitable case and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs (diameter 8 cm)
– Non-circular CDs/DVDs (shape CDs)
– CDs/DVDs with stickers
– Protective rings
– Cleaning discs

Thermal cut-out: In the case of unusually hot or cold outside temperatures, it is possible that CD/DVD playback will temporarily not be possible. A ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

thermal cut-out is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the reading laser.

Laser devices: Laser devices are divided into the safety classes 1 to 4, as specified by DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers installed in your vehicle are classified as safety class 1. Lasers used in devices that fall into this category are very weak and well screened, so there is no danger if used correctly.

Media drives

SD card readers

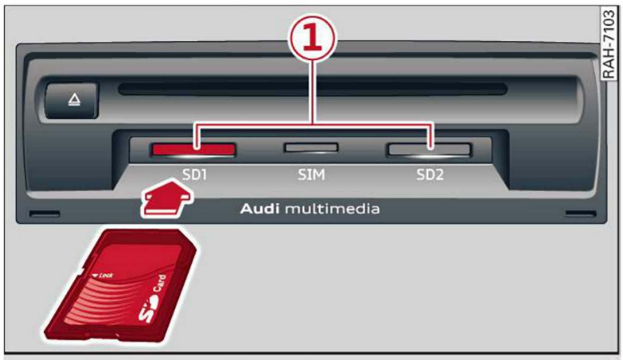


Fig. 168 Inserting an SD card

The SD card readers are located in the glove box (20) ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 2*.

– **To insert an SD card**: The missing corner of the SD card should be at the front right. Slide the SD card into the slot in the card reader (1) until you feel it engage ⇨ *Fig. 168*.
– **Automatic playback**: When an SD card with supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 206* is inserted, playback will start automatically.
– **To remove an SD card**: Briefly press the SD card.

The SD card readers are called up and operated via the MMI (3) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 174*.

CAUTION

Only use one-piece SD cards. If you use adapter cards (more than one piece), the SD card can become detached from the adapter (e.g. caused by jolting, etc). Parts could then get stuck in the drive, impairing the functionality of the system.

Note

Store the SD cards in a suitable case to protect them from dirt and dust and to avoid damage.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with DVD drive

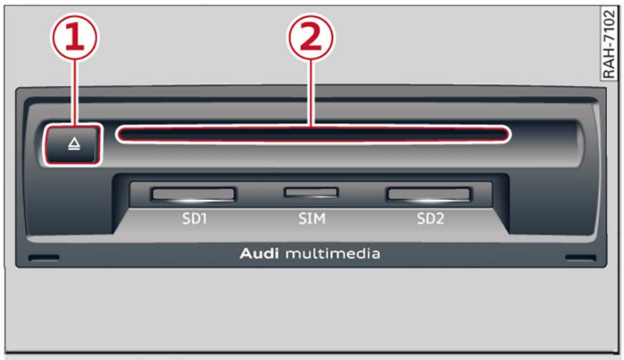


Fig. 169 DVD drive

The DVD drive is located in the glove box (20) ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 2*.

– **To load a CD/DVD**: The CD/DVD will be drawn in automatically. Insert the CD/DVD (text facing upwards) into the DVD slot (2) ⇨ *Fig. 169*, holding it straight.
– **Automatic playback**: Playback starts automatically when a CD/DVD with supported audio/video* files ⇨ *page 206* is inserted.
– **To eject a CD/DVD**: Press button (1) ⇨ *Fig. 169*.

After it has been ejected, the CD/DVD will be pulled back into the DVD drive automatically after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the DVD slot.

The DVD drive is called up and operated via the MMI (2) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 174*.

CAUTION

– Never use any force to push a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD will be drawn into the slot automatically.
– Do not insert any CDs/DVDs with stickers into the media drive. The stickers could become detached from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Playback cannot be guaranteed if the CD/DVD contains audio/video files with a high data rate.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with CD drive

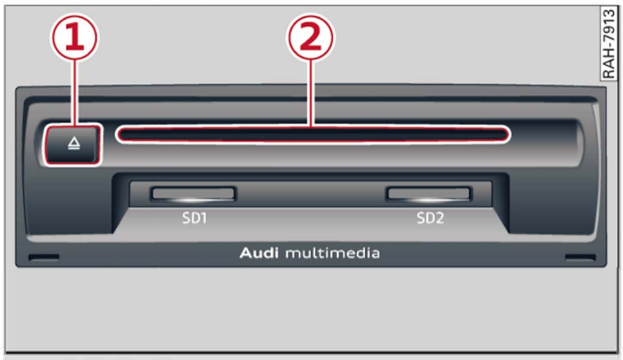


Fig. 170 CD drive

The CD drive is located in the glove box (20) ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 2*.

– **To load a CD**: The CD will be drawn in automatically. Insert the CD (text facing upwards) into the CD slot (2) ⇨ *Fig. 170*, holding it straight.
– **Automatic playback**: Playback starts automatically when a CD with supported audio files ⇨ *page 207, CD drive* is inserted.
– **To eject a CD**: Press button (1) ⇨ *Fig. 170*.

After it has been ejected, the CD will automatically be pulled back into the CD player after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the CD slot.

The CD drive is started and operated via the MMI ⇨ *page 200, Playing media*.

CAUTION

– Never use any force to push a CD into the drive. The CD will be drawn into the slot automatically.
– Do not insert any CDs with stickers into the media drive. The stickers could become detached from the CD and damage the drive.

Note

Playback cannot be guaranteed if the CD contains audio files with a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with jukebox

After you have filled the jukebox with music or videos, for example from your SD card, you can play them directly from the jukebox. The jukebox has approximately 10 GB of storage.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

Filling the jukebox

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200* is displayed. Select one of the following sources to copy to the jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM, DVD-ROM*, USB mass storage device*.

Important: The media centre (e.g. tracks, albums) must be open.

– **To select an entry**: Select an entry from the media centre. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Important: The playlist must be open. Refer to ⇨ *page 203*.

– **To choose a track**: Select the track currently being played. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track/Entire album** or **This artist**.

Important: A video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox**.

The copying procedure will start and its status will be shown on the MMI.

– **To hide the copying procedure**: Select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The copying procedure will be hidden.
– **To cancel the copying procedure**: Select and confirm **Cancel copying procedure**. **Or**: Remove the source from which you are currently importing files. Files that have already been copied will remain stored. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Important: Copying must be in progress in the background.

– **To display the copy procedure**: Select: right control button > **Active copy procedure**.

During the copying procedure, the audio files are automatically sorted according to the categories in the media centre based on the metadata stored for the files ⇨ *page 201*. The video files copied can be found in the **Videos** category of the media centre.

Playing from the jukebox

Important: The jukebox must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 193, Filling the jukebox*.

The jukebox is called up and operated via the MMI (1) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 174*.

Displaying the jukebox memory capacity

Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information on the jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks will be displayed.

Deleting tracks from the jukebox[1)]

Important: The jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Delete entry**: Select an entry from the jukebox's media centre. Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.
– The status of the deletion process will be shown on the MMI. During the deletion process the playback of the jukebox is interrupted; it is started again automatically once the deletion process has been completed.

CAUTION

Only copy audio/video files while the engine is running; otherwise the vehicle battery will be discharged.

Note

– For legal reasons it is not possible to copy tracks from audio CDs onto the jukebox.
– Files that have already been copied are detected automatically and cannot be copied to the jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video files* in the CD/DVD* drive while they are being copied.
– For legal reasons there is no export function for the jukebox.
– Files or tracks that do not include stored metadata are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends that you mark the audio files with the corresponding metadata (e.g. ID3 tags).
– When handing over your vehicle e.g. to a new buyer, reset the jukebox to the factory settings ⇨ *page 213*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: To connect a Bluetooth device, the vehicle must be stationary and the Bluetooth function of your Bluetooth device and the **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 215* function of the MMI system must be switched on.

– **To connect a Bluetooth device**: Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** (6) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 175*.
– You may need to select and confirm **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The system will start searching for Bluetooth devices. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.
– Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI will generate a PIN to establish the connection.
– Select and confirm **Yes**.
– Enter the PIN on your Bluetooth device to establish a connection. **Or**: If the PIN is already being displayed on your Bluetooth device, please confirm it on the device. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN. ▶

[1)] Not in the **Playback** view.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Depending on the device you are using, the media are started and operated using the mobile device or the MMI.

Note

– Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
– You can bond several Bluetooth audio players to the MMI system; however only one connection can be active at a time.
– The system supports the Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP.
– Please consider the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
– Which media functions (e.g. random playback) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.
– For more information on which devices are supported, please go online (e.g. **www.audi.com/bluetooth**) or contact an Audi dealer.

Wi-Fi audio players

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

The MMI's Wi-Fi audio player media source allows you to connect and operate your Wi-Fi media player (e.g. smartphone) to play music wirelessly from your player's media centre. The media player is connected via the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on the media player is required to access the media centre of your media player.

Important: The Wi-Fi function of the media player must be switched on. The **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app must be installed on your media player. **Or:** You must be using a UPnP/DLNA server integrated in the media player.

– **To connect a media player**: Select the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** (7) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 175*.
– You may need to select and confirm **Wi-Fi off** > **Activate Wi-Fi** to switch Wi-Fi on in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings** if necessary. Use the settings of the Wi-Fi hotspot for the media player you are using.
– **To start the Wi-Fi audio player**: Start the **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app, **or** enable media sharing on your media player.

To use the media player: The media player is operated using the MMI.

– Press the left control button repeatedly until the menu item **Folders** appears. Select and confirm **Folders**.
– **To play music from a media player**: Select and confirm **Media centre**.

Internet radio: See ⇨ *page 196*.

WARNING

– Do not allow the features of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from watching the traffic – taking your eyes off the road can cause an accident.
– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
– No Wi-Fi devices may be used in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 235*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ (!) *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Note

– Inserting or removing the mini SIM card from the SIM card reader* causes the Wi-Fi connection to be reconfigured. This may cause a short interruption in the audio playback of some media players.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.
– Please note that the Wi-Fi connection does not automatically enable you to use the Internet. Further information can be found from ⇨ *page 159* onwards.
– To avoid interruptions in audio playback, deactivate the energy saving function on your media player, or connect the player to a charger.
– The time it takes to load audio files depends on the media player in use and on the number of files stored.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are shown on the MMI.
– Tracks downloaded from music streaming services for use offline may be stored on your mobile device (e.g. smartphone) with DRM protection. Please note that files with DRM protection cannot be played by the Wi-Fi audio player.
– Audi dealerships will be able to provide you with further information on Wi-Fi audio players.

Online media and Internet radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can start and operate Internet radio and various online media services via the MMI.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 175* is displayed.

Applies to: using online media and Internet radio

Important:
– The **Audi MMI connect** app must have been installed and started on your mobile device.
– You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the **Audi MMI connect** app and must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function must be activated on the mobile device and on the MMI.
– If necessary, open the connection manager ⇨ *page 213* and check that the mobile device you have connected is selected under **MMI connect App** (☑).
– A network connection must be set up on the MMI ⇨ *page 166*.
– The symbol for the media source **Online media*** (10) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 175* must be shown on the MMI.

Applies to: using online media

Additional requirements:
– One of the supported online media services must be available in your country.
– You must have an account with one of the supported online media services.
– Depending on the online media service, an app may need to be installed and set up on your mobile device.

Starting online media

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200* is displayed.
– Select and confirm an online media service.

Starting Internet radio

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200* is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the most recently played station will be shown.
– **To select a station**: Select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** (if desired) > *a station*.

Online media and Internet radio: Further options

– Press the right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the information displayed (e.g. the station/track currently playing):
– **Sound settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 217*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Wi-Fi hotspot*.
– **Connection manager**: Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.
– Additional options may be available depending on the active online media service or Internet radio function. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
– No Wi-Fi devices may be used in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 235*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Note

– Depending on the Internet connection and network load, playback of the online media services may be interrupted.
– Whether **online media** and **Internet radio** can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– AUDI AG only enables you to access online media services via the MMI system and accepts no responsibility for the content of online media services.
– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 167, Notes on Audi connect*.
– Depending on the mobile device you are using, you may experience interruptions in media playback when using the **Audi MMI connect** app. To avoid interruptions, keep the **Audi MMI connect** app running in the foreground and do not lock the screen on your mobile device.
– Audi dealerships will be able to provide you with further information on online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapters for Audi music interface or USB charging socket

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to connect your mobile devices (e.g. smartphones, MP3 players) to the Audi music interface or the USB charging socket using the special USB adapters.

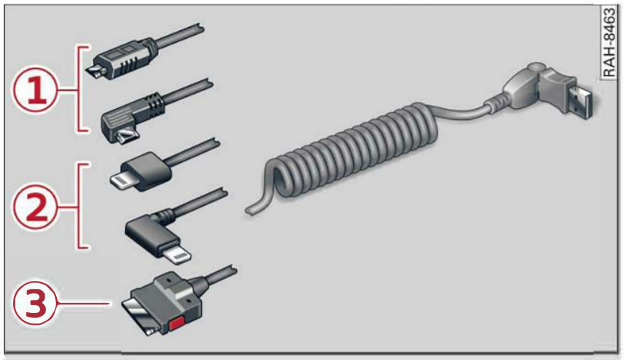


Fig. 171 Audi USB adapters

① USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector

② USB adapter for devices with Apple Lightning connector

③ USB adapter for devices with Apple dock connector

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to connect your mobile devices to the MMI using the USB adapters.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface
– **Audi music interface**: See ⇨ *page 198*.

Applies to: vehicles with AUX input/USB charging socket
– **AUX input/USB charging socket**: See ⇨ *page 199*.

CAUTION

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi music interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

You can connect your mobile devices via the Audi music interface in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

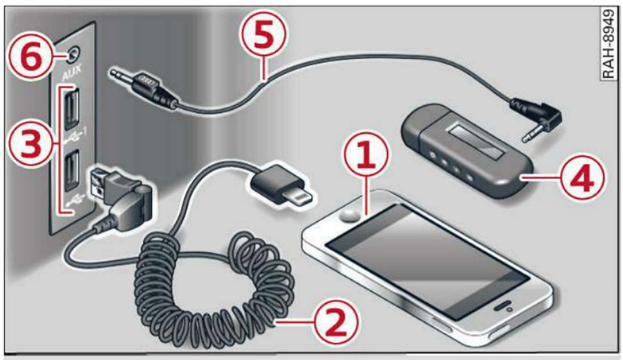


Fig. 172 Connecting mobile devices

The Audi music interface is located in the storage compartment in the centre console (24) ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 2*.

– **To connect a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect the corresponding USB adapter (2) ⇨ *Fig. 172* to the Audi music interface connection (3) and then connect it to the mobile device (1) (e.g. iPod).
– **To charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: When you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface (3) using an appropriate USB adapter (2) ⇨ *Fig. 172* the device's battery is charged automatically.
– **To disconnect a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: Detach the USB adapter (2) ⇨ *Fig. 172* from the Audi music interface (3) ⇨ *Fig. 172*.
– **To disconnect mobile devices with Apple dock connector**: With the release tabs (3) ⇨ *page 197, Fig. 171* pressed, detach the Apple dock connector from the Apple device.

Depending on the device you are using, the media are started and operated using the mobile device or the MMI ⇨ *page 200*.

To connect two mobile devices: If two mobile devices (e.g. an iPod and a smartphone) are connected at the same time, both devices can be used as a playback source.

You can connect mobile devices via the analogue **AUX** interface:

– **To connect a mobile device to the AUX input**: Connect the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 172* to the AUX input (6) on the Audi music interface before connecting the mobile device (4) (e.g. MP3 player, smartphone).
– **To disconnect the mobile device from the AUX input**: Detach the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 172* from the Audi music interface.
– **Operation**: Select and confirm the source **External audio player** (5) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 174*. Media are started and operated using the mobile device (4) ⇨ *Fig. 172*.

WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

– To avoid damaging the connection, please take care when detaching the connector from the Audi music interface.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

– When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

which must be connected via a USB adapter (⇨ *page 197*) to the Audi music interface; this could cause performance issues.
– The AUX adapter cable is available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not meet the specification USB 2.0 will function properly.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Some iPod versions (e.g. iPod shuffle) cannot be connected with the USB adapter for devices with Apple dock connector. You can connect these devices using the AUX adapter cable.
– Video playback via the Audi music interface is only supported if the system detects that the device connected is a USB storage device (e.g. a USB stick). Apple or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.
– iPod/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your iPod/iPhone.
– Please refer to the iPod/iPhone operating instructions for important information on how to use your iPod/iPhone. We recommend that you use the most up-to-date iPod/iPhone software possible.
– For more information on the Audi music interface and on which devices are supported, please see the Audi mobile device database at **www.audi.com/mp3** or contact an Audi dealer.

AUX input/USB charging socket

Applies to: vehicles with AUX input/USB charging socket

You can charge the batteries of your mobile devices using the USB charging socket. You can connect mobile devices using the analogue AUX interface.



Fig. 173 USB charging socket and AUX input

The AUX input and the USB charging socket are located in the storage compartment in the centre console (24) ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 2*.

AUX input

– **To connect a mobile device to the AUX input**: Connect the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 173* to the AUX input (6) before connecting the mobile device (4) (e.g. MP3 player, smartphone).
– **To disconnect the mobile device from the AUX input**: Detach the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 173* from the AUX input.
– **Operation**: Select and confirm the source **External audio player** (5) ⇨ *page 200, Fig. 174*. Media are started and operated using the mobile device (4) ⇨ *Fig. 173*.

USB charging socket

– **USB adapters**: You can charge your mobile device's battery using special USB adapters. The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Refer to ⇨ *page 197, USB adapters for Audi music interface or USB charging socket*.
– **To charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile device (1) ⇨ *Fig. 173* to the charging socket (3) using the appropriate USB adapter (2).
– **To disconnect the USB adapter from the charging socket**: Detach the USB adapter (3) ⇨ *Fig. 173* from the USB charging socket. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **To disconnect mobile devices with Apple dock connector**: With the release tabs ③ ⇨*page 197, Fig. 171* pressed, detach the Apple dock connector from the Apple device.

WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never use mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

– To avoid damaging the connection on the Audi music interface, please take care when unplugging the connector from the AUX input or the USB charging socket.
– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

– When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
– USB charging sockets marked CHARGE ONLY cannot transfer data and are intended for charging only.
– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which must be connected to the USB charging socket ③ ⇨*Fig. 173* via a USB adapter (⇨*page 197*); this could cause performance issues.
– The AUX adapter cable is available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information on its operation.
– It cannot be guaranteed that all mobile devices will function without any problems.
– Using a mobile device with the engine switched off will drain the vehicle's battery.
– Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to about 70 % of maximum.

Playing media

Calling up media

You can start and operate various types of media via the MMI control console.



Fig. 174 Illustration: Possible sources in the media menu



Fig. 175 Illustration: Possible sources in the media menu

Important: A media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨*page 192*.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed.
▸ Select and confirm the desired source. **Or**: Press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

You can select the following sources in the **Media** menu, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Switch to radio: The radio menu will be opened ⇨*page 185*.

① **Jukebox*** 193
② **DVD/CD drive*** 192, 193
③ **SD card reader** 192
④ **Audi music interface*** . . . . . 198 ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e.g. iPod, USB stick

⑤ **External audio player** 199
e.g. an MP3 player connected to the AUX input

⑥ **Bluetooth audio player*** 194

⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player*** 195

⑧ **Online media*** and **Internet radio*** . . 196

– **To play audio/video files**: Select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (e.g. artist > *album* > *track/title*).
– **To access the next level up in the structure of folders**: Press the BACK button. **Or**: Select and confirm **Go up**.
– **To select the previous/next track/title/chapter**[1]: Briefly press the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console to the left/right (⏮/⏭).
– **To rewind/fast forward audio/video files**: Move and hold the ON/OFF button to the left/right (⏮/⏭).
– **To pause/resume playback**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console.

Note

– You can scroll rapidly through long lists by turning the rotary pushbutton quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of entries in the list.
– If the **Traffic announcements** ⇨ *page 186* or **DAB announcements*** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console.
– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

[1] May not be possible during playback (depends on the DVD).

Media centre

Several categories for selecting audio/video files are available in the media centre.*

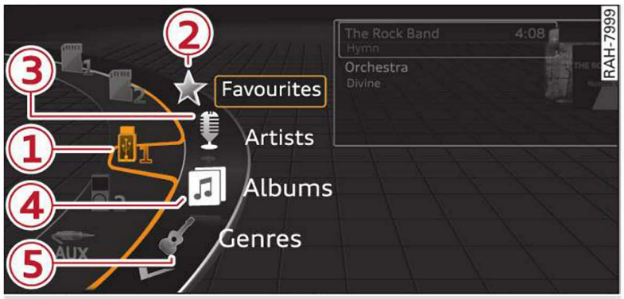


Fig. 176 Example: Categories for a USB stick

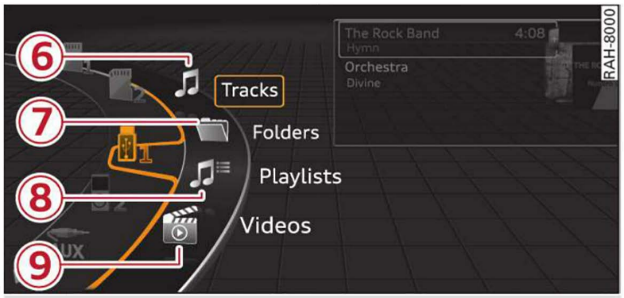


Fig. 177 Example: Categories for a USB stick

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed. Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The symbol for the active source ① may change depending on the device connected or the online media* or Internet radio* service in use. The device name may be displayed (e.g. MyPhone). A USB stick connected via the Audi music interface* is shown as an example ⇨ *Fig. 176*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video* files from the following categories and copy them into the playlist:

② Favourites

The category **Favourites** appears if at least one item has been stored as a favourite. Refer to ⇨ *page 203, Favourites*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (e.g. **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a track.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder (if applicable) and select and confirm an item in it.

⑧ Playlists

All playlists on the source along with the intelligent playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Intelligent playlists:

– **Last tracks played**: The most recently played tracks from the selected source are displayed.
– **Most played**: The tracks you have played most often from the selected source are displayed.
– **5 stars** to **1 star**: Tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
– **Unrated**: All files without rating information (e.g. ID3 tag) in the selected source are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Note

– Only the categories supported by the medium used are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected via categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. The categories **Podcasts**, **Audiobooks** and **Composers** are available when you are using an iPod (source: Audi music interface ⇨ *page 197*).
– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
– If you synchronise a portable player with "cloud" services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.

Search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and video files in the active source.*



Fig. 178 Entry field and results list for the search function

Depending on the selected source, you may be able to call up the **search function** ⇨ *Fig. 178*.

Important: The playlist ⇨ *page 203* or the media centre ⇨ *page 201* must be displayed.

Calling up the search function

▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field ① ⇨ *Fig. 178* for the **search function** is displayed. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.

To use the search function: Refer to ⇨ *page 129, Search function*.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results ⑤ ⇨ *Fig. 178*. You can search by artist ② ⇨ *Fig. 178*, album ③ or track ④. You can also search for genres and videos.

Note

– The system will only search for files on the active source. ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If the search function is called up in the **Folders** category (7) ⇨ *page 201, Fig. 177*, the system will only search for files in the current folder. This is also the case in the **Composers**, **Podcasts** und **Audiobooks** categories.

Playlist



Fig. 179 Example: Playlist

The track, artist, album and, if available, the album cover are displayed in the playlist.

Options

Refer to ⇨ *page 203, Other settings*.

Favourites

You can store up to 50 items per source in the favourites list.

Important: The playlist or the media centre must be open.

– Select the desired item from the playlist or the media centre.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**. **Or**: Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.

When a track is stored as a favourite, the corresponding album is shown as a favourite in the favourites list.

Important: At least one item must be stored in the favourites list.

To display the favourites list: Select the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 200* is displayed. Select a source which supports *Categories* ⇨ *page 201* (e.g. an SD card). Select the **Favourites** *category*.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

– **To listen to a favourite**: Select and confirm an item in the favourites list.
– **To move a favourite**: Select the desired item from the favourites list. Select: right control button > **Move favourite**. Select and confirm the desired memory position.
– **To delete a favourite**: Select the desired item from the favourites list. Select: right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Other settings

Options menu

Different context-specific functions and settings are available depending on which source is selected.

▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 217*.

Input level

Important: A mobile device must be connected via an AUX adapter cable or a USB adapter ⇨ *page 197, Multimedia connections*.

The volume of the mobile device will be adapted to the MMI system. We recommend setting the volume of the mobile device to about 70 percent of the maximum volume.

Bluetooth settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 215*.

Wi-Fi settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 213*.

Detailed track info

When this function is switched on ☑ and the playlist is open, information on the selected track (e.g. the artist, album, album cover*) as well as the total and remaining playing time will be displayed. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jukebox memory capacity*

Information on the jukebox memory capacity and the number tracks stored on the jukebox will be displayed.

Change play position

Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left or right. **Or**: Move your finger from left to right across the MMI touch pad.

Random playback[1)]

When this function is switched on ☑, all the files in the playlist will be played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track will be repeated.

Back to 'Playback'

The options menu will be closed. The track currently playing will be shown in the playlist ⇨ *page 203, Fig. 179*.

Play similar music*

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display an intelligent playlist with similar tracks.

Play more...

An intelligent playlist is displayed based on the track currently playing. You can choose between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **of this album** or **of this genre**.

Set as ring tone*[2)]

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI and the track currently playing must be on the **jukebox*** ⇨ *page 193*.

The selected track will be used as the ring tone for incoming calls.

Gracenote online database*

Important: The MMI must be connected to the Internet.

When this function is switched on ☑, various information will be downloaded for the track currently playing, if any is available.

Copy to jukebox

Refer to ⇨ *page 193, Filling the jukebox*.

Favourites

Refer to ⇨ *page 203*.

Further options

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and a video file* or a DVD* must be playing.

Child lock*

You can use the child lock to restrict video DVD playback.

Enter the child lock password. The password set at the factory is **1234**. The following options are available:

– **Safety level**: Select and confirm a safety level (e.g. level 5). Eight safety levels are available for the child lock function. If you select child lock level 5, all DVDs with safety levels 1-5 can be played. Playback of DVDs with a higher safety level will be blocked. Select **No restriction** to remove all restrictions.
– **Change password**: You can change the current password.

Switch to full screen

The video picture is displayed. Press the rotary pushbutton to show the playlist. **Or**: Press the BACK button.

Replay video

When the function is switched on ☑, the current video will be replayed. ▶

1) This function is automatically deactivated if you change the source.

2) This function is not available for all mobile phones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Display DVD menu

To select a menu option: Select and confirm a menu option. **Or**: Move your finger on the MMI touch pad* and press the rotary pushbutton.

Audio track[1)]

You can adjust the audio track (language and audio format) manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages and audio formats are available.

Subtitles[1)]

You can select subtitles manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages are available.

Picture format

We recommend using the **automatic** setting for the picture format. Depending on the active file or source (e.g. video file*, DVD*), you may be able to adjust the picture format.

Picture format	Information
automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio. Depending on the source format and the infotainment display installed, black bars may be displayed on the edges of the picture.
zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the infotainment display. Switch this function off if the picture is distorted.
cinema-scope	Use this setting for films in the cinema format 21:9. Black bars will be shown on the upper and lower edges of the infotainment display.
original	The picture will be displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with **auto** selected is distorted or partially cut off.
4:3	The picture is set to a width-to-height ratio of 4:3. Black bars will be shown on the edges of the infotainment display.
16:9	The picture is set to a width-to-height ratio of 16:9. Black bars will be shown on the upper and lower edges of the infotainment display.

Note

– Not all video DVDs have a child lock feature.
– The **child lock** safety levels comply with the US standards of the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Please note that age ratings for DVDs may vary between different European countries.
– If you enter the wrong **child lock** password three times in a row, you will not be able to enter a password for approximately one minute. The password can only be reset by an Audi workshop.

1) May not be possible during playback (depends on the DVD).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The following audio/video file specifications are supported by the DVD drive, the **jukebox***, the SD card readers and the connection for the USB mass storage device:*

	Audio files				Video files*		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 minutes) with CD text (artist, album, tracks)*; CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; video DVDs; audio DVDs compatible with video DVD; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 197* (e.g. iPod, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0, USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives)						
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage devices**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage partitions**: max. 2 partitions per USB connection **CD/DVD file systems**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF						
Metadata	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px.; depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote.						
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC	MPEG-1/-2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX						
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency			48 kHz sampling frequency	Up to max. 2000 kbit/sec, 720x576 px and 25 fps		
Number of files	**DVD drive***: max. 1000 files per medium **Jukebox***: memory approx. 10 GB; max. 3000 files can be copied **USB mass storage devices and memory cards**: max. 10000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory						

Note

– The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media drives.
– We recommend a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
– The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.
– The manufacturer will provide you with information on the “USB Device Subclass” of a USB memory device.

– Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with CD drive

The CD drive supports the following audio file specifications:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 minutes) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file systems**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Metadata	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px.; depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium.			
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	max. 1000 files per medium			

Note

– We recommend a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.

– The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

Troubleshooting

Subject	Advice
Audi music interface*/Bluetooth audio player*: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 197, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 194, Bluetooth audio player*. For information on which mobile devices are supported, please see the Audi mobile device database at **www.audi.com/bluetooth**.
Audi music interface*/AUX input: When playback is started via the AUX input, the volume is too high/low.	Set the volume of the mobile device to about 70% of maximum ⇨ *page 203,* **Input level**.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Subject	Advice
Audi music interface*: The portable player is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5% of its capacity). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.
Audi music interface*: Problems during audio playback via an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇨ *page 215* when you are not using a **Bluetooth audio player**.
AUX input: Interference audible when plugging in or unplugging the AUX adapter cable.	**External audio player** is selected as the source when the adapter cable is being connected. Activate the mute function (see ⇨ *page 217*) or another audio source (e.g. ⇨ *page 185, Calling up the radio menu*) before connecting/disconnecting your mobile device.
Bluetooth audio player*/Wi-Fi audio player*: Playback problems.	To ensure problem-free playback, only *one* interface should be in use at any one time.
Wi-Fi audio player*: Playback problems.	Some mobile phones may experience audio playback problems if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established via the SIM card reader* of the MMI control console and the **mobile data** option is activated on the mobile phone. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your mobile phone.
Jukebox*: The tracks in the imported playlists are greyed out.	When importing playlists, you must copy all files yourself.
Jukebox*: Imported tracks cannot be played or cannot be found.	If you cannot find imported tracks via the media centre, this could mean that they are not supported. Please only copy supported files ⇨ *page 206* to the jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player*: More than one device is connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (e.g. a smartphone) is shown as the media source and cannot be changed.	Close the **Audi MMI connect** app on the connected devices (e.g. smartphones) that you do not want to use as the Wi-Fi audio player*. Also close any UPnP server apps on the devices, or disable media sharing on any integrated UPnP/DLNA servers. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player* ⇨ *page 195*.
Online media*: Failure of connection between the MMI and the **Audi MMI connect** app.	The MMI connection switch on the status screen of the **Audi MMI connect** app must be switched on to establish a connection with the MMI.
Wi-Fi audio player*/Online media*: Playback problems.	Audio playback problems can occur if the **Connection to personal hotspot** function ⇨ *page 166* is activated and your personal hotspot ⇨ *page 161* is not in range. To avoid playback problems, switch the function off when you are not using a personal hotspot.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Subject	Advice
Bluetooth audio player*: Problems with track display and playback.	Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the **Bluetooth audio player**. Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone).
Wi-Fi hotspot*: Wi-Fi hotspot connection to your Wi-Fi device interrupted.	Make sure that the network optimisation function is switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or network settings of your Wi-Fi device. Please refer to the operating manual of your Wi-Fi device for further details.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi smartphone interface

Setting up[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI system via the Audi smartphone interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format on the infotainment display and can be operated via the MMI control console.

Requirements:

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

iPhone 5 or later with Lightning connector and operating system iOS 7.1.2 or higher **or**:

Smartphone with Android Auto app and operating system Android 5.0 Lollipop or later.

- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 198* via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 197, Fig. 171*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
- ▸ Please note any system queries on your smartphone.

If you decline the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connect your smartphone, you can start the Audi smartphone interface at a later time via the **connection manager**.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Switch to connection manager**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 198* via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 197, Fig. 171*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Audi smartphone** in **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 213*. You can select your smartphone from the list of devices already connected ⇨ *page 215*.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Note

- – The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
  - – The brand of your smartphone
  - – The operating system version of your smartphone
  - – The software version of the app in use
  - – The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
  - – Your mobile network/service provider
  - – The individual settings on your smartphone
- – One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.
- – If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external speech dialogue system* ⇨ *page 139*.
- – The menu language displayed on the MMI is based on the setting on your smartphone.
- – The time displayed on the MMI is based on the setting on your smartphone.
- – Some of the MMI functions are not available while an Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection is active.
- – You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active.
- – If you have inserted your own mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* for making phone calls, the SIM card will be used exclusively for a data connection when the Audi smartphone interface and the car phone function* are active.

▶

[1)] Not available in all markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Tag this song for iTunes*** [1][2] is not available while an Apple CarPlay connection is active ⇨ *page 185*.

How to use

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Calling up the menu

Apple CarPlay: To return to the main menu of Apple CarPlay from any other menu, press and hold the BACK button.

Android Auto: To open the menu bar of Android Auto, push the rotary pushbutton downwards.

Calling up a menu item

Use the MMI control console to select an item from the menu and confirm it.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Subject	Advice
Audi smartphone interface cannot be called up.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and try using another one. Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country. Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is correctly connected to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 197*. Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone. Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.
Smartphone is not detected automatically.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is correctly connected to your smartphone and to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 197*. Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met.

1) Still under development at the time of print.

2) This function is only available in the Mexican market.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System settings

Setting the time and date

The time can be set manually or via GPS.

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**.
- **Or**: Select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

Set automatically

The time and date are automatically updated when this function is switched on ☑.

Time

Important: The **Set automatically** function must be deactivated.

Press the rotary pushbutton. You can adjust the **time** manually by turning and pressing the rotary pushbutton.

Date

Important: The **Set automatically** function must be deactivated.

Press the rotary pushbutton. You can adjust the **date** manually by turning and pressing the rotary pushbutton.

Time zone

When selecting the correct time zone, a list of corresponding countries is displayed as an example.

Automatic time zone*

When this function is activated ☑, the time is automatically adjusted to the relevant time zone.

Time format

When this option is set to **24h**, for example **13:00** will be displayed as the time. When it is set to **AM/PM**, for example **1:00 PM** will be displayed.

Date format

When this option is set to **DD.MM.YYYY**, for example **31.08.2017** will be displayed as the date. When it is set to **MM/DD/YYYY**, for example **08/31/2017** will be displayed. When it is set to **YYYY-MM-DD**, for example **2017-08-31** will be displayed.

MMI settings

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the language of the display along with the language of the navigation cues* and the speech dialogue system*.

The number of languages available depends on the market.

Measurement units

The following measurement units are available:

– **Speed** (km/h or mph)
– **Distance** (km or miles)
– **Temperature** (°C or °F)
– **Consumption** (ltr/100 km, mpg (US), mpg (UK) or km/ltr)
– **Capacity** (litres, gallons)

Reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

Important: Your mobile phone must be Qi compatible[1)], or it must be connected to the Audi music interface (1) ⇨ *page 146, Fig. 142* using a USB adapter cable.

You can use the reminder signal to keep yourself informed of the charging status of the mobile phone in the Audi phone box*. The following settings are available:

– **off**: Switches the reminder signal off.
– **sound**: A sound is played as the reminder signal. ▶

1) The Qi standard enables you to charge your mobile phone wirelessly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **spoken**: The reminder signal is spoken by the system.

Reminder signal volume: You can adjust the volume of the reminder signal by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Switch off pop-up: This function is switched off at the factory. When this function is switched on ☑, the messages about the charging status of the mobile phone in the Audi phone box* on the infotainment display will not appear. The reminder not to forget the mobile phone when leaving the vehicle will also be switched off.

Usage tips

Your MMI displays usage tips when this function is switched on ☑. They will appear less often as time goes by. You can switch the usage tips off at any time.

Speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Command display: The MMI displays possible voice commands in the corresponding menu when this function is switched on ☑. You can switch this function off at any time.

Short dialogue: When this function is switched on ☑, the spoken cues are shortened. You can switch this function off at any time.

Speech dialogue system volume: You can adjust the volume of the spoken cues by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Individual speech training (only possible when the vehicle is stationary): You can use the individual speech training to adapt the speech dialogue system to your voice or pronunciation so that the speech dialogue system can then better recognise what you are saying. The individual speech training prompts you to repeat 20 spoken phrases that consist of certain commands and blocks of digits. If you would like to delete the stored speech training setup, you can use the function **Reset individual speech training**.

Factory settings

You can reset the following functions to the factory settings:

– **Sound settings**
– **Radio**
– **Media settings**
– **Jukebox***
– **Directory***
– **Telephone***
– **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi***
– **Navigation settings***
– **Navigation and online memory***
– **Speech dialogue system***
– **Message settings***
– **Apps***
– **Usage tips**
– **Audi connect***

You can select the desired options individually or mark **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Note

– Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.
– If you set **Navigation and online memory*** or **Audi connect*** to the factory settings, the system will restart after approx. 20 seconds. During the restart, the infotainment display will be black for a few minutes.
– Please note that the speech dialogue system* is not available as a factory option for Cabriolet models without a seat belt microphone.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager gives you an overview of your connected devices and their connection status.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
▸ Select and confirm a menu option.

If a mobile device has already been connected and you then select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device's name and connection mode is displayed under this menu item. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can **connect** (☑) or **disconnect** (☐) a connected device individually.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile phone.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded. **Or**: Insert a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 144*.

Second phone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile phone.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone).
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded. **Or**: Insert a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 159*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

MMI connect app

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Important: The **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed on your mobile device and have been started.

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone).
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile device from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Music

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player or Wi-Fi audio player

Audio players

Important: The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of both the MMI system ⇨ *page 215* and the mobile phone must be activated.

– **To connect a new device**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Select **Bluetooth audio player**. Search for and connect a mobile device.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select a Bluetooth device from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Wi-Fi audio players

Important: The Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI system ⇨ *page 165* and your mobile phone's Wi-Fi function must be activated.

– **To connect a new device**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi enabled device.
– **To disconnect a Wi-Fi audio player**: Deactivate Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi enabled device. The device will be removed from the list automatically.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 166*.

Directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can display the contacts from (other) mobile phones.

Important: No mobile phones are connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile or the **Handsfree** profile.

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a new mobile phone. **Or**: Insert a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 159*.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all mobile phones which have already been bonded.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi smartphone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

– Connect your mobile phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 198* via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 197, Fig. 171*.
– Select your mobile phone from the list of mobile phones already connected.

Further options

Further options may be available in the connection manager via the right control button depending on the function selected.

Bluetooth settings

– **Bluetooth**: Select and confirm a discoverability setting for the Bluetooth connection. Select **visible** to make the MMI visible to other devices. Select **invisible** to make the MMI invisible to other devices. Devices which have already been bonded can connect via Bluetooth even when discoverability is deactivated. Select **off** to switch discoverability off. It is then not possible to establish a Bluetooth connection.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: When this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
– **Delete Bluetooth device**: The selected mobile phone/device is disconnected from the MMI.
– **Display Bluetooth profiles**: You can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Car phone** and **Directory/contacts** profiles individually.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: Switch this function on ☑ to be able to use the Bluetooth audio player as a source in the media menu.
– **Bluetooth name**: The Bluetooth name of the MMI system (e.g. "AUDI MMI 2017") is displayed and can be changed.

When this function is on ☑, the symbol (12) ⇨ *page 130, Fig. 137* will appear on the infotainment display.

Online settings*

– **Data connection settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 166, Configuring the data connection*
– **Data usage meter**: The number of the data packets sent/received via the MMI system is displayed. Select **Reset data meter** to reset the usage statistics to zero.
– **Connection status**: The mobile network provider for data services and the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

SIM PIN settings*

– **Automatic PIN entry**: When this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is stored in the MMI after it has been entered for the first time. You can save the PIN codes of four different SIM cards on the MMI. If this function is switched off, the PIN currently stored in the MMI will be deleted. If the automatic PIN entry function is activated, the system does not ask you to enter your SIM PIN explicitly.
– **Deactivate PIN query**: The system does not ask for the SIM PIN when you switch it on. The automatic PIN entry function is ignored in this case.
– **Change PIN**: You can change the PIN code for your SIM card. First enter the existing PIN code for your SIM card. The SIM PIN code can only consist of numbers from 0 to 9. The new SIM PIN code has to be entered twice, as a precautionary measure, and is stored on the SIM card.

Network settings*

– **Registration**: To dial into your service provider's mobile network **automatic**ally or to select a network **manual**ly from the list of available networks.
– **Network selection**: You can use this function to select the available networks for the current position of the vehicle. This function is only available when the **manual** setting is activated for registration.

Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Refer to ⇨ *page 217*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information about using Apple CarPlay/Android Auto and information about data transfer for specific devices.

Delete CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Important: Your mobile phone must no longer be connected to the Audi music interface via a USB adapter.

Select: **Audi smartphone** > a device from the list > right control button.

To remove your mobile phone from the list of mobile phones already connected, select and confirm **Delete CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

Note

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN query to be deactivated.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: Insert the storage medium with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 192*. Select and confirm the appropriate drive > **Start update**. The duration of this process depends on the size of the update.
– **Reset driver installation**: The media driver package selected is reset to the factory defaults.
– **Version information**: Information on the software version of the MMI and the navigation database* is displayed. In addition, you can use the **Software information** function to display information on the MMI's software and licence conditions.

On-board Handbook

Applies to: vehicles with On-board Handbook

The On-board Handbook includes the Owner's Manual for your vehicle.

Installing/updating the On-board Handbook

Important: The storage medium on which the On-board Handbook is stored must have been inserted into the relevant drive ⇨ *page 192*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **System update** > **SD card 1**, **SD card 2**, **CD/DVD*** or **USB***.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Starting the Handbook

Important: The Handbook must have been installed previously.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Handbook**.

The On-board Handbook will automatically load in the language that is set under the option Menu language in the MMI ⇨ *page 212*.

Using the On-board Handbook

The following functions are available when you are operating the On-board Handbook using the rotary pushbutton:

– **Select and confirm an entry**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the entry you require and press the rotary pushbutton.
– **Show a picture in full size**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the desired picture and press the rotary pushbutton.
– **Call up the options menu**: You can use the right control button to return to the **Home** page, **Refresh** the content in the On-board Handbook, **Cancel refresh** of the content and open the **Index**.

WARNING

You should only use the On-board Handbook when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle - risk of injury. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– The On-board Handbook is not available in all countries. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.
– Switch off the ignition while you are installing/updating the On-board Handbook.
– Please note that the On-board Handbook is not a substitute for the printed Owner's Manual.

Sound settings

You can adjust the sound and volume of the MMI individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

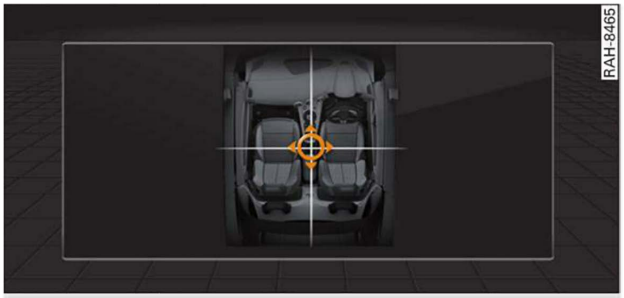


Fig. 180 Adjusting balance/fader

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble / Bass

You can adjust the settings for **Treble** and **Bass** by turning the rotary pushbutton. Any changes to the settings only apply to the audio source currently active. This allows you to set the sound for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader (sound focus)

– **To set the left/right volume ratio**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise to the desired position.
– **To set the front/rear volume ratio**: Press the rotary pushbutton again. Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise to the desired position.
– **To set the volume ratio using the MMI touch pad***: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Sound effects*

Select and confirm a setting for **Focus**:
– **all**: All the loudspeakers in the vehicle are active (evenly distributed sound focus).
– **front**: Only the loudspeakers in the front of the vehicle are active.

Speed-dependent volume control

You can adjust the automatic volume adaption to the interior noise level by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

Using the ON/OFF button, you can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.*

– **Volume up/down**: Turn the ON/OFF button (1) ⇨ *page 121, Fig. 124* clockwise or anti-clockwise.
– **Mute/pause**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button. **Or**: Turn the ON/OFF button anti-clockwise until the mute symbol appears. Any active audio/video source will then be paused.
– **Unmute/resume**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button. **Or**: Turn the ON/OFF button clockwise.

Note

When you switch on the MMI system, very high/very low volume levels are automatically reduced/increased to a preset level.

Setting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Mute telephone: Message and ring tones are silenced.

Ring tone: Refer to ⇨ *page 156*, **Ring tone and volume settings**. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ring tone volume: You can adjust the volume of the ring tone currently selected by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Message volume: You can adjust the volume of the tone informing you of a new text message by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Microphone input level: You can adjust the volume during a call by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Voice guidance: Refer to ⇨*page 177, Voice guidance*.

Voice guidance during calls: Refer to ⇨*page 177, Voice guidance*.

Volume of spoken cues: You can adjust the volume of the spoken cues while route guidance is active by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Entertainment fader: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced when the parking aid is active or while a navigation cue is being played.

Announcements

Traffic announcements: Refer to ⇨*page 186*.

DAB announcements*: Refer to ⇨*page 186*.

Volume of announcements: You can adjust the volume of traffic announcements by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Short dialogue: This option can be switched on/off. When it is activated, the spoken cues played by the system are shortened.

Speech dialogue system volume: You can adjust the volume of the spoken cues by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Parking aid*

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the beeps.

– **To adjust the front volume**: Select and confirm **high**, **medium** or **low**.

– **To adjust the rear volume**: Select and confirm **high**, **medium** or **low**.

MMI touch volume*

You can adjust the volume of the MMI touch* spoken cues by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Audi heartbeat

You can adjust the volume of the Audi heartbeat by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Note

Please note that the speech dialogue system* is not available as a factory option for Cabriolet models without a seat belt microphone.

Restarting the MMI system (Reset)

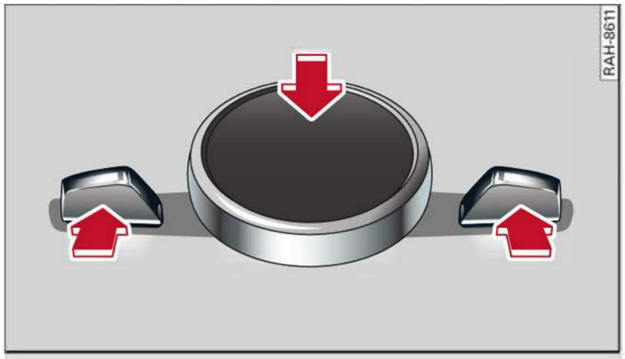


Fig. 181 Combination of buttons for restart

▸ Briefly press the rotary pushbutton and *simultaneously* press the two rocker switches upwards ⇨*Fig. 181*.

Notes on software licences

Information on the MMI system's software and its licence conditions

– Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**.

– **Or**: On the Internet at **www.audi.com/softwareinfo**.

Information on the instrument cluster's software and its licence conditions ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press the reset button 0.0 ⇨*page 24, Fig. 12* twice in the first five seconds after switching on the ignition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safe driving

General notes

Safety is the first priority

Your safety is our first priority.

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

WARNING

– The information in this chapter is important for the driver of the vehicle and the passenger. The other chapters in this manual (and, where applicable, in the other literature supplied with the vehicle) contain further important notes which you should read and observe for your own safety and that of your passenger.
– Ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Safety features

The safety features listed here are part of the vehicle's occupant restraint system. They work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. In the event of an accident, the safety features incorporated in your vehicle are capable of reducing the risk of injury. These are just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

– Seat belts for all seats
– Belt force limiters for all seats
– Belt tensioners for all seats
– Front airbags
– Side airbags in the backrests
– “ISOFIX” anchorages* for “ISOFIX” child seats on the passenger's seat
– Adjustable steering column

These individual safety features are harmonised to provide you and your passenger with the best possible protection in accident situations. However, they can only be effective if you and your passenger sit in the correct position and adjust and use the safety equipment properly.

For these reasons, this chapter explains why these safety features are so important, how they can protect you, what you need to remember when using them, and how you and your passengers can gain the most benefit from them. There are also a number of important safety warnings which you and your passengers should always observe in order to minimise the risk of injury.

Safety is everyone's responsibility!

Before every trip

The driver is responsible for the safety of the passengers and the safe operation of the vehicle at all times.

For your own safety and the safety of your passenger, always note the following points before every trip:

▸ Make sure that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
▸ Check the tyre pressures.
▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and give good visibility to the outside.
▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 227*.
▸ Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
▸ Adjust the mirrors and the seat according to your body height.
▸ Make sure that children are protected with suitable safety seats and properly worn seat belts ⇨ *page 223*.
▸ Sit in the correct position in your seat. Make sure that your passenger is sitting in the correct position ⇨ *page 54*.
▸ Fasten your seat belt correctly. Make sure that your passenger does the same ⇨ *page 230*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What factors can impair your safety?

Safety on the road is directly related to how you drive, and can also be affected by the passengers in the vehicle.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired in any way, you endanger yourself and other road users ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a mobile phone, etc.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medication, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Obey all traffic regulations and speed limits and always maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.
- Always adjust your speed to suit the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours without a stop.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

– Distractions while driving or any kind of impairment to your driving ability increase the risk of accident and injury.

– Do not place loose objects on the dash panel. These objects could fly around the interior when the vehicle is moving (under acceleration or whilst cornering) and distract the driver – risk of accident!

Correct sitting positions

Correct driving position

The correct driving position is important for safe driving.

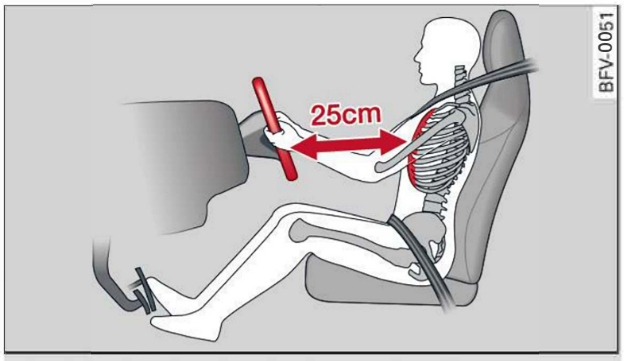


Fig. 182 Adjust seat and sit in correct position

For your own safety, and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following driving position.

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the centre of the steering wheel ⇨ *Fig. 182*.
- Adjust the height and fore/aft position of the driver's seat so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor without fully straightening your legs ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the backrest to an upright position so that your back remains in contact with the upholstery.
- Adjust the longitudinal position of the steering wheel so that your arms are slightly bent and you can read the dials and instruments easily.
- Make sure that you can comfortably reach the top of the steering wheel.
- Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 230*.
- Keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in full control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.

⚠ WARNING

A driver who is not sitting in the correct position or who is not wearing a seat belt can be fatally injured if the airbag is triggered. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the centre of the steering wheel ⇨ *Fig. 182*.
– While driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
– To reduce any risk of injury to the driver during a sudden brake application or in an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted too far back. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt webbing or an incorrect sitting position.

Correct position for the passenger

The front seat passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag has enough room to inflate and give maximum protection in an accident.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend adjusting the passenger's seat as follows:

▸ Adjust the backrest to an upright position so that your back remains in contact with the upholstery.
▸ Keep both feet in the footwell in front of the seat.
▸ Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 232*.

In **exceptional cases** you can disable the passenger's airbag via the key-operated switch* ⇨ *page 237*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.

WARNING

A passenger who is not sitting in the correct position or who is not wearing a seat belt can be fatally injured if the airbag is triggered.
– Adjust the passenger's seat so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the dash panel.
– Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the seat. If you sit in an incorrect position, you increase your risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain potentially fatal injuries by sitting out of position.
– To reduce the risk of injury to the passenger in the case of sudden braking or an accident, the passenger should never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belt can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the passenger is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt webbing or an incorrect sitting position.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Occupants can suffer severe or fatal injuries if they sit in an incorrect position while the vehicle is moving.

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed. The driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants, especially for children.

▸ Never allow anyone to sit out of position while the vehicle is moving ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following list shows just some examples of incorrect sitting positions which can be dangerous to all occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– Never stand up in the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
– Never lean against the dash panel.
– Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
– Never sit sideways.
– Never lean out of the window.
– Never put your feet out of the window.
– Never put your feet on the dash panel.
– Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
– Never climb into the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Sitting out of position increases the risk of severe injuries.

– Sitting out of position exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions.
– Before starting a trip, sit in the correct position and stay in this position as long as the vehicle is moving. Make sure your passengers are also sitting in the proper positions and ensure that they remain correctly seated at all times ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.

Child seats

Safety notes for using child seats

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, children must always use child restraint systems when travelling in the car.

Please note the information in this Owner's Manual when installing and using child seats. Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements.

If you use a child seat on the passenger's seat, it is most important to note the warnings ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

– Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle if there are no suitable child seats. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
– Babies and children must never travel on another occupant's lap.
– Never allow more than one child to occupy one child seat.
– Never leave a child without supervision in a child seat.
– Never allow a child to travel unrestrained or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, causing possibly fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
– To ensure proper protection by the child restraint, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position ⇨ *page 232*. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.
– If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the passenger's seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect sitting position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
– Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child seat.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If you are using a child seat on the passenger seat in which the child faces the direction of travel, you should move the passenger seat as far back as possible.
– Child seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are located directly in the path of the passenger's airbag if it inflates. In this case, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries if the airbag were to be deployed.
  – Applies to vehicles on which the passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat.
  – Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat while the passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch* ⇨ *page 237*. Make sure that the passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch* as soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the passenger's seat.
– Always replace the child seat with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.

Child safety and side airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags



Fig. 183 Illustration of a dangerous sitting position near the opening for the side airbag

Make sure that children do not lean out of the child seat towards the door trim. If the side airbag were to inflate in an accident, it could strike the child on the head and cause serious injury.

WARNING

– To avoid injury, the child's head must always be well away from the opening for the side airbag.
– Do not leave or place any objects in the area of inflation for the side airbag – risk of injury!

Child seat categories

Only use child restraint systems that are officially approved and suitable for the child.



Fig. 184 Child seat categories

Child restraint systems are covered by the European standard ECE-R 44. An orange label is usually attached to child seats which have been tested in accordance with this standard. Information on weight categories, ISOFIX size class and the approval category of the child seat can be found on this label.

Child seats are divided into five weight categories:

Child seats: categories 0 and 0+

Rearward-facing carry cots are most appropriate for these categories (up to 13 kg). Our recommendation: Audi carry cot with optional ISOFIX base.

Child seats: category 1

In this category (9 to 18 kg), rearward or forward-facing child seats with an integrated seat belt system are most appropriate. Rearward-facing child seats should be used for as long as ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

safely possible. Our recommendation: Audi child seat with ISOFIX base.

Child seats: categories 2 and 3

Child seats with backrests used in conjunction with seat belts are most appropriate for these categories (15 to 36 kg). Our recommendation: Audi child seat "youngster plus".

WARNING

– Categories 0, 0+ and 1 (rearward-facing): Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat unless the passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child. If you have no alternative but to let a child travel on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated* beforehand ⇨ *page 237*.
– Categories 1 (forward-facing), 2 and 3: The back of the child seat should be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat.
– Categories 2 and 3: The shoulder section of the belt must be fitted across the centre of the child's collar bone close to the torso. It must never run against or across the neck. The lap belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and not over the stomach or abdomen. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.
– Wait for as long as possible before changing up to the next child seat group.

Note

We recommend child seats from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories: **www.audi.com/childseats**.

Securing a child seat

Securing child seats with ISOFIX

Applies to: vehicles with ISOFIX



Fig. 185 Passenger's seat: Securing child seat with ISOFIX

Child seats of the categories 0, 0+ and 1 with ISOFIX can be secured without seat belts using the ISOFIX anchorages on the passenger's seat*.

- Push the mountings on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchorages until they engage audibly ⇨ *Fig. 185*.
- Pull on the child seat to check whether both sides have engaged properly.

If you wish to attach an ISOFIX child seat to the ISOFIX anchorages in your vehicle, please ensure that it is approved for the seat in your vehicle. The following table ⇨ *table on page 225* shows the installation options. The necessary information can be found on the orange label on the child seat.

An ISOFIX child seat categorised as “vehicle-specific”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” (**IL**) is suitable for a seat if:

– your vehicle is listed in the model list provided by the child seat manufacturer and
– your child seat is marked with IL in the following table.

Weight class	ISOFIX size category	Passenger's seat[a)]
Category 0: up to 10 kg	E	IL
Category 0+: up to 13 kg	E	IL
	D	
	C	

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight class	ISOFIX size category	Passenger's seat[a)]
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D	IL
	C	
	B	
	B1	
	A	
Category 2/3: 15 to 36 kg	-	IL[b)]

a) This function is not available for all export versions.

b) It may be necessary to adjust the backrest angle in order to fit the child seat correctly.

WARNING

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety notes for using child seats on page 223*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Child seat categories on page 225* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
- Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat unless the passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.
- The anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child seats with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child seat, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages - this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child seats with seat belt

If you wish to use a child seat in the approval category "universal" (**u**), please ensure that it is approved for the passenger seat in your vehicle. The following table shows the installation options. The necessary information can be found on the orange label on the child seat.

Weight class	Passenger's seat
Category 0 up to 10 kg	**u**
Category 0+ up to 13 kg	**u**
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	**u**
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	**u**
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	**u**

To adjust the passenger's seat to the child seat and to achieve the best possible seat belt positioning, move the passenger's seat as far upwards as possible using the seat's height adjustment. After installing the child seat on the passenger's seat, move the passenger's backrest forward until it makes contact with the child seat.

WARNING

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety notes for using child seats on page 223*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Child seat categories on page 225* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
- Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat unless the passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be obstructed by floor mats or any objects in the footwell.

- ▸ Make sure that none of the pedals is obstructed and all of the pedals can be pressed all the way down to the floor.
- ▸ Make sure that all pedals are able to return freely to their original positions.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If one of the brake circuits should fail, increased brake pedal travel will be required to bring the vehicle safely to a stop.

WARNING

Any obstructions that restrict pedal travel can cause loss of vehicle control and lead to critical traffic situations. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.

Floor mats on the driver's side

Use only floor mats which can be securely fastened in the footwell and do not obstruct the pedals.

▸ Make sure that floor mats are securely fastened and cannot interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and are firmly secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your dealer or a specialist retailer.

⚠ WARNING

Any obstructions that restrict pedal travel can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never lay or install additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.

Stowing luggage safely

Luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
▸ Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and secure them properly.
▸ Secure the load with the luggage net* or with non-elastic straps secured to the fastening rings* ⇨ *page 228*.

⚠ WARNING

– Loose items in the luggage compartment are a safety hazard: they can move suddenly and impair the handling of the vehicle as a result of the change in weight distribution.
– In an accident or a sudden manoeuvre, loose objects in the passenger compartment can be flung forward – risk of injury! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings*. Use suitable securing straps, particularly when transporting heavy objects.
– Always stow objects in the luggage compartment.
– Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
– Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle ⇨ *page 287*. Exceeding the permitted axle loads or gross weight limit can affect the vehicle's handling characteristics, and increase the risk of accidents, personal injuries or damage to the vehicle.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the child would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
– Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 230*.

▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– The tyre pressure must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying ⇨ *page 256*.
– Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slots in the rear of the vehicle. Make sure that these ventilation slots are not obstructed.
– Suitable belts for securing loads to the fastening rings* are commercially available.

Fastening rings

Unsecured loads are a hazard to all vehicle occupants.



Fig. 186 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

▸ Use the fastening rings to secure items safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ ⚠ *in Luggage compartment on page 227*.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can possess so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of this “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

For example: an object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to about 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this “projectile” strikes an occupant as it flies through the passenger compartment.

WARNING

If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
– To prevent pieces of luggage or other objects from flying forward, always use appropriate tensioning straps which are properly secured to the fastening rings.
– Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.

Pedestrian protection system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with pedestrian protection system

The pedestrian protection system is automatically activated in the event that the front of the vehicle collides with a pedestrian. The bonnet is raised slightly to create an additional crush zone above the engine.

The sensors of the pedestrian protection system are located in the front bumper. In rare cases, the system can be triggered because the possibility that a pedestrian has been hit cannot be ruled out by the sensors, for example:

– in a collision with a signpost,
– in a collision with an animal, or
– if you drive into a pile of snow, or
– in the event of ground contact, e.g. when driving on extremely poor road surfaces.

If the system has been activated, press the bonnet back into its original position ⇨ ⚠ *in Servicing the pedestrian protection system on page 229* and have the system serviced by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

– Do not use an additional or replacement number plate holder other than the original one fitted at the front of the vehicle. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never change or replace the bumper or bonnet as a part of tuning measures. This can impair the effectiveness of the pedestrian protection system and invalidate the operating permit for your vehicle.
– False activation of the pedestrian protection system is possible.

Servicing the pedestrian protection system

Applies to: vehicles with pedestrian protection system

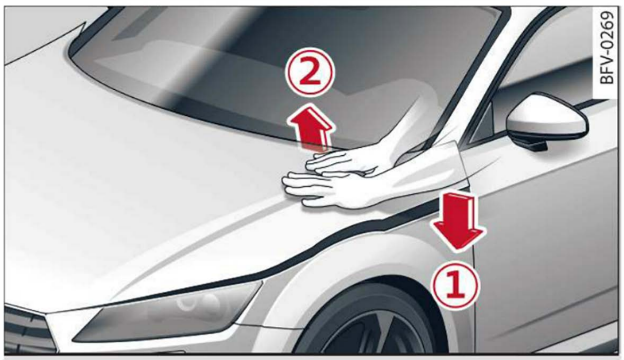


Fig. 187 Pressing back/checking the bonnet

If the pedestrian protection system has been deployed, the bonnet will be slightly raised at the end next to the windscreen. In addition, the indicator lamp will be displayed along with a message.

- To engage the bonnet again, press it down with both hands on the left side of the vehicle in area (1) ⇨ *Fig. 187* ⇨ ⚠.
- To check whether the bonnet is properly engaged, pull the rear edge of the bonnet (2) upwards. If the bonnet can be lifted, press it down again.
- When the bonnet has engaged properly, repeat the procedure on the right side of the vehicle.
- Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the pedestrian protection system serviced ⇨ (!).

⚠ WARNING

– Do not press back the bonnet unless both of your hands are flat on top of the bonnet. If you do this, you cannot catch your fingers between the bonnet and body. Take care when pressing back the bonnet: careless or uncontrolled movements can cause injury to yourself or others - risk of injury!
– The system can only be activated once. If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, have it replaced without delay by a qualified workshop.

(!) CAUTION

– All repairs to the bumper and the pedestrian protection system must only be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. Improper repairs can impair the effectiveness of the system and invalidate the operating permit for your vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when individual components of the system or the entire vehicle are scrapped. Your authorised dealer is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat belts

Why is it so important to use seat belts?

Seat belts provide effective protection

The common belief that passengers can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision is false.



Fig. 188 Driver with correctly positioned seat belt – good protection if the brakes are applied suddenly

It is an established fact that seat belts provide good protection in accidents. Therefore wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

When worn correctly, seat belts hold the occupants in the best position for maximum protection ⇨ *Fig. 188*. The seat belts are capable of absorbing much of the kinetic energy which is generated in a collision. They also help to prevent uncontrolled movements which could lead to severe injuries ⇨ *page 230, Important safety notes when using seat belts*.

If they wear the seat belts correctly, the passengers benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy gradually. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy generated in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the forces acting on the occupants and consequently the risk of injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, the physical principles involved are the same in other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to put on the seat belts before every trip - even when “just driving around the corner”. Please also ensure that your passenger's seat belt is properly fastened ⇨ ⚠.

Seat belts worn correctly have been shown to be an effective means of reducing the potential for injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident ⇨ *page 231, Forces acting in a collision*.

For information on how children can travel safely in the car refer to ⇨ *page 223, Child seats*.

⚠ WARNING

– Seat belts must be put on before every trip - even when driving in town. This also applies to passengers - risk of injury!
– During pregnancy, women should always ensure they wear a seat belt. The best way to protect the unborn child is to protect the mother ⇨ *page 233, Wearing and adjusting the seat belts during pregnancy*.

Important safety notes when using seat belts

There are a number of safety points concerning the seat belts which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

– The seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the seats are adjusted properly ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.
– To ensure proper protection, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position ⇨ *page 232, How to wear seat belts properly*. Ensure that the seat belts are worn exactly as recommended in this chapter. Belts which are not worn properly can increase the risk of injury in accidents considerably.
– Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
– Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt. It is especially dangerous to place a seat belt over a child sitting on your lap.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
– Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
– The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly ⇨ *tab. Cleaning the interior on page 265*.
– The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging properly.
– The latch plate of the belt must always be engaged in the correct buckle for that seat, otherwise the belt will not be fully effective.
– Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
– The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
– Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop. The belt anchorages should also be checked.

Forces acting in a collision

The physical principles involved in a frontal impact

Very large forces are generated during a collision; these forces have to be absorbed.

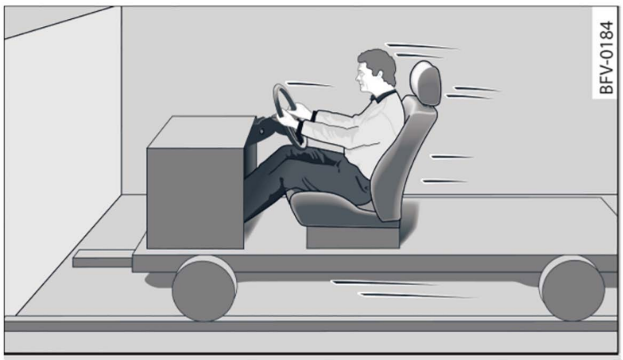


Fig. 189 Passengers of a vehicle which is headed for a brick wall. They are not using seat belts.

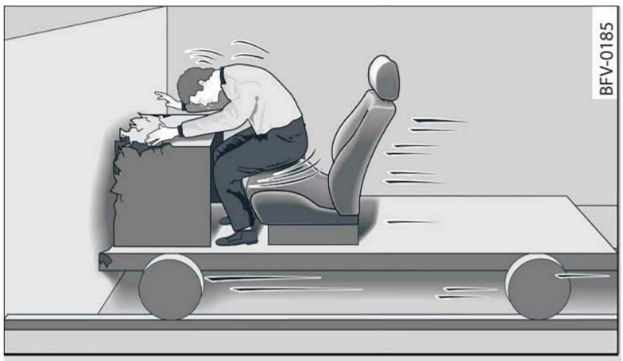


Fig. 190 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple:

Both the moving vehicle and the passengers possess energy, which is known as “kinetic energy” ⇨ *Fig. 189*. The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be absorbed in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h to 50 km/h, for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four. Because these passengers are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇨ *Fig. 190*. This would result in serious or potentially fatal injury. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Even at urban speeds of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces acting on the occupants in a collision can reach the equivalent of 1 ton (1,000 kg) or more. At greater speed these forces are even higher. Again: if the speed doubles, the forces increase by a factor of four.

Passengers who do not wear seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the speed their car was travelling just before the impact.

What happens to passengers not wearing seat belts?

Passengers not wearing seat belts risk fatal injuries in the event of an accident.



Fig. 191 A driver not wearing a seat belt can be thrown forwards

In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers will be thrown forwards and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, etc ⇨ *Fig. 191*. Passengers not wearing their belts risk being thrown out of the car. This could result in potentially fatal injuries.

The common belief that occupants can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision is false. Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to hold yourself in the seat.

How to wear seat belts properly

Putting on the seat belts

Always fasten your seat belts before driving off.



Fig. 192 Driver's seat: Seat belt

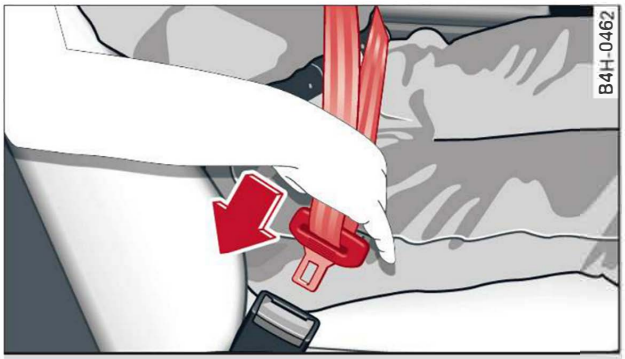


Fig. 193 Driver's seat: Belt buckle and latch plate

- ▸ Adjust the seat correctly before putting on the seat belt ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.
- ▸ To fasten the belt, take hold of the belt and pull it evenly across your chest and lap ⇨ *Fig. 193*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click.
- ▸ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

The three-point inertia reel belts are tensioned automatically. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Always make certain that the belt is positioned properly ⇨ *Fig. 192* - risk of injury ⇨ *page 233, Adjusting the seat belts.*
– The latch plate of the belt must always be engaged in the correct buckle for that seat. Otherwise the belt will not be fully effective and the danger of injury increases.

Adjusting the seat belts

Always position seat belts properly for maximum safety.

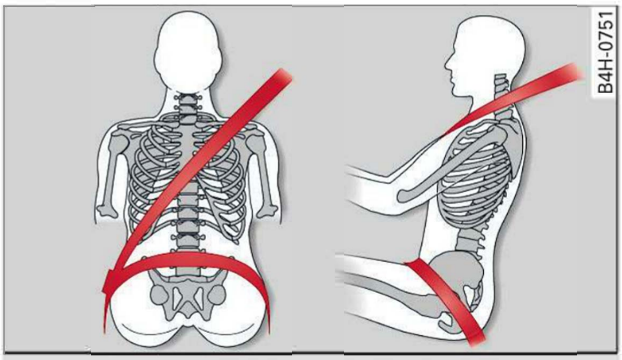


Fig. 194 Adjusting shoulder/lap belt

The following equipment is available for your vehicle to help you position the seat belt properly to suit your height:

– Height-adjustable seats
– Belt guide ring on backrest

WARNING

– The shoulder section of the belt should be fitted across the centre of the collar bone close to the body. To fasten the belt, take hold of the belt above the latch plate and pull it slowly down across your chest. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible over the hips so that there is no pressure on the lower abdomen. The belt should always be worn tightly ⇨ *Fig. 194*. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.
– Always make sure that belt is positioned properly. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.
– Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.

Wearing and adjusting the seat belts during pregnancy

To afford the best protection for the unborn child it is important for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times.



Fig. 195 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Women should always ensure they adjust the seat belt correctly during pregnancy.

▸ Adjust the seat correctly before putting on the seat belt ⇨ *page 54, Front seats.*
▸ To fasten the belt, pull it slowly down across your chest. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible over the hips so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇨ *Fig. 195*, ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *page 232, Fig. 193*.
▸ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

WARNING

During pregnancy, women should especially make sure to wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips so that there is no pressure on the stomach.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taking off the seat belts

The red button releases the belt from the buckle.

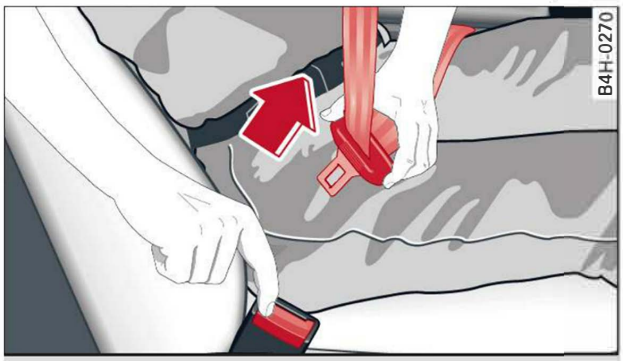


Fig. 196 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

- ▸ Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇨*Fig. 196*. The latch plate will spring out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up by the retractor.

Belt tensioners

The seat belts are equipped with belt tensioners.

Pyrotechnic belt tensioners

The seat belts are tensioned automatically in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

- – False activation of the belt tensioner is possible.
- – Any work on the tensioner system or removal and installation of system components for other repairs must be performed by a qualified workshop.
- – The belt tensioners can only be activated once. If they have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced.

Note

- – Some smoke may be released when the belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.
- – The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Your authorised dealer is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag system

Description of airbag system

General notes on airbag system

The airbag is an integral part of the car's passive safety system.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision.

In a severe side collision the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the occupants ⇨ ⚠.

In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection.

The airbag system will only work with the ignition on. The airbag system is monitored electronically; the indicator lamp indicates whether the system is functioning properly.

The main parts of the airbag system are:

– The electronic monitoring system (control unit and sensors)
– The two front airbags
– The two side airbags
– The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster

There is a fault in the airbag system if the warning lamp

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
– does not go out about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
– goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on.
– comes on or flickers while the car is moving.

⚠ WARNING

– The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts; they are an integral part of the car's overall passive safety system. The airbags can only offer effective protection if the occupants are wearing their seat belts. For this reason it is very important to wear the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 230, Why is it so important to use seat belts?*.
– The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.
– If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the airbag system be triggered in an accident.
– Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. If repairs to other vehicle components make it necessary to perform work on the airbag system or to remove or install parts of the airbag system, this may cause damage to the airbag system. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation. For this reason, you should always have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the system may fail to trigger in an accident.
– Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
– Never make any alterations to the front bumper or the body.
– Do not remove the seats.
– The airbag system can only be activated once; if the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced. Should the airbag system or airbag modules have to be replaced, the qualified workshop carrying out the replacement will document all details.
– If any repair work is required or the airbag and restraint systems have to be replaced, have the work carried out by your authorised Audi dealer or a qualified workshop which adheres to the Audi factory standards. This will minimise the risk of injury.
– If you sell the vehicle, remember to pass on the complete Service Wallet to the new owner. If any of the airbags have been deactivated, it is important that the new owner is also given the relevant documents. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag or belt tensioner systems are scrapped.
– For safety reasons, the alternator and the starter are both disconnected from the battery via a pyrotechnic circuit breaker in severe accidents.
  – Any repairs to the pyrotechnic circuit breaker must always be performed by a qualified workshop – risk of accident!
  – The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or the circuit breaker are scrapped.

When are the airbags triggered?

One or more airbag systems are triggered in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances.

Factors determining the triggering response

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are protected by wearing the seat belts.

Note

The airbag may release a fine dust when it inflates. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Front airbags

Important notes on passenger's airbag



Fig. 197 Version 1, passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker



Fig. 198 Version 2, passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

A sticker[1)] with important information about the passenger's airbag is provided on the passenger's sun visor. Please refer to the safety notes in the following chapters:

– Child seats and passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 223, Safety notes for using child seats*
– Safe distance from passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 238, Important safety notes on the front airbag system*
– Objects between passenger and passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 238, Important safety notes on the front airbag system*

1) Not available in all export vehicles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deactivating the passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for passenger's airbag

If an airbag has been deactivated, it should be reactivated as soon as possible so that it can continue to give the required protection.



Fig. 199 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating passenger's airbag



Fig. 200 Warning lamp lights up when passenger's airbag is deactivated

If you install a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat you must deactivate the passenger's airbag beforehand.

- ▸ To deactivate the passenger's airbag, use the emergency key to turn the key-operated switch to OFF ⇨ *Fig. 199*.
- ▸ The passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the key to position ON.

Monitoring of airbag system

The indicator lamp ⇨ *page 16* will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on.

If the passenger's airbag has been deactivated, the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" or "AIR BAG OFF" will light up constantly as a reminder ⇨ *Fig. 200*.

WARNING

- – Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat unless the passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child ⇨ *page 223*.
- – If you have deactivated the passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child seat is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.
- – It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

Description of front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.



Fig. 201 Steering wheel: Driver's airbag

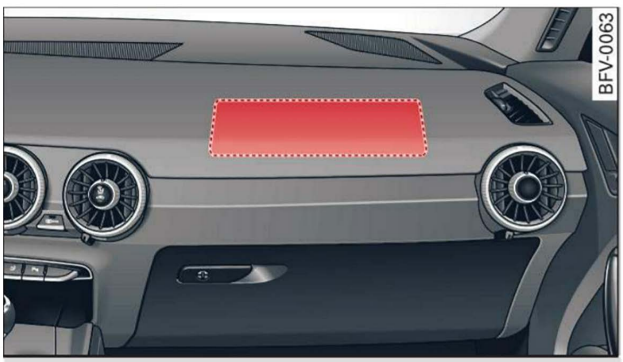


Fig. 202 Dashboard: Passenger's airbag

The front airbag for the driver is located in the padded hub of the steering wheel ⇨ *Fig. 201*. The front airbag for the passenger is in the dashboard above the glove box ⇨ *Fig. 202*. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIRBAG". ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbags give additional head and chest protection for the driver and passenger in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇨ ⚠ *in Important safety notes on the front airbag system on page 238*.

How the front airbags work

When fully inflated, the airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.

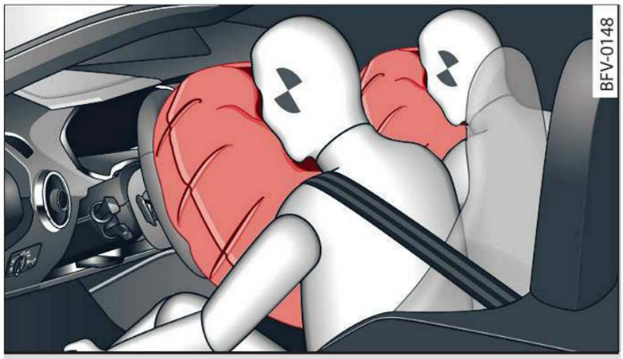


Fig. 203 Front airbags in inflated condition

The driver's and passenger's airbag are triggered in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *Fig. 203*. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and open out in front of the driver and passenger ⇨ *Fig. 203*. In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). The fully deployed airbags cushion the forwards movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

Special openings in the airbag allow the gas to escape at a controlled rate to restrain the forward movement of the occupant's head and torso. Once the impact has been absorbed, the airbag deflates sufficiently for the front occupants to see forward.

Important safety notes on the front airbag system

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

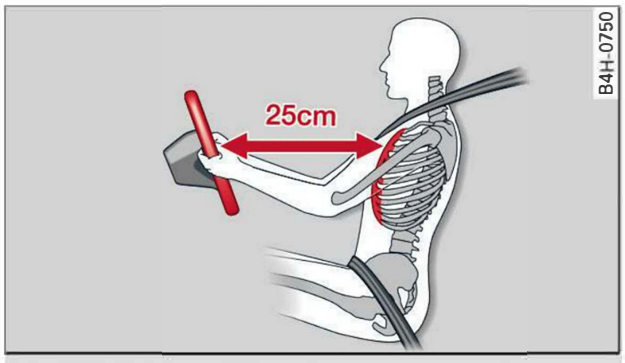


Fig. 204 Minimum distance from steering wheel

⚠ WARNING

- It is important for the driver and passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard ⇨ *Fig. 204*. The airbag system will not be able to give the required protection if you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard. There is also a risk of injury if the airbags are inflated. Additionally, the seat position should always be adjusted to the body size of the occupant.
- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury. Should the airbag system be triggered in an accident there is an even greater risk of injury.
- Never let a child travel on the passenger seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries ⇨ *page 223, Child seats*.
- Child seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are located directly in the path of the passenger's airbag if it inflates. In this case, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries if the airbag were to be deployed.
  - Applies to vehicles on which the passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

use a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat.

– Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat while the passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child seat on the passenger's seat, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch* ⇨ *page 237*. Make sure that the passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch* as soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the passenger's seat.

– Occupants must never carry any objects or pets in the space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

– Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the passenger's side of the dashboard, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth (or with a cloth moistened with plain water). It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.

– Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel or removal of seats) must be performed by a qualified workshop.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

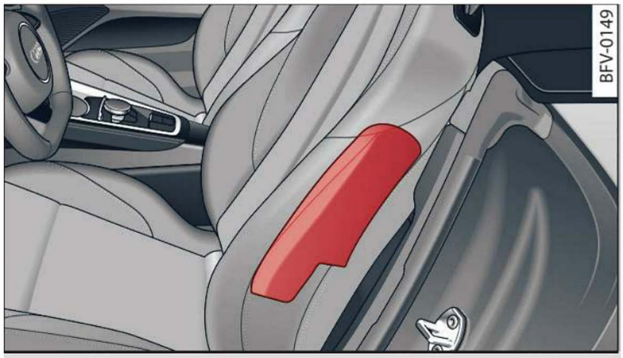


Fig. 205 Location of side airbag in driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the backrest padding of the seats ⇨ *Fig. 205*.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbags give the occupants additional protection for the head and upper part of the body in the event of a severe side collision ⇨ ⚠ *in Important safety notes on the side airbag system on page 240*.

In a side collision the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact.

How the side airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags

When fully inflated, the side airbags reduce the risk of injuries to the upper part of the body.

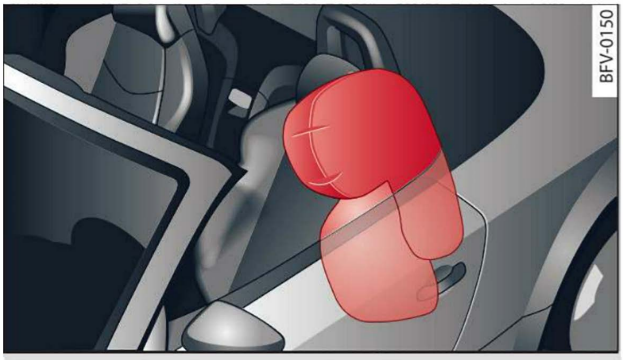


Fig. 206 Side airbag in inflated condition

In certain types of side collision, the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⇨ *Fig. 206*. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second).

The fully deployed airbags cushion the impact for the occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body on the side facing the door.

Important safety notes on the side airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the side airbags be triggered in an accident.
- If children are not seated correctly, they are at greater risk of injury in an accident. This could result in serious or potentially fatal injury ⇨ *page 223, Child seats*.
- It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The sensors for the airbags are located in the doors. You must therefore not make any modifications to the doors or door trim (e.g. retrofitting loudspeakers), as this could impair the function of the side airbags. Any damage to the doors could lead to faults in the system. Repairs or any other work on the doors must therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not apply excessive force to the sides of the backrests (such as hard knocks or kicks), as this could damage parts of the system. The side airbags could then fail to operate when required.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag when it inflates out of the backrest, and seriously reduce the airbag's effectiveness.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Any work involving the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the seats) must always be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may fail to work properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Petrol grade

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 standard. You can fuel your vehicle with fuels containing a maximum of 10% ethanol (E10). The petrol grades have different **octane ratings** (RON).

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's tank flap:

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium or min. RON/ROZ 91 Normal

The use of premium petrol (95 RON) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (RON 91) can be used with a slight loss of power.

Unleaded fuel only, min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 98 Super Plus or min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (RON 95) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E50 or E85). This will damage the fuel system.
- Just one tank of leaded fuel or fuel with metallic additives will permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- You should use only petrol additives which have been approved by Audi. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

Note

- You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
- In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

Diesel fuel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel fuel during the cold ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel fuel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

CAUTION

– Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
– Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Obtain professional assistance.

Filling the tank

Procedure for filling the tank

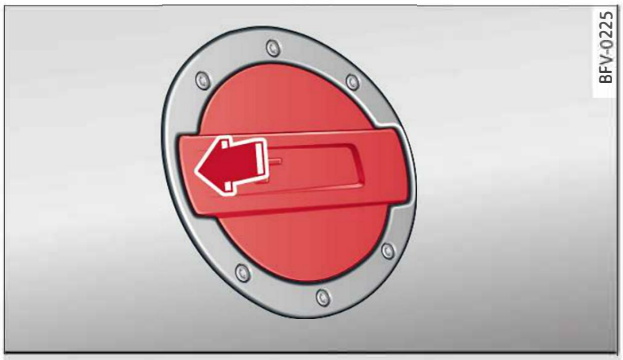


Fig. 207 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening the fuel tank flap

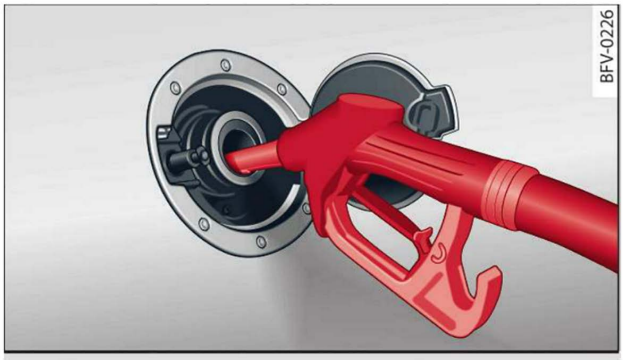


Fig. 208 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Inserting the filler nozzle

The fuel tank flap is unlocked and locked automatically by the central locking system.

▸ Press the tank flap -arrow- ⇨ *Fig. 207* to open it. Your vehicle has a new self-sealing fuel tank without a tank cap.
▸ Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop ⇨ *Fig. 208* and ensure it is properly engaged.
▸ Start refuelling. When the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank.
▸ When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
▸ Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇨ *page 241*.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the **Technical data** section ⇨ *page 288*.

WARNING

Fuel is highly inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
– When filling your tank or a spare fuel canister with fuel, do not smoke and keep away from naked flames – risk of explosion!
– Observe all relevant statutory regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.
– For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could become damaged in an accident and leak.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
  – Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel vapour to ignite – risk of explosion! Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.
  – Insert the filler nozzle as far as possible into the spare fuel canister.
  – If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must be in contact with ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.
– Make sure you never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapour is explosive – danger to life!

CAUTION

– If any fuel is spilt onto the vehicle, it should be removed immediately as it could otherwise damage the paintwork.
– Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
– When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry on a vehicle with a **diesel engine** the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

For the sake of the environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.

Note

Should the fuel tank flap become frozen stuck during inclement weather, press the middle of the flap with the palm of the hand and try again.

Note

– To prevent the tank from being filled with the incorrect type of fuel, only suitable filler nozzles can be inserted in the fuel filler on your vehicle.
– If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
– The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. If you need to fill the tank from a spare fuel canister, you must use the special funnel stowed in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 243, Fig. 209*.

Filling the tank using a spare fuel canister

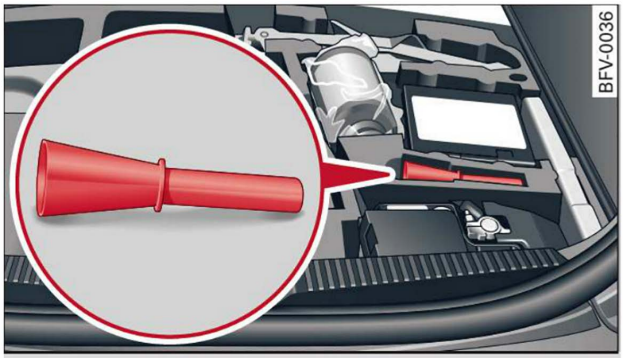


Fig. 209 Luggage compartment: Funnel

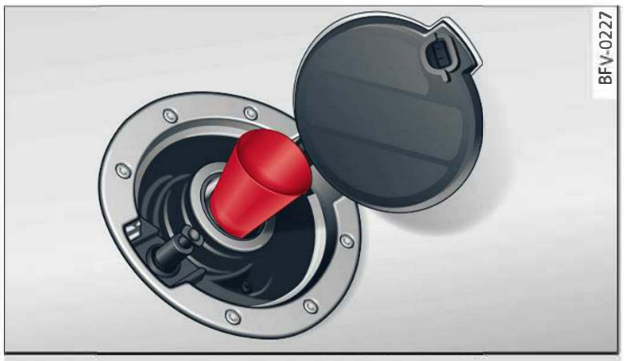


Fig. 210 Funnel inserted in tank opening

Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Procedure for filling the tank on page 242*.

▸ Press the tank flap -arrow- ⇨ *page 242, Fig. 207* to open it.
▸ Take out the floor panel ⇨ *page 270*.
▸ Remove the plastic base panels ⇨ *page 58, Fig. 63*.
▸ Take the funnel out of the luggage compartment.
▸ Insert the funnel into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop ⇨ *Fig. 210*. The funnel should be inserted so far into the fuel filler neck that the ring on the funnel is not visible.
▸ Insert the filler of the spare fuel canister into the funnel and start fuelling. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ After fuelling, remove the funnel and close the fuel tank flap so that it locks in place.

CAUTION

Remove any fuel spills from the paintwork immediately.

Releasing the tank flap manually

The tank flap can be released manually if the tank unlocking system should fail to operate.

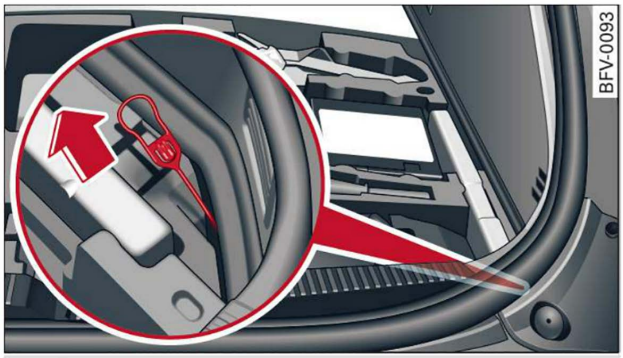


Fig. 211 Luggage compartment: Cover in the right side trim

▸ Open the boot lid.
▸ Lift the floor panel.
▸ Release the ring from its holder and carefully pull the ring ⇨ *Fig. 211*.

Emission control systems

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The diesel particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. when the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter becomes obstructed with soot and the symbol for the diesel particulate filter lights up ⇨ *page 17*.

WARNING

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.

– Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!
– Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the emission control system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
– Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system - risk of fire!

Engine compartment

Working on components in the engine compartment

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Switch off the engine.
– Switch off the ignition.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Put the gear lever in neutral or selector in P.
– Wait for the engine to cool down.
– Keep children away from engine compartment.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator antifreeze).
– Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system, especially when working on the battery.
– When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
– Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
– Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick rag to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
– Never remove the engine cover panel - risk of burns!
– If any tests have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system.
– Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Never open the throttle inadvertently (for instance by hand from the engine compartment) if a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary with the engine running. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
– Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near naked flames.
  – Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in the workshop.

Note

On right-hand drive vehicles* some of the containers / reservoirs mentioned below are located on the other side of the engine compartment.

Opening/closing bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 212 Detail of footwell on driver's side: Release lever

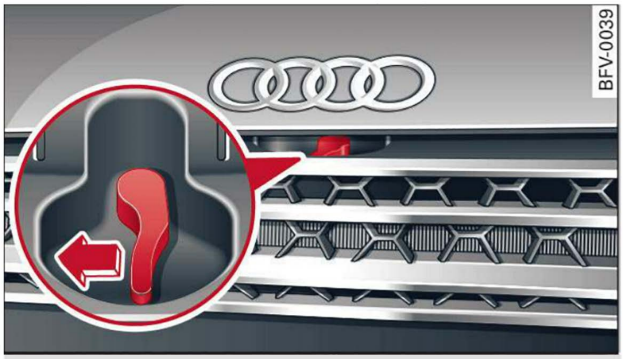


Fig. 213 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening the bonnet

- With the driver's door open, pull the lever under the dashboard in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ *Fig. 212*.
- Lift the bonnet slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the release lever ⇨ *Fig. 213* in the direction indicated (arrow). This will release the arrester hooks.
- Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down* ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.

– For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.

– Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

Engine compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

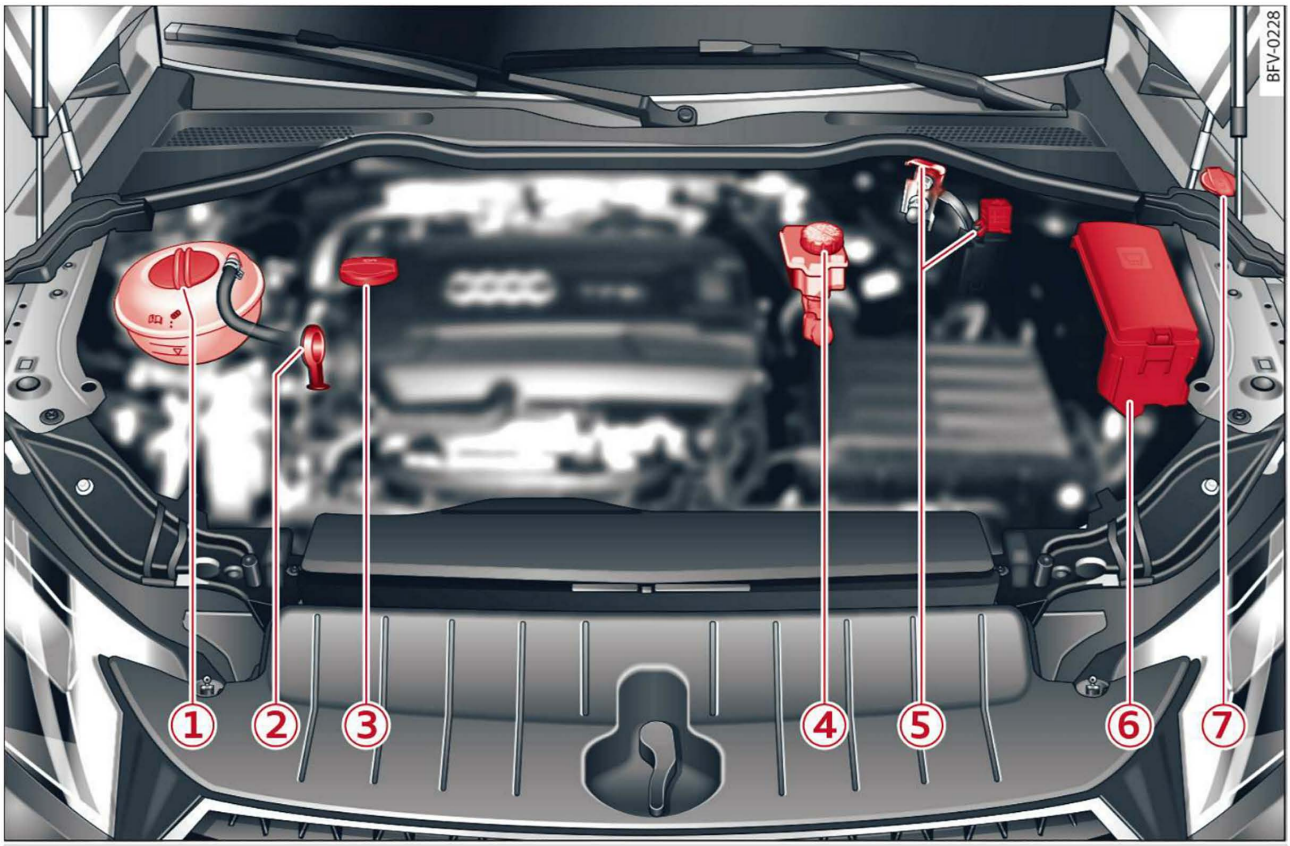


Fig. 214 Typical locations of fluid containers and engine oil filler cap

① Coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 249*
② Engine oil dipstick ⇨ *page 247*
③ Engine oil filler cap ⇨ *page 247*
④ Brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 250*
⑤ Jump-start terminals: under a cover (+); earth point on body (-) ⇨ *page 277*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⑥ Fuse box ⇨ *page 282*

⑦ Windscreen washer container (🚿) ⇨ *page 252*

The positions of the engine oil dipstick and engine oil filler cap ⇨ *Fig. 214* (items ② and ③) may be different on some engine versions.

Engine oil

Choosing the correct engine oil grade

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

If you have to top up the oil between oil changes, use the grades of oil specified in the table in accordance with VW standards.

– the vehicle is being serviced based on the flexible or fixed oil change service (see last service record).
– the vehicle has a petrol or diesel engine (see sticker on inside of fuel tank flap).

	Oil Change Service	
	Flexible	**Fixed**
Petrol engines	VW 504 00	VW 502 00
Diesel engines	VW 507 00	With diesel particulate filter: VW 507 00 Without diesel particulate filter: VW 505 00
Audi recommends Castrol EDGE Professional		
Audi recommends LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts		

Note

If the oil grades specified in the table are not available, you can use one of the following grades as a substitute. To prevent damage to the engine, this should not be done more than once between oil changes and no more than 0.5 litres should be used.
– Petrol engines: ACEA A3 or API SN (API SM) standard
– Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4 standard

Note

The flexible oil change service is not available for all models in all countries.

Checking and topping up the engine oil level

The oil dipstick differs depending on the type of engine.

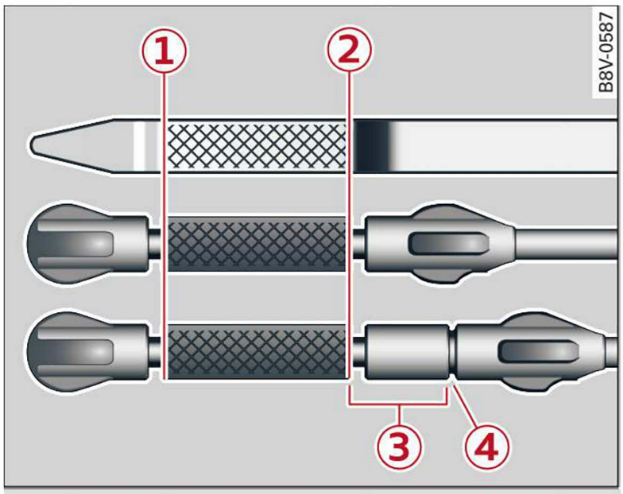


Fig. 215 Oil dipstick (examples): Checking engine oil level

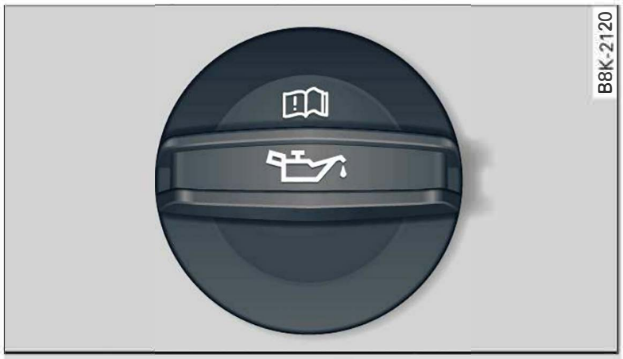


Fig. 216 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on components in the engine compartment on page 244*.

Checking the engine oil level

– Park the vehicle on a level surface. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Switch off the warm engine. Wait for a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump.
– Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 245*.
– Pull out the oil dipstick ⇨ *page 246, Fig. 214*, wipe it with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
– Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇨ *table on page 248*.
– If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil.

Markings on oil dipstick ⇨ *Fig. 215*	
①	When the oil level is near the marking ① you must top up the engine oil. Please refer to ⇨ ⓘ.
② ③	Do NOT add engine oil.
④	Do NOT add engine oil. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the engine oil changed ⇨ ⓘ.

Topping up the engine oil

– Unscrew the cap ⇨ *Fig. 216* from the oil filler opening ⇨ *page 246, Fig. 214*.
– Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇨ *page 247*.
– After two minutes check the oil level once again.
– If the oil level is too low, add a smaller quantity of engine oil. The level must always be below the marking ② ⇨ *Fig. 215* ⇨ ⓘ.
– Screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick all the way in.

WARNING

– Ensure that no engine oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
– The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
– Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

CAUTION

– The engine oil must never drop below the marking ① ⇨ *Fig. 215* - risk of engine damage!
– When topping up the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is not above the marking ② ⇨ *Fig. 215*, as this may result in damage to the catalytic converter or to the engine. Do NOT start the engine. Contact a qualified workshop to extract the engine oil if necessary.
– Applies to vehicles which have an oil dipstick with area ③ ⇨ *Fig. 215*: If you run your vehicle on diesel fuel of poorer quality than EN 590 standard fuel, the fuel can get into the engine oil. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Once the oil level has reached the marking ④ or the indicator lamp has come on, the engine oil level must not be corrected by extracting the surplus oil - risk of engine damage! The engine oil must be changed ⇨ *page 18*.
– No additives should be used with engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Never pour engine oil down drains or into the ground.
– Always observe statutory requirements when disposing of empty oil canisters.

Note

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption on RS models can be up to 0.8 ltr./1,000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp ⇨ *page 14*. However, we recommend that it should be checked occasionally.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. We recommend mixing coolant additive with distilled water.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. Only use one of the following coolant additives. It is possible to mix these additives.

Coolant additive	Specification
G13	TL 774 J
G12++	TL 774 G

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40%, max. 45%	min. -25 °C
Cold regions	min. 50%, max. 55%	max. -40 °C

CAUTION

– Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
– To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of anti-freeze additive if the approved type of additive is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
– Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
– Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.

Topping up coolant



Fig. 217 Engine compartment: Cap of coolant expansion tank

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on components in the engine compartment on page 244*.

Checking the coolant level

▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
▸ Switch off the ignition.
▸ Read off the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 246, Fig. 214*. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.

Topping up the coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇨ (!).

▸ Wait for the engine to cool down.
▸ Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a cloth, and carefully unscrew the cap anti-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇨ *page 249* up to the top mark.
▸ You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
▸ Screw the cap on again tightly. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a leak in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the cooling system checked. If there are no leaks in the system, a loss of coolant can only occur if the coolant boils and is forced out of the system as a result of overheating.

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure. Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot: you could be scalded by escaping steam.
– The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.
– When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system - risk of engine damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Brake fluid



Fig. 218 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on components in the engine compartment on page 244*.

Checking brake fluid level

▸ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 246, Fig. 214*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Having brake fluid changed

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired - risk of accident! Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
– Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
– Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Battery

General warnings for batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠.

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Explanation of warnings on vehicle battery:

	Wear safety glasses!
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and safety glasses.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!
	Keep children away from batteries and battery acid.

WARNING

Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇨ *page 251*.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain toxic substances including sulphuric acid and lead. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Vehicle battery

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle for a period of several days or weeks, the power management will gradually shut off the on-board systems one by one, or reduce the amount of current they are using. This limits the amount of power consumed and helps to ensure reliable starting even after a long period ⇨ *page 118*. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the vehicle battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇨ *page 251*. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the vehicle battery. The starting capacity may be reduced as a result. For this reason, you should have the vehicle battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Charging the vehicle battery

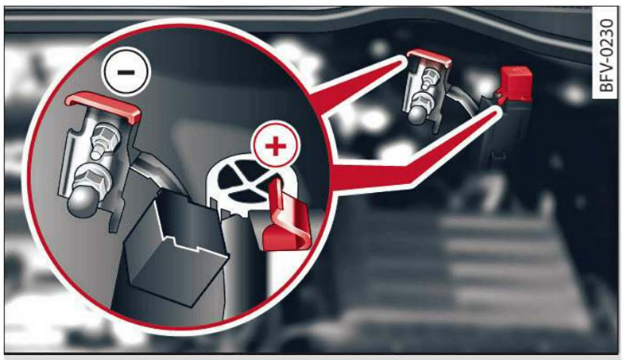


Fig. 219 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads and battery charger

Important: Only use chargers with a **maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V** (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected).

- ▸ Note the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General warnings for batteries on page 251* and ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 245*.
- ▸ Open the red cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 219*.
- ▸ Connect the charger cables to the **jump-start terminals** as specified ⇨ *Fig. 219*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Now connect the battery charger to the mains and switch on.
- ▸ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▸ Detach the charger cables from the terminals.
- ▸ Refit the red cap onto the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 245*.

WARNING

– A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the vehicle battery in a well ventilated area.
– When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a vehicle battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the battery acid to escape - risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process - risk of explosion!

Note

– Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the vehicle battery.
– Before you charge the vehicle battery, always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

Windscreen washer



Fig. 220 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 246, Fig. 214*. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇨ *page 288*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

CAUTION

– The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
– Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
– Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder**: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear on the infotainment display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Checking the service intervals

You can look up the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next service inspection. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. The distance to the next oil change is initially displayed based on the driving profile prior to the oil change. Your own personal driving profile is used subsequently to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

It is very important that you reset the oil change display if you change the oil yourself. The next oil change will be due after a fixed service interval.

To reset the display, select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

CAUTION

– Do not reset the oil change interval display unless you have changed the oil.
– Keeping to the correct service intervals is most important for the service life and residual value of the vehicle (and especially for the life of the engine). Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheels

Tyres and rims

General notes

- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

CAUTION

– Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. We recommend that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

– Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar.

New wheels or tyres

It is best to have all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel.

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- We recommend the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ ⚠.

The sizes of the rims and tyres approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document [1]). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

On vehicles with **four-wheel drive**, all four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel): ▶

[1] COC = Certificate of conformity

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT ... 2216 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2016.

Audi Genuine Tyres

Audi Genuine Tyres with the marking “AO” are specially matched to your Audi. When used properly, these tyres meet the highest standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

WARNING

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage

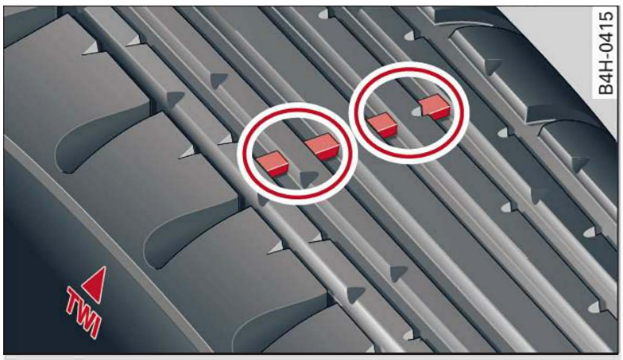


Fig. 221 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇨ *Fig. 221* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The minimum tread depth[1)] is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time. ▶

1) Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇨ *page 275*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

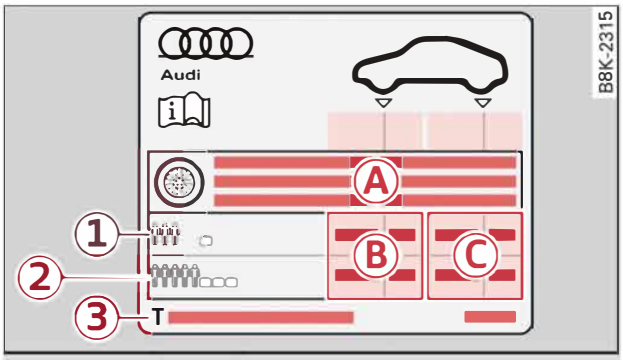


Fig. 222 End face of driver's door: Sticker listing the tyre pressures

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the compact temporary spare wheel* are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇨ *Fig. 222* is on the end face of the driver's door.

Ⓐ Tyre size

Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels

Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels

① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

② Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

③ Tyre pressure for the compact temporary spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressure to the specified maximum ② ⇨ ⚠.

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- Refer to the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 222* for the correct tyre pressures according to the load the vehicle is carrying.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressure.
- Vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator* or tyre pressure monitoring system*: Store the new tyre pressures in the infotainment system ⇨ *page 259*.
- Check the pressure of the spare wheel*/compact temporary spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

– Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Under-inflated tyres flex more and can overheat at high speeds or when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.

Note

We recommend always using either the tyre pressure setting (1) for partial loads or the setting (2) for full loads.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 273*.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇨ *page 275, After changing a wheel*.

– Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself - risk of accident!

Winter tyres

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

▸ Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
▸ Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
▸ Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
▸ After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ *page 256*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

WARNING

– Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!
– Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ⛷ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

▸ Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only. This also applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive*. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- ▸ Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
7Jx17	47 mm	225/50
8Jx19	52 mm	225/40

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

– Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.
– If you use snow chains with links that protrude more than 13.5 mm, this could cause severe damage to the wheel housings and other parts of the vehicle.

Note

When driving with snow chains, it may help to switch on sport mode ⇨*page 114*.

Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Your vehicle is fitted with low-profile tyres* as standard equipment. Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers, speed humps and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇨*page 256*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Summer tyres are not suitable for cold conditions, snow or ice. Use winter or all-season tyres when driving in these conditions ⇨*page 257*.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp and a message on the infotainment display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures on the infotainment system ⇨*page 259*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 256, Fig. 222*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

– The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
– The tyre has suffered structural damage.
– The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇨ *page 259*.
– You are driving with the temporary spare wheel*.

Indicator lamps

(!) - Loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇨ ⚠. Check and change or repair the tyre(s). Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 259*.

TPMS (**T**yre **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual** - If TPMS appears and the indicator lamp (!) in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇨ *page 259*. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
– It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.
– The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.

Note

– If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
– When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.
– The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to tyres with the marking "AO" ⇨ *page 254*. We recommend that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the infotainment system.

▸ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 255*.
▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator**.

Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tyre pressure monitoring system

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system keeps a check on the tyre pressures of the four road wheels while you are driving.

The system uses sensors to measure temperatures and pressures in the tyres. The sensors transmit the data to the control unit by radio.

The tyre pressure monitoring system displays the current pressures and temperatures of the tyres on the infotainment system while the vehicle is moving ⇨ *page 260*. In addition, it compares the current tyre pressures with the stored tyre pressures and warns you if it detects a discrepancy ⇨ *page 261*.

The system cannot check if the stored tyre pressures correspond to the recommended tyre pressures for your vehicle. You must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 261*:

– after every adjustment to the tyre pressures, e.g. after changing the laden weight of your vehicle,
– after changing a wheel, or
– when using wheels with new wheel sensors.

WARNING

– The tyre pressure monitoring system helps the driver to monitor the tyre pressures. However, it is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyres are at the correct pressure.
– Never re-adjust the tyre inflation pressure when the tyre is hot. This can cause serious damage to the tyre or even a blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– Under-inflated tyres flex more than they should. This causes them to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– The tyre pressure monitoring system cannot warn you of tyre damage or defects that could lead, for example, to a tyre blow-out. Perform a regular visual check of your tyres.

Note

– The sensors and valves do not have to be detached or changed round when fitting new tyres. Only the valve core needs to be replaced, and if necessary the valve and the electronic components in the wheel. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.
– After using the tyre repair kit, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction. Have the sensors renewed by a qualified workshop.

Displaying tyre pressures and temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

Important: The vehicle must be moving.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator** > **Display tyre pressures**.

The current tyre pressures are displayed in green, yellow or red on the infotainment system:

– **Green:** The tyre pressure is roughly the same as the reference value.
– **Yellow:** The tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value.
– **Red:** The tyre pressure is much too low compared with the reference value.

The reference value is the last stored tyre pressure value ⇨ *page 261*.

Bear in mind that the tyre inflation pressure is also influenced by the temperature of the tyre. The tyre heats up while the vehicle is being driven and the tyre pressure will rise accordingly.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 260*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

The tyre pressures and temperatures are not shown in the display when the vehicle is stationary or during the initialisation phase. Horizontal dashes **--.--** will appear instead of the pressure and temperature figures.

Loss of tyre pressure

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

If the indicator lamp appears, the tyre pressure on at least one of the wheels is too low or new sensors have not yet been initialised.

Indicator lamp lights up after switching on the ignition

The tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value.

- Adjust the pressure of the relevant tyre(s) at the next opportunity and store the pressures ⇨ *page 261*.

Indicator lamp lights up during a journey

Wheels with new sensors have not yet been initialised or the tyre pressure has reached a critical level compared with the reference value.

- Avoid unnecessary braking and steering manoeuvres.
- Adapt your driving style to the prevailing conditions.
- As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyre(s).
- If it is possible to continue driving, you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the defective tyre(s) repaired or replaced immediately.

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 260*.

Storing new tyre pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

To enable the tyre pressure monitoring system to work reliably, it is important to store the correct pressure settings.

You should always store the tyre pressures if new sensors are fitted or after changing the pressures when carrying a different amount of passengers or luggage.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 256, Fig. 222*. Only adjust and store the inflation pressure of the tyres when they are at approximately ambient temperature. If the tyre temperatures are higher than the ambient temperature, the inflation pressures should be increased by approx. 0.2 bar above the pressures specified on the tyre pressure sticker.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**. The tyre pressure monitoring system will then measure the current tyre pressures when you drive the vehicle and store them as the new reference values.
- If the new tyre pressures do not appear on the infotainment display, you will need to drive for about 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels can be received again.

During this initialisation phase, **--.--** will be shown on the pressure and temperature display and some functions of the tyre pressure monitoring system will not be available. The system will warn you only if the pressure of one or more tyres is below the minimum reference pressure.

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message **Tyre pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI** appears, the system has detected that the sensor positions have changed because of a wheel change or that new sensors have been fitted. Store the new tyre pressures. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 260*.

Possible malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

If the tyre pressure monitoring system is inoperative, the indicator lamp TPMS will appear in the instrument cluster display together with the message **Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual**.

If the indicator lamp TPMS appears after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving and the indicator lamp flashes for approximately one minute and then remains lit, there is a fault in the system. This fault can have the following causes:

– If the display appears at the end of the initialisation process, this means that the system cannot detect the wheel sensors required to monitor the pressures. This can happen if one or more of the tyres fitted does not have a sensor or the sensors are incompatible.
– One of the wheel sensors or another component may not be working.
– Snow chains interfere with the signals transmitted by the sensors and can prevent the system from functioning properly.
– The tyre pressure monitoring system may be inoperative due to radio interference.
– Radio systems operating on the same frequency, such as radio headphones or two-way radios inside the vehicle, produce strong electromagnetic fields which cause temporary interference.

The indicator lamp TPMS and the message will disappear as soon as the tyre pressure monitoring system is available again. If the fault persists and the indicator lamp TPMS stays on, you should drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General notes

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

Qualified workshops carry stocks of suitable car care materials. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

– Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
– Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

For the sake of the environment

– Please choose care products that are not harmful to the environment.
– Surplus cleaning materials should not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, bonnet or boot lid, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with lots of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
– To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
– After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors and, if necessary, retract the automatic rear spoiler* to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
– Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
– The soft top must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
– Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
– Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  – Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  – Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  – Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Notes on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	⇨ *page 51*
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Soft top	Dirt/deposits	Wash with a soft brush and clean water (add soft top cleaner as required); follow the grain of the fabric and allow to dry naturally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Situation	Remedy
Windbreak	Dirt/deposits	Water, if necessary with mild detergent[a)]
Ornamental trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Paintwork	Paint damage	Refer to the vehicle data sticker for the paint no. and touch up using a paint pen ⇨ *page 287*
	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts ⇨ *page 263*
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Ornamental trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush.
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)] (allow to dry before retracting)

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Situation	Remedy
Fabrics, leatherette, Alcantara	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent[a)]
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent[a)], dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ball-point pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent[a)]
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent[a)]
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ball-point pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

CAUTION

- **Headlights/rear lights**
  - Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  - Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
- **Wheels**
  - Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
  - If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
- **Sensors/camera lenses**
  - Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water - danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
  - Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks appearing.
- **Soft top**
  - Remove bird droppings without delay.
  - Never use petrol, stain remover, benzene, paint thinners or other solvents to remove stains.
- **Windows**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
– Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
– To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.

– **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
  – Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
– **Paintwork**
  – The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
  – Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
  – Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
  – Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
– **Instrument cluster**
  – Before cleaning, ensure that the instrument cluster is switched off and cool.
  – The instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
  – Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!
– **Control consoles**
  – Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!
– **Seat belts**
  – Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
  – Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
  – If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.
– **Fabrics/leatherette/Alcantara**
  – Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/Alcantara fabrics.
  – To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  – Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
  – Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  – Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.
– **Natural leather**
  – Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
  – Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  – Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
  – Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

Note

– It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
– Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact a qualified workshop. Here you will receive advice on necessary measures, for example regarding corrosion protection, servicing and storage. In addition, please observe the general notes on the vehicle battery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mobility

General notes

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Place the warning triangle in a visible location ⇨ *page 269*.
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle

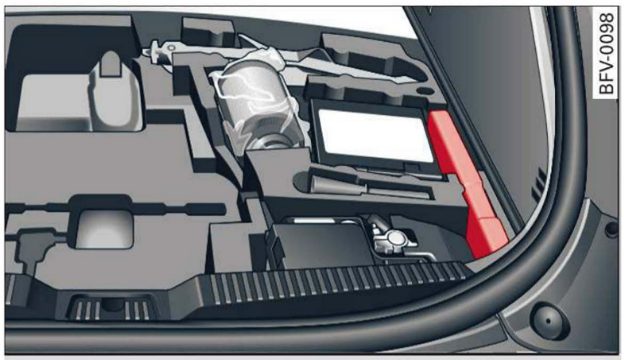


Fig. 223 Luggage compartment: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is stowed in the luggage compartment.

The luggage compartment is specifically designed to hold only the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit



Fig. 224 Storage compartment between the backrests

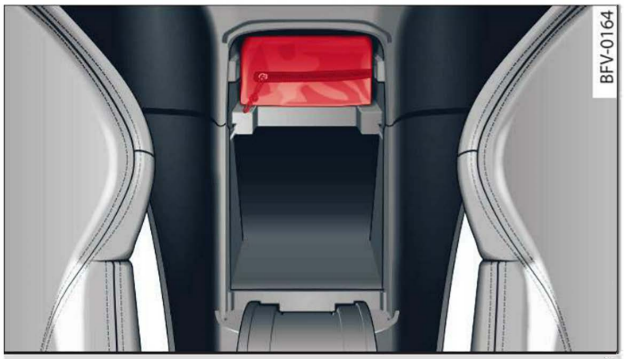


Fig. 225 First-aid kit

The first-aid kit is located in a compartment between the backrests.

- To open the compartment, pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ *Fig. 224* and open the lid.

Note

If your vehicle is fitted with bucket seats, the backrests of the front seats must be folded down before you can take out the first-aid kit.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is located in the footwell on the passenger's side (secured in a holder).

- Remove the fire extinguisher by pressing on the tab marked “PRESS”.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Note

– The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
– The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

Tool kit/tyre repair kit/compressor



Fig. 226 Luggage compartment: Floor panel (closed)

The tools, tyre repair kit and compressor are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Press the plastic handle and lift up the floor panel.
- ▸ Fold back the floor panel.

Before stowing the jack* again, wind down the arm of the jack as far as it will go.

Note

The jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▸ Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ *page 269, General notes*.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- ▸ Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- ▸ Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 270*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

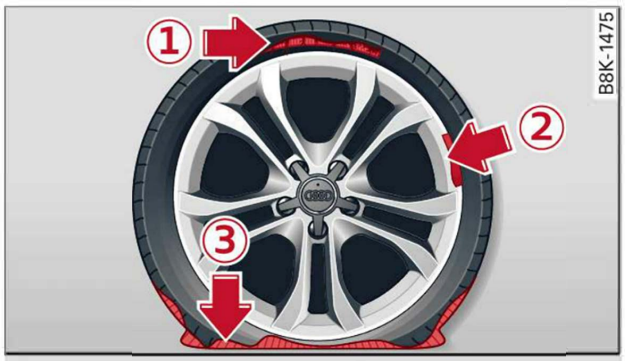


Fig. 227 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

– On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm (1) ⇨ *Fig. 227*
– If the wheel rim has been damaged (2).
– if you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre (3).

In these cases, you should seek professional assistance.

WARNING

– Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and ▸

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

should only be used as a temporary measure.
– Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
– If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
– Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
– If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Immediately contact a doctor.
– Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
– If any allergic reactions should occur get medical help immediately.
– Keep the sealant away from children.

Note

– If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
– Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop.
– Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor*.
– Please observe the relevant regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

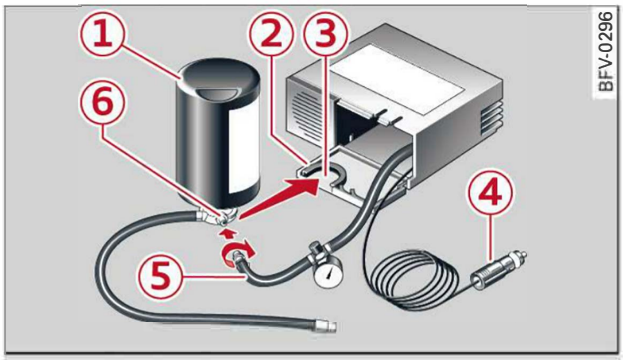


Fig. 228 Components of the tyre repair kit

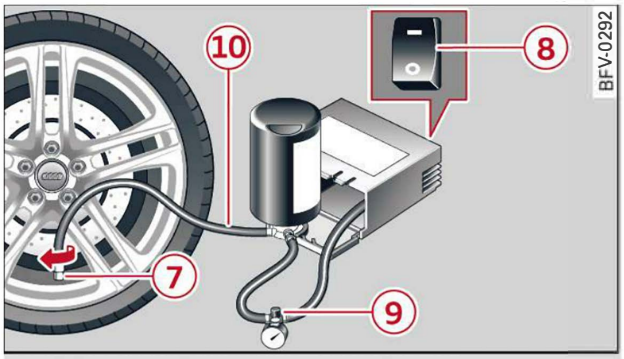


Fig. 229 Connecting the tyre repair kit

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇨ *page 270*.

Setting up the tyre repair kit

▸ Open the flap (2) on the compressor ⇨ *Fig. 228*.
▸ Pull the connector (4) and the compressor hose (5) including the pressure gauge out of the housing.
▸ Screw the compressor hose (5) onto the flange (6) of the tyre sealant can (1).
▸ Place the tyre sealant can (flange facing down) into the opening (3) on the flap of the compressor.
▸ Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
▸ Screw the filler hose (10) onto the valve (7) ⇨ *Fig. 229*.
▸ Insert the connector (4) ⇨ *Fig. 228* into a socket in the vehicle.
▸ Switch on the ignition.

Inflating the tyre

▸ Move the switch (8) ⇨ *Fig. 229* on the compressor to position **I**.
▸ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
▸ If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the filler hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Please observe the manufacturers' safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 6 minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
– Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 6 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:
– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
– Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
– Vehicle handling could be impaired.
– If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ *page 269, General notes*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- Take out the tools ⇨ *page 270* and spare wheel ⇨ *page 276*.

WARNING

If you have to use the jack* on a gradient or off-road track, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing the hubcap/wheel bolt caps



Fig. 230 Wheel: Hubcap



Fig. 231 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hubcaps*

- Insert the hook (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) in the hole in the hubcap ⇨ *Fig. 230*.
- Pull off the hubcap.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps*

- Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *Fig. 231*.
- Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

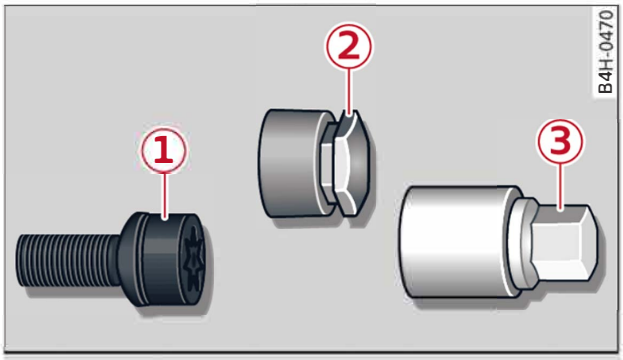


Fig. 232 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To release the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle's tool kit).

- Pull off the hubcap* or wheel bolt cap* (2) ⇨ *Fig. 232*.
- Slide the adapter (3) all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt (1).
- Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the adapter (3).
- Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 273*.

Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 233 Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1)].
- Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise -arrow-. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

[1)] An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ⇨ *page 273*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack

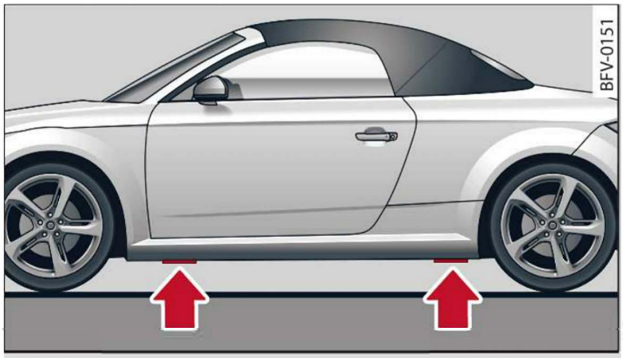


Fig. 234 Sills: markings (example)

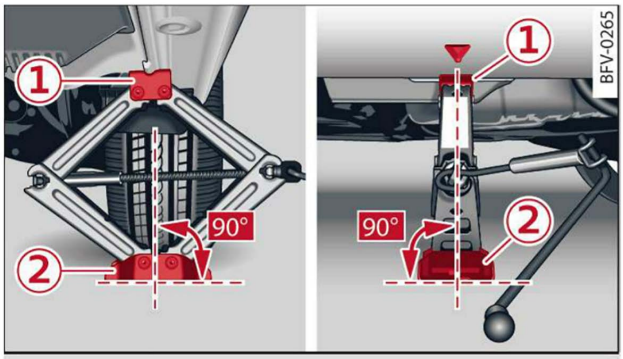


Fig. 235 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- ▸ Always provide a firm base for the jack* on the ground. (The jack can be found in the vehicle's tool kit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇨ *Fig. 234*. The jacking point is located behind the marking under the door sill.
- ▸ Wind up the jack* under the jacking point until the claw ① ⇨ *Fig. 235* of the jack is directly below the jacking point.
- ▸ Align the jack* so that the claw ① grips the jacking point under the door sill and the base plate of the jack ② is flat on the ground. The base plate ② must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point ①.
- ▸ Raise the vehicle until the defective wheel is clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

- – Make sure the jack* is stable. If the ground underneath the jack* is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in - risk of injury!
- – Use only the jack* supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
- – Apply the jack* only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack* can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- – Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
- – If work has to be done under the vehicle, ensure that it is safely supported on suitable stands – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack* at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taking off / putting on the wheel



Fig. 236 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts



Fig. 237 Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

Taking off the wheel

- ▸ Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle's tool kit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇨ *Fig. 236*.
- ▸ Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇨ *Fig. 237*[1)].
- ▸ Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- ▸ Take off the wheel ⇨ (!). The mounting pin stays where it is.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇨ *page 275*.

- ▸ Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- ▸ Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.
- ▸ Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before putting on the wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before mounting the wheel.

WARNING

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket - risk of accident!

CAUTION

When removing/ fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc/ceramic* brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- ▸ Fit the hubcap or wheel bolt caps back on, as required. ▶

1) Applies to vehicles with ceramic brake discs*: Use a second mounting pin* (from the tool kit) for the bottom hole following the same procedure as described for the first mounting pin.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 227*.
- ▸ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Adjust the tyre pressures and store them via the infotainment system.
- ▸ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 120 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▸ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Spare wheel

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with compact temporary spare wheel

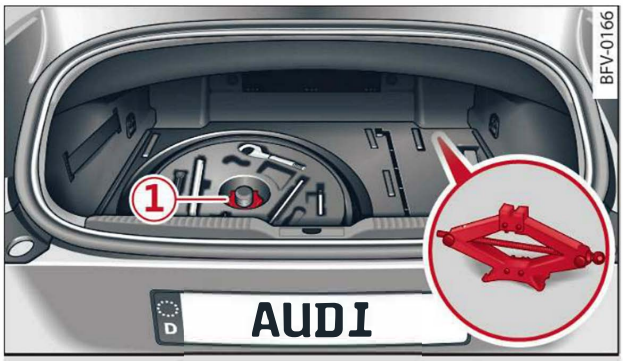


Fig. 238 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel



Fig. 239 Compact temporary spare wheel (example)

The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. Have the damaged wheel checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. The compact temporary spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

Removing the spare wheel

- ▸ Turn the centre plastic knob ⇨ *Fig. 238* (1) anticlockwise.
- ▸ Take out the spare wheel.

Removing the jack

- ▸ Lift open the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment and take out the jack.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

WARNING

- – The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident. You can find the tyre pressures here ⇨ *page 256, Fig. 222*.
- – Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.
- – Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
- – Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time – risk of accident!
- – No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump-starting

Before starting the engine

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the vehicle battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 Volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads - risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 244*.

Note

- There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
- The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Switch off the car telephone if necessary. Details will be given in the manufacturer's instructions for the car telephone.

Starting the engine

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.

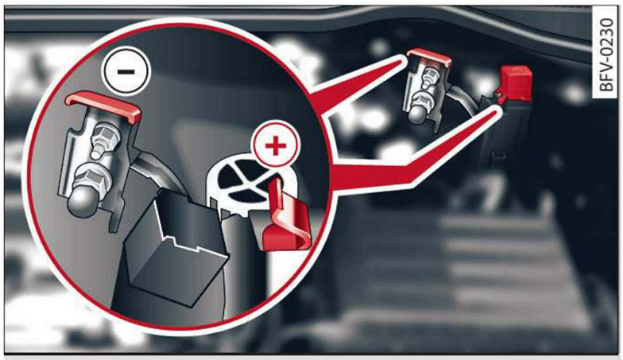


Fig. 240 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads and battery charger

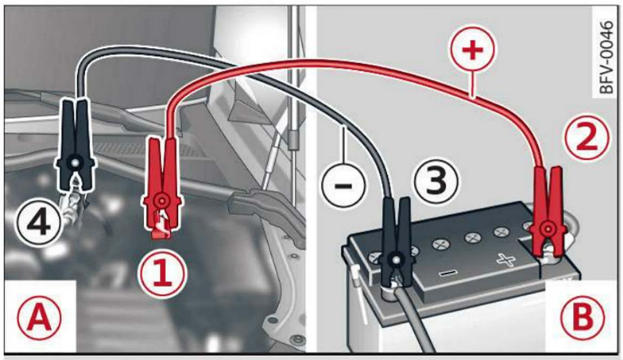


Fig. 241 Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle: A – Discharged battery, B – Boosting battery

Preparations

- ▸ Apply the parking brake and move the gear lever to neutral (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to P (automatic gearbox).
- ▸ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition on both vehicles.

Connecting and disconnecting the jump leads

- ▸ Before jump-starting the vehicle you must open the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (1) ⇨ *Fig. 241* of the jump-start connection (A) in your vehicle.
- ▸ Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (2) of the boosting battery (B).

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Connect one end of the black lead to the negative terminal (3) of the boosting battery (B).
- Connect the other end of the black jump lead to the negative terminal (4) of the jump-start connection (A) in your vehicle.
- Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
- Switch on the blower and the rear window heating on the vehicle which has been jump-started in order to offset excessive voltage which may occur when disconnecting the leads. The headlights must be switched off!
- When the engines are running, disconnect the leads in exactly the opposite sequence to that described on ⇨ *page 277, Connecting and disconnecting the jump leads*. Make sure that the leads cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- Switch off the blower and the rear window heating again.

WARNING

– The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
– Do not lean over batteries - risk of chemical burns!
– The screw plugs on the battery cells must be screwed in firmly.
– Keep sparks, flame and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
– If jump-starting another vehicle, position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

CAUTION

Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle. If jump-starting another vehicle, you should not connect the negative lead (–) to the negative terminal of the discharged vehicle battery, but directly to the engine block or a solid metal part bolted to the engine block. If the battery of the other vehicle does not have a gas vent, there is a risk that a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen gas can accumulate and cause an explosion.

Note

– The vehicle battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases entering the vehicle's interior.
– Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Tow-starting / towing away

General notes

Some experience is required to tow or tow-start a vehicle, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow-start or tow away another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notes on towing vehicles

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

– The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
– The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

If one of the axles has to be raised in order to tow the vehicle, please refer to the following table to determine the appropriate axle for your gearbox/drive combination:

	Front-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Manual gearbox	Front or rear axle	Front or rear axle
Automatic gearbox	Front axle	Front axle

Four-wheel drive: If the vehicle is to be towed with one of the axles raised, the ignition must be switched off; otherwise the drive train can be damaged.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

The vehicle must not be towed with the wheels lifted at either the front or rear.

Notes on tow-starting

Automatic gearbox: For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started.

Manual gearbox: As a general rule, tow-starting is not recommended. If the engine will not start, it is best to try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ⇨ *page 277* before attempting to tow start. If this is not possible, you can try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle ⇨ *page 280, Tow-starting*.

WARNING

There is a high risk of accidents when towing/tow-starting, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.

CAUTION

– If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
– Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.

Note

– Automatic gearbox: It is not possible to move the selector lever out of position P if the electrical power supply fails. Before the vehicle can be recovered/manoeuvred you must manually release the selector lever ⇨ *page 84*.
– Please observe the relevant regulations when towing or tow-starting.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 278*.

Preparations

▸ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 280*, ⇨ *page 281*.
▸ Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
▸ The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇨ *page 47*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

▸ Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
▸ Engage the clutch very gently when starting to move (manual gearbox) and press the accelerator slowly.
▸ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇨ ⚠.
- The brake servo only works when the engine is running. The power steering only works when the ignition is on and the vehicle is moving[1)]. Otherwise you will need to press the brake pedal significantly harder and apply more force to move the steering wheel.
- Please ensure that the steering wheel is unlocked and that it moves freely.
- Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 74*.
- Manual gearbox: Put the gear lever in neutral.
- Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position N.
- Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle

Note

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

Tow-starting

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 278*.

Important: Your vehicle must be fitted with a manual gearbox. If your vehicle has a petrol engine, it must not be towed further than 50 metres ⇨ (!).

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 280*, ⇨ *page 281*.
- Engage second or third gear before moving off.
- Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch pedal and put the gear lever in neutral.

(!) CAUTION

When tow-starting the vehicle, do not tow it further than 50 metres; otherwise the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Front towline anchorage

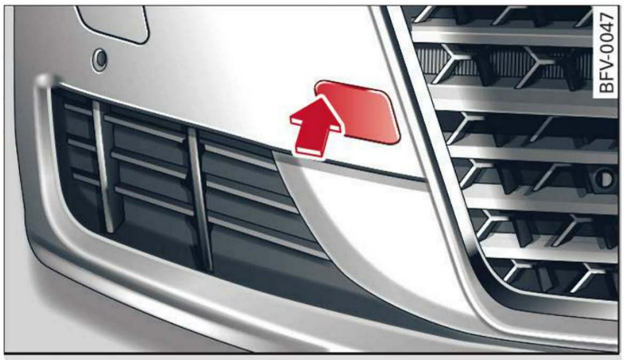


Fig. 242 Front bumper: Cover cap



Fig. 243 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located behind a cover cap on the right side of the front bumper.

- Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 270*.
- Firmly press the cap inwards ⇨ *Fig. 242*. The cover cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go ⇨ *Fig. 243* and tighten it with the box spanner. ▶

[1)] Important: The vehicle battery must be adequately charged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!

Rear towline anchorage



Fig. 244 Rear bumper: Cover cap

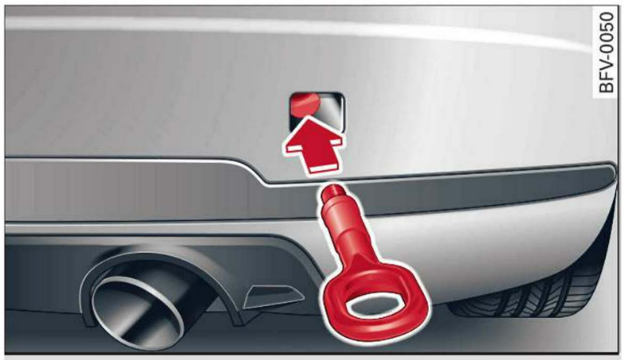


Fig. 245 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage*

There is a screw connection for the towline anchorage on the right of the rear bumper.

▸ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 270*.
▸ Firmly press the cap inwards ⇨ *Fig. 244*. The cover cap will be released from the bumper.
▸ Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go ⇨ *Fig. 245* and tighten it with the box spanner.
▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Fuses in vehicle interior

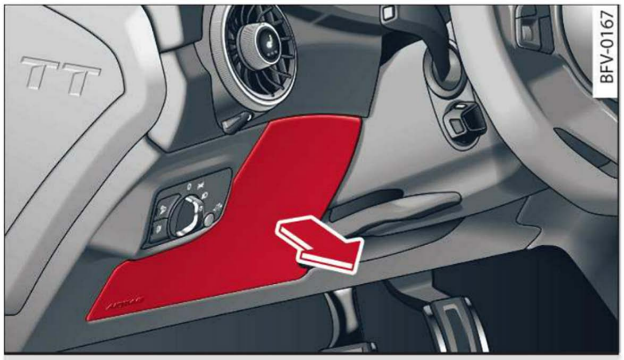


Fig. 246 Area near steering column on LHD vehicle: Cover

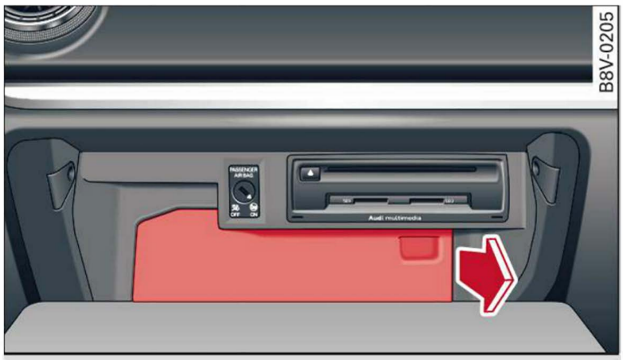


Fig. 247 Open glove box on RHD vehicle: Cover

Access to the fuses is different on left-hand and right-hand drive vehicles.

– LHD vehicles: The fuses are located behind a cover near the steering column ⇨ *Fig. 246*.
– RHD vehicles: The fuses are located behind a cover in the glove box ⇨ *Fig. 247*.

Changing fuses

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

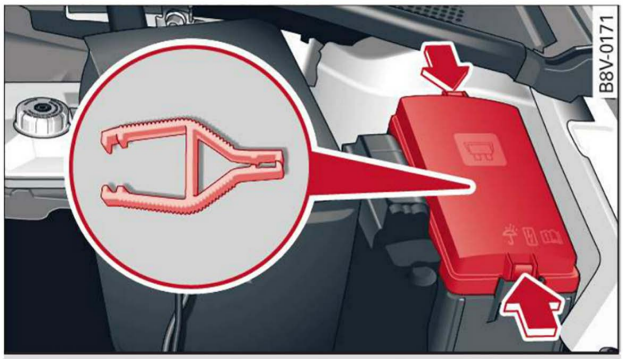


Fig. 248 Engine compartment, left-hand side: Fuse cover

The various electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located in the vehicle interior and the engine compartment.

Fuses in vehicle interior

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component ⇨ *page 283*.
- ▸ Remove the cover: LHD vehicles ⇨ *page 282, Fig. 246* or RHD vehicles ⇨ *Fig. 248*.
- ▸ Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *Fig. 248*.
- ▸ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▸ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same rating.
- ▸ Replace the cover.

Fuses in engine compartment

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component ⇨ *page 284*.
- ▸ Release the fuse cover ⇨ *Fig. 248*.
- ▸ Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover ⇨ *Fig. 248*.
- ▸ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▸ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same rating.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
purple	3
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a higher ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system - risk of fire!

CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Note

– Unassigned fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.
– Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Fuses in vehicle interior

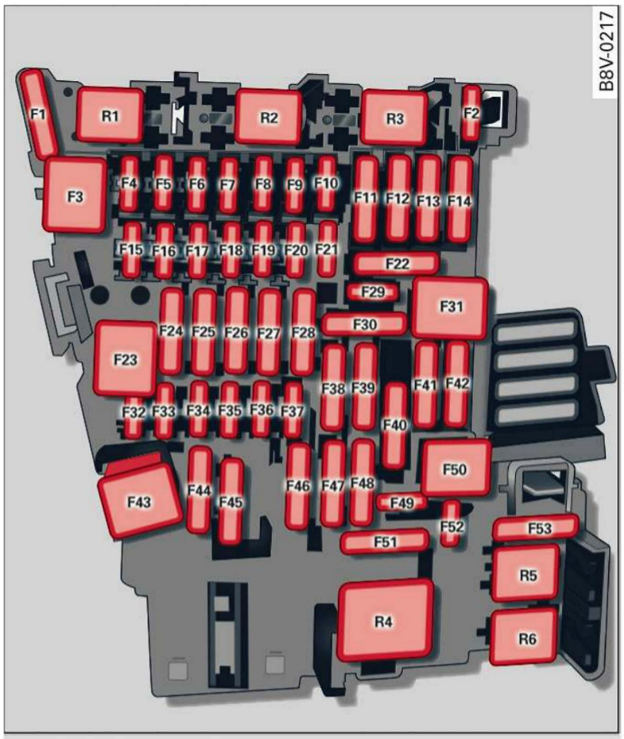


Fig. 249 Interior: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
F1	Control unit for soft top (Roadster)
F2	Control unit for soft top (Roadster)
F4	Central computer (MIB-2)
F5	Gateway
F6	Selector lever (for automatic gearbox)
F7	Air conditioner console, relay coil for rear window heating, tyre pressure monitoring
F8	Switch for electro-mechanical parking brake, light switch, rain/light sensor, interior lighting, anti-theft alarm system, diagnostic connector
F9	Steering column switch module
F10	Display
F11	Haldex coupling
F12	Infotainment components
F13	Control unit for suspension control
F14	Air conditioner blower
F15	Electric steering column lock
F16	Infotainment components, belt microphone (Roadster)
F17	Instrument cluster
F18	Reversing camera
F19	Control unit for convenience access
F20	Electric lumbar support adjuster
F22	Neck heating, passenger's side (Roadster)
F23	Control unit for vehicle electrical system (right side)
F25	Door, driver's side (e.g. electric windows)
F26	Seat heating
F28	Media socket for AMI High
F29	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
F31	Control unit for vehicle electrical system (left side)
F32	Driver assistance systems
F33	Airbag
F34	Electrical socket relay, interior sound, reversing light switch, temperature sensor, oil level sensor
F35	Diagnostics, headlight range control, air quality sensor, automatic anti-dazzle mirrors
F36	Cornering light (right side) / LED headlight (right side)

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

No.	Electrical equipment
F37	Cornering light (left side) / LED headlight (left side)
F38	Engine control unit, ESC control unit
F39	Door, passenger's side (e.g. electric windows)
F40	Cigarette lighter, electrical sockets
F41	SCR relay and delivery unit
F42	Central locking system
F43	On-board computer
F45	Electrically adjustable seat (driver's side)
F46	Neck heating, driver's side (Roadster)
F49	Starter, clutch sensor
F53	Rear window heating

The seats with electric adjustment* are protected by **circuit breakers**. These reset automatically after a few seconds when the overload has been corrected.

Fuses on left side of engine compartment

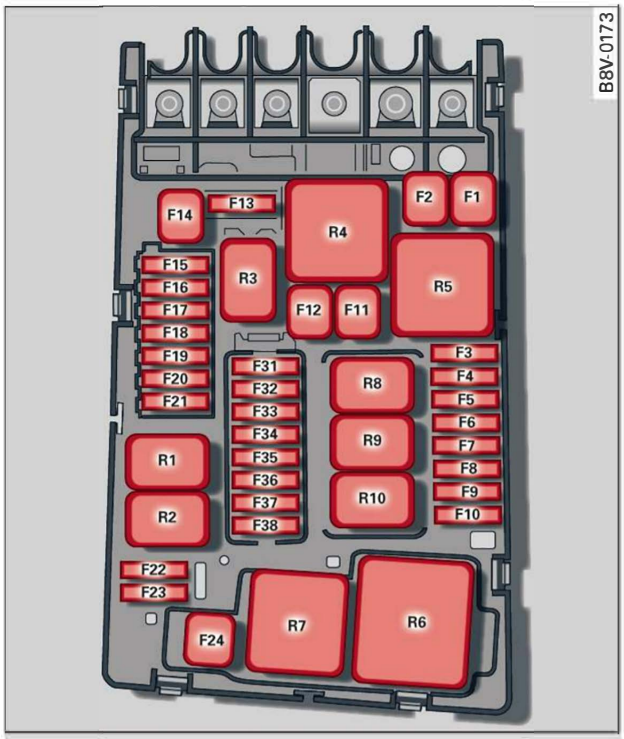


Fig. 250 Engine compartment: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
F1	ESC control unit
F2	ESC control unit
F3	Engine control unit
F4	Engine components, engine cooling, supplementary heater relay coils (1+2), secondary air pump relay
FS	Engine components, tank system
F6	Brake light sensor
F7	Engine components
F8	Lambda probe
F9	Engine components, exhaust flap, control unit for automatic glow period
F10	Fuel injectors, fuel control unit
F11	Supplementary heater heating rod 2
F12	Supplementary heater heating rod 3
F13	Automatic gearbox control unit
F14	Ignition coils (5-cyl.)
F1S	Horn
F16	Ignition coil
F17	ESC control unit, engine control unit
F18	Terminal 30 (reference voltage)
F19	Windscreen wipers
F20	Horn
F22	Terminal 50, diagnostics
F23	Starter
F24	Supplementary heater heating rod 1
F31	Engine components (5-cyl.)
F32	LED headlights
F33	Gearbox oil pump

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. If a bulb does need to be changed, however, please contact an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories, replacement parts and repairs

It is best to consult an authorised Audi dealer before purchasing accessories and replacement parts or having any repairs carried out.

Your car is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety. For this reason, we recommend that you ask your Audi dealer for advice before fitting accessories or replacement parts. This is also very important if **body repairs** are required. Audi dealers have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods and can recommend suitable accessories and spare parts. They can also give advice regarding official requirements for the vehicle.

We recommend you to use only **Audi accessories** and **Audi Genuine Parts**. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety. Audi dealers have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed properly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Audi cannot judge or assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of non-genuine products - even though in some instances, these parts may have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or accompanied by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven (e.g. cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension) must be approved for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's approval symbol).

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), these must bear the CE mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union).

WARNING

Never attach accessories (such as cup holders or telephone brackets) to the surfaces covering the airbag units or the areas around the airbags: this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.

Note

- Since your vehicle has an all-aluminium body, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Use of non-genuine replacement parts, equipment or accessories on your vehicle, or repair of the vehicle by unqualified persons may result in serious damage to your car (possibly including corrosion).
- The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs as a result of failure to comply with these stipulations, and such damage is not covered under warranty.

Modifications

Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctioning. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate the type approval for your vehicle.

You will appreciate that your Audi dealer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

We recommend that all work should be performed by an Audi workshop using **Audi Genuine Parts**. ▶

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents.
– Do not use an additional or replacement number plate holder other than the original one fitted at the front of the vehicle.

Radio transmitters and business equipment

Radio transmitters (fixed installation)

Retrofit installations of radio transmitters in the vehicle are subject to official approval. Audi generally authorises in-vehicle installations of approved types of radio transmitters provided that:

– The aerial is installed correctly.
– The aerial is not installed in the interior of the vehicle (and screened cables are used together with non-reflective aerial trimming).
– The effective transmitting power does not exceed 10 Watts at the aerial base.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters with a *higher* transmitting power.

Mobile radio transmitters

When using commercial mobile telephones or radio equipment it is possible that they might interfere with the electronics of your vehicle and cause malfunctions. The reasons could be:

– no external aerial
– external aerial incorrectly installed
– transmitting power more than 10 W

Therefore you must not operate portable mobile telephones or radio equipment *inside the vehicle* without a correctly installed external aerial ⇨ ⚠.

Please note also that the maximum range of the equipment can only be achieved with an *external* aerial.

Business equipment

Retrofit installation of business or other equipment in the vehicle is permitted, provided the equipment cannot interfere with the driver's immediate control of the vehicle. Any such equipment must carry the CE mark. Any retrofit equipment that could influence the driver's control of the vehicle must have a type approval for your vehicle and must carry the **e** mark.

WARNING

Mobile telephones or radio equipment which are operated inside the vehicle without a correctly installed external aerial can create excessive magnetic fields that could cause a health hazard.

Note

– Any retrofit installation of electrical or electronic equipment in the vehicle will affect its type approval. In extreme cases this could mean that you might lose the type approval for your vehicle.
– Please refer to the mobile telephone/radio operating instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical data

Vehicle identification data

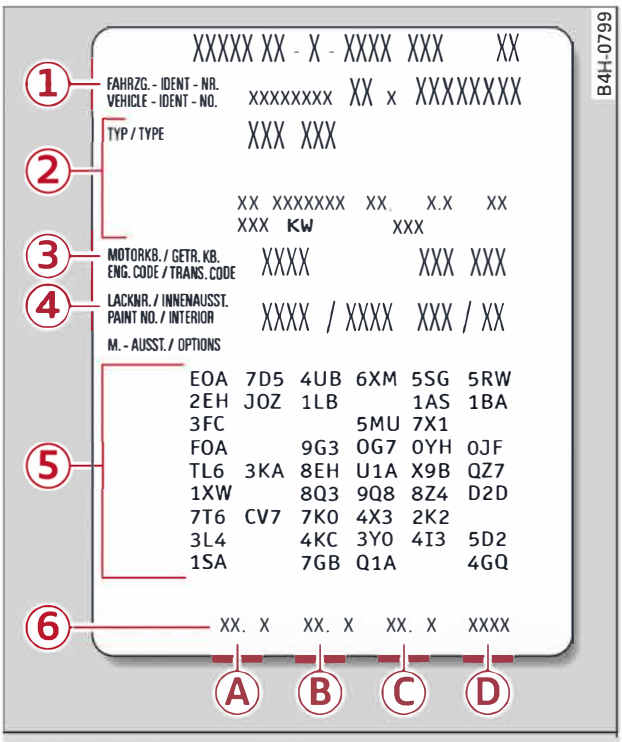


Fig. 251 Vehicle data sticker

Chassis number on infotainment system

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Car information**.

Chassis number

The chassis number can be found on the infotainment system, on the vehicle data sticker and behind the windscreen on the driver's side*. The chassis number is also located on the rear panel in the engine compartment*.

Type plate

The type plate is located in the engine compartment. Vehicles for certain export countries have no type plate.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇨ *Fig. 251* is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

One section of the vehicle data sticker is attached to the inside cover of the Service Schedule before the vehicle is handed over.

The sticker lists the following data:

① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
② Vehicle type / engine power / gearbox type
③ Engine and gearbox code letters
④ Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
⑤ Optional equipment codes
⑥ Fuel consumption and emissions*

Fuel consumption and emissions[1)]

Information on the vehicle's fuel consumption and emissions is given at the bottom of the vehicle data sticker ⑥:

Ⓐ Urban cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
Ⓑ Extra-urban cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
Ⓒ Combined cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
Ⓓ Combined CO_2 emissions (g/km)

The specified values were determined in accordance with the required test procedures. The figures do **not** refer to a particular individual vehicle, but are intended solely as a basis for comparison between different types of vehicle. The actual consumption may be different and depends, in particular, on special equipment, vehicle loading, driving style, road and traffic conditions, environmental conditions and the state of the vehicle.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets can vary due to different export versions and test procedures.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct. ▶

[1)] The figures are not available for all export versions. In this case, the fields contain place holders, for example 99.9.

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment variant and measurement standards used in specific countries.

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
TT Roadster	4177	1832	1966	1355
TT RS Roadster	4191	1832	1966	1345
TTS Roadster	4191	1832	1966	1345

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank (front-wheel drive)	50 ltr.
Fuel tank (four-wheel drive)	55 ltr.
Windscreen and headlight washer system	4.0 ltr.

Weights

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU regulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

TT Roadster

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
1.8 TFSI, 132 kW	1375 / 1395[a)]	1620 / 1640[a)]	955 / 975[a)]	755 / 750[a)]
2.0 TFSI, 169 kW	1395 / 1425[a)]	1640 / 1670[a)]	980 / 1010[a)]	755
2.0 TFSI, 169 kW, quattro	1500	1745	1025	810
2.0 TDI, 135 kW, ultra	1435	1680	1025	750

a) The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TT RS Roadster

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
2.5 TFSI, 294 kW, quattro	1605	1850	1070	860

TTS Roadster

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
2.0 TFSI, 228 kW, quattro	1525 / 1545[a)]	1770 / 1790[a)]	1015 / 1040[a)]	855 / 850[a)]

[a)] The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

Engine data

TT Roadster

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
1.8 TFSI, 132 kW	132 / 5100 – 6200	250 / 1250 – 5000	237
2.0 TFSI, 169 kW	169 / 4500 – 6200	370 / 1600 – 4300	250
2.0 TFSI, 169 kW, quattro	169 / 4500 – 6200	370 / 1600 – 4300	250
2.0 TDI, 135 kW, ultra	135 / 3500 – 4000	380 / 1750 – 3250	237

TT RS Roadster

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
2.5 TFSI, 294 kW, quattro	294 / 5850 – 7000	480 / 1700 – 5850	250 / 280*

TTS Roadster

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
2.0 TFSI, 228 kW, quattro	228 / 5800 – 6200	380 / 1800 – 5700	250

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Numbers and Symbols

360° display 104

A

A/C (air conditioner) 61, 62
ABS
see Anti-lock brake system 113
Accelerator pedal 226
Accessories 285
Active lane assist 92
Cleaning area around camera 264
Driver messages 93
Indicator lamp 93
Setting steering vibration 94
Setting time of warning 94
Switching on/off 93
Adaptive light (indicator lamp) 19
Additional phone 143, 214
Airbag 235
Deactivating passenger's airbag 237
Front airbags 236
Side airbags 239
Warning lamp 16
Air conditioner (automatic)
Adjusting air outlets 62, 63
Air distribution, air outlets 62
Air recirculation mode 63
AUTO (automatic mode) 62
Blower 62
Controls 62
Defrosting windows 63
Drive select 100
Rear window heating 63
Selecting temperature 62
Air conditioner (manual)
Adjusting air outlets 61, 63
Adjusting temperature 61
Air distribution, air outlets 61
Air recirculation mode 61
Blower 61
Controls 60
Defrosting windows 61
Rear window heating 61
Air distribution, setting (air conditioner) 61, 62
Air outlets, adjusting 63
Air recirculation mode (air conditioner) . 61, 63
Alarm system
see Anti-theft alarm system 27, 32
All-season tyres
see All-weather tyres 257
All-weather lights 44
All-weather tyres 257
Alterations to the vehicle 285
Alternative routes 177
Alternator (warning lamp) 15
AMI
see Audi music interface 197, 198
Android Auto
see Audi smartphone interface 210
Announcements (traffic programme) 218
Anti-dazzle exterior mirrors 49
Anti-dazzle interior mirror 49
Anti-freeze
Coolant 249
Windscreen washer system 252
Anti-lock brake system 113
Anti-theft alarm system 32
Anti-theft wheel bolts 273
Apple CarPlay
see Audi smartphone interface 210
Armrest 55
Ashtray 56
ASR
see Traction control system 113
Audi connect 159
Data connection 166
Data protection 168
Personal hotspot 161
Services (overview) 162
Setup 159
Audi magnetic ride
see Suspension control 100
Audi music interface 197
Audi music stream
see Wi-Fi 195
Audio files 200
Audio player
Bluetooth audio player 194
Audio players
Wi-Fi audio players 195
Audio track 203

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi phone box 146
Audi side assist
see Side assist 97
Audi smartphone interface 210, 215
Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) . . . 10
AUTO
Automatic air conditioner 62
Automatic headlights 44
Auto Lock (central locking system) 27
Automatic air conditioner
see Air conditioner (automatic) 62
Automatic gearbox 76
Back-up programme 83
Downhill speed control 80
Driving tips 79
Kick-down 81
Launch control programme 82
Malfunction 78
Manual gear selection 81
Manual release of selector lever 84, 85
Selector lever lock 78
Selector lever positions 77
Steering wheel with paddle levers 81
tiptronic 81
Automatic zoom (navigation) 180
AUX input 198, 199
Average fuel consumption 25
Average speed 25
Axle loads 288

B

BACK button 121
Background lighting 48
Balance (sound) 217
Bandages
see First-aid kit 269
Bass (sound) 217
Battery 250
Charge 118
Charging 15, 251
Indicator lamp 15
Power management 118
Winter conditions 251
Battery, charging (mobile devices) 146
Belts
see Seat belts 230
Better route (navigation) 184
Biodiesel 241
Bioethanol (fuel) 241
Blower (air conditioner) 61, 62
Bluetooth
Audio player 194
Connecting a mobile phone 142
Remote SIM Access Profile 160
Settings 215
Boost pressure display 26
Boot
see Luggage compartment 227
Boot lid
Manual release 34
Opening/closing 33
Brake fluid
Checking brake fluid level 250
Brakes 115
Brake assist system 113
Brake fluid 250
Brake pads worn 16
Brake pedal 226
Brake servo 115
Electro-mechanical parking brake 74
Emergency braking aid 113
Emergency braking function 74
New brake pads 115
Warning lamp 13
Browser
see Media centre 201
Bucket seat 55
Bulbs, changing 284
Buttons
Multi-function steering wheel 21, 23
Operating unit (MMI) 121

C

Cables (USB adapter/AUX adapter) 197
Calling up media 200
Call list 147
Call options 155
Camera-based traffic sign recognition 90
Capacities
Fuel tank 288
Washer fluid reservoir 288
Caps for wheel bolts, removing 272

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Car care
Washing/cleaning 263
Car keys 27
Car phone 141, 156
Catalytic converter 244
CD drive 193
Central locking system 27
Boot lid 33
Central locking switch 31
Electric windows 35
Locking doors manually 32
Remote control key 29
Settings 31
Centre armrest 55
Centre console lighting, adjusting brightness . 48
Cetane number (diesel) 241
Changing bulbs 284
Charging battery (mobile devices) 198, 199
Chassis number 287
Child lock 204
Child seats 223
Categories 224
ISOFIX 225
Side airbags 224
Cigarette lighter 56
Cleaning 263
Cleaning/de-icing windows 265
Cleaning/treating natural leather 266
Cleaning Alcantara 266
Cleaning Audi virtual cockpit 265
Cleaning carbon parts 265, 266
Cleaning controls and displays 265
Cleaning displays 265
Cleaning fabrics 266
Cleaning instrument cluster 265
Cleaning leatherette 266
Cleaning plastic parts 265
Cleaning seat upholstery 266
Cleaning windbreak 265
Closing
Bonnet 245
Windows 34
Coasting mode 82
Coat hooks 57
Cold engine 66
Colour code 287
Coming home 47
Command
see Command (speech dialogue system) . 132
Command (speech dialogue system) 133
Compact temporary spare wheel 276
Compartments 57
Compass in mirror 52
Conference calls 148
Connection manager 213
Connections
see Media 191, 200
Connection settings 213
Consumption (fuel) 25, 287
Contacts
Displaying details 154
From another directory 214
Importing/exporting 154
Memory capacity 156
Searching for 154
Storing as a destination 175
Control buttons 123
Controls
Multi-function steering wheel 21
Controls and displays (overview) 8
Control units 119
Convenience key
Indicator lamp 70
Switching off engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 69
Convenience open/close 35
Cooling mode (air conditioner) 61, 62
Cooling system
Anti-freeze 249
Checking coolant level 249
Coolant temperature gauge 10
Topping up coolant 249
Warning lamp 14
Cornering light 100
Crank (for closing soft top manually) 42
Crosshairs 171
Cruise control system
Adjusting stored speed 87
Pre-selecting a speed 87
Switching off 87
Switching on 86

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cup holders 57

D

Data connection 166
Data protection 168
Date 212
Daytime running lights 44
Deactivating passenger's airbag 237
Defrosting windows 61, 63
DEF (instrument cluster) 24
Deluxe automatic air conditioner
see Air conditioner (automatic) 62
Diagnostic connection 119
Diesel
Diesel particulate filter 244
Draining fuel filter 18
Engine oil 247
Fuel 241
Indicator lamp 17
Preheating (glow plugs) 68
Digital compass 52
Dimensions
Vehicle dimensions 288
Dipped headlights 44
Directional tread (tyres) 275
Directory
see Contacts 153
Display
see Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 21, 23
Distance covered 25
Doors
Locking doors manually 32
Door safelock 32
Downhill speed control 80
Draining fuel filter (diesel) 18
Driver information system 21, 23
Driver messages 11
On-board computer 25
Outside temperature display 20
Service interval display 252
Warning and indicator lamps 11
Drives
see Media 191, 200
Drive select 100
Driving on left 47
Driving on right 47
Driving on right/left 44
Driving through water 66
Driving time 25
Dust filter
see Pollution filter 60
DVD drive (media drives) 192
Dynamic volume control
see System volume 217

E

E-mail 151
E10
see Ethanol (fuel) 241
Economical driving 67
Economical route 177
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 113
Electrical socket 56
Electric seat adjustment 54
Electric windows 34
Convenience open/close 35
Malfunction 35
Electro-mechanical parking brake 74
Electro-mechanical power steering 116
Indicator lamp 116
Electronic differential lock 113
Electronic immobiliser 27
Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 113
Indicator lamp 16
Multicollision brake assist system 113
Sport mode 114
Emergency braking function 74
Emergency call, making 152
Emergency key 27, 28
Emission control systems
Catalytic converter 244
Diesel particulate filter 244
Emission control system (indicator lamp) . . . 17
Emissions 287
Engine
Coolant 249
Jump-starting 277
Letting engine warm up/cool down 66
Power output 289
Preheating (glow plugs) 68

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Start/stop system 71
Starting 68, 70
Switching off 69
Engine compartment
Layout 246
Opening/closing bonnet 245
Safety notes 244
Engine data
see Sport displays 96
Engine management (indicator lamp) 17
Engine oil 247
Changing 247
Checking oil level 247
Consumption 247
Dipstick 247
Indicator lamp 18
Oil change service 247
Service intervals 247
Temperature gauge 26
Topping up 247
Warning lamp 14
Engine speed governing (indicator lamp) . . . 17
Engine start/stop mode
see Start/stop system 73
Entering information
Using MMI touch 124
Using the speller 128
Entry
Using MMI touch 124
Environmental tips
Filling the tank 242
Leaks 245
Minimising pollution 67
ESC
see Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) . 113
ESP
see Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) . 113
Ethanol (fuel) 241
Event data recorder 119
Event memory 119
Exterior lights 44
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 48
Anti-dazzle setting 49
Heating 48
External speech dialogue system 139

F

Factory settings (MMI) 213
Fader (sound) 217
FAME (fuel) 241
Fastening rings 228
Fast forward/rewind (audio/video file) 200
Fast route 177
Favourites
Media 203
Navigation 171
Telephone 149
File formats (media drives) 206
Filling the tank 242
Fuel gauge 10
Opening fuel tank flap 242
Releasing tank flap manually 244
Tank capacity 288
Using spare fuel canister 243
Finding entries
see Search function 129
Fire extinguisher 269
First-aid kit 269
Fixed oil change service 247
Flexible oil change service 247
Floor mats 227
Fog lights 44
Footwell light 48
Four-wheel drive 116
Frequency band
see Waveband 185
Front seats
see Seats 54
Front window
see Windscreen 50
Fuel 241
Consumption 25, 287
Ethanol 241
Fuel gauge 10
Saving fuel 67, 100
Tank capacity 288
Warning light 18
Fuel economy
Coasting mode 82
Fuel range 25

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses
Changing 282
Fuse list 283
In vehicle interior 282

G

GALA
see Speed-dependent volume control . . . 217
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 35
Gearbox malfunction (indicator lamp) 83
Generator
see Alternator (warning lamp) 15
Global commands (speech dialogue system) 134
Glove box 57
G meter
see Sport displays 96

H

Handbrake
see Electro-mechanical parking brake 74
Handsfree 141
Hazard warning lights 47
Headlamp converter 47
Headlight range control 44
Headlight range control (indicator lamp) . . . 19
Headlights
Headlight range control 44
Washer system 50
Washing 264
Heated
Exterior mirrors 48
Rear window 61, 63
Washer jets 50
Heater (supplementary heater for diesel engine) 65
Heating
Seats 63
Heating/ventilation system
Adjusting air outlets 63
Controls 60
Hill hold assist 75
Hill starting
see Hill hold assist 75
Home address 171, 175
HomeLink (garage door opener) 35
Horn 8
Hubcaps, removing 272

I

Ignition (warning lamp) 15
Immobiliser 27
Importing/exporting contacts 154
Indicator lamps
see Warning lamps 11
Inflation pressures
Tyre pressure monitoring system 260
Inflation pressure (tyres) 258
Input level (media) 203
Inspection intervals 252
Instrument cluster 10
Instruments 10
Adjusting brightness 48
Interior lights 47, 48
Interior monitor 32
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 50
Internet
see Audi connect 159
Internet radio 196
iPod
see Audi music interface 197, 198
ISOFIX (securing child seats) 225
iTunes tagging 185

J

Jack 270, 274, 276
Jacking points 274
Jack plug (3.5 mm)
see AUX input 198, 199
Joystick function (MMI) 126
Jukebox 193
Jump-starting 277

K

Key-coded settings (air conditioner) 60
Key-operated switch for passenger's airbag 237
Keys 27
Driver messages 70
Emergency key 27, 28

8S7012720AD

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Key fob with vehicle code 28
Locking and unlocking the vehicle . 29, 30, 32
No key identified 71
Replacement keys 27
Replacing the battery 29
Kick-down
Automatic gearbox 81

L

Lamp failure (indicator lamp) 18
Lane assist
see Active lane assist 92
Lane change assist feature
see Side assist 97
Lane departure warning feature
see Active lane assist 92
Language, setting 212
Lap timer 94
Evaluating lap times 96
Starting 95
Launch control programme (automatic gearbox) 82
Leaving home 47
Left-hand traffic 44
Letters, entering (using the speller) 128
Licence conditions (MMI) 218
Lights
Coming/leaving home 47
Daytime running lights 44
Dipped headlights 44
Entry/exit lights 47
Exterior lights 44
Front/rear fog lights 44
Headlight flasher 45
Headlight range control 44
Interior/reading lights 47
Main beam assist 46
Main beam headlights 45
Parking lights 45
Right-hand traffic 44
Side lights 44
Light sensor/rain sensor
Headlights 44
Indicator lamp 19
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . 50
Load-through hatch 58
Locking/unlocking
By remote control 29
With the central locking switch 31
With the convenience key 30
With the key 32
Locking and unlocking the vehicle
Locking/unlocking 30
Low-profile tyres 258
Luggage compartment
Bag 58
Fastening rings 228
Loading 227
Stowing luggage safely 227
Lumbar support 54

M

Mailbox 152
Main beam headlights 45
Main beam assist 46
Maintenance intervals 252
Make-up mirrors 49
Manual operation
Boot lid 34
Doors 32
Soft top 41
Manual release
Fuel tank flap 244
Selector lever 84, 85
Map
Functions 179
How to use 178
Map content 178
Settings 180
Update 169
Matt paintwork, washing 263
Maximum speed 289
Media 191
Drives 192
Media centre 201
Media drives
Formats supported 206
Memory capacity
Directory 154
Jukebox 193

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Memory card
SD card readers 192
Types/formats supported 206
Memory list
see Favourites 188
MENU button 121
Menus/symbols 130
Messages 150
see also E-mail 151
Mileage recorder 24
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 48
Anti-dazzle setting 49
Make-up mirrors 49
MMI
see Multi Media Interface 121
MMI search
see Search function 129
MMI touch 124
Mobile phone 286
Connecting 160
Playing music 194
see also Telephone 141
Mobile phone tray
see Audi phone box 146
MODE 23
Modifications 285
Mounting pin (for changing wheels) 270
Moving off 75
MP3
see Jukebox 193
Multi-function steering wheel 21, 23
Buttons 23
Controls 21
Operation 23
Multicollision brake assist system 113
Multi Media Interface 121
Music
see Media 191, 200
Music collection
see Jukebox 193
Mute 23, 217
myAudi
Configuring Audi connect services 162
Importing contacts 154
Logging on in the vehicle 162
PIN 162

N

Natural commands (speech dialogue system) 139
NAV/MAP button 169
Navigation 169
Operating unit (MMI) 169
see also Map 178
Neck heating 64
Network connection (Wi-Fi) 165
Network selection (telephone mode) 155
Numbers/characters, entering (using the speller) 128

O

Octane rating (petrol) 241
Oil
see Engine oil 247
Oil change intervals 252
Oil change service 247
On-board computer 25
On-board Handbook 216
ON/OFF button (MMI) 121
Online destinations
see Point of interest search 173
Online media 196
Online services
see Audi connect 159
Opening
Bonnet 245
Fuel tank flap 242
Windows 34
Operation
Multi-function steering wheel 23
Multi Media Interface 122
Speech dialogue system 133
Options menu 126, 127
Outside temperature display 20
Overview (controls and displays) 8

P

Paddle levers (automatic gearbox) 81
Paint damage 265

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Paint number 287
Park assist 108
Description 108
Driver messages 111
Driving out of a parking space 110
Finding a parking space 109
Parking 110
Parking aid 103
Parking aids
360° display 104
Adjusting graphic display/warning beeps 112
Cleaning reversing camera 106
Cleaning sensors/camera 264
Malfunction 112
Park assist 108
Parking system plus 104
Rear parking aid 104
Reversing camera 106
Parking brake
Warning lamp 13
see also Electro-mechanical parking brake 74
Parking lights 45
Parking system
see Parking aids 104, 106
Parking (automatic gearbox) 79
Particulate filter (diesel) 244
Passenger's door, locking manually 32
Path descriptions in Owner's Manual 123
Pause (audio/video file) 23, 200
Pedals 226
Pedestrian protection system 228
Servicing 229
Performance (engine) 289
Personal Wi-Fi hotspot 161
Petrol 241
Phone book
see Contacts 153
Picture format (video) 203
Playback (media) 200
Playlist 203
Point of interest search 173
Polishing 265
Pollen filter
see Pollution filter 60
Pollution filter 60
Power/torque display
see Sport displays 96
Power management 118
Power steering
see Electro-mechanical power steering . . 116
Preheating (glow plugs) 68
Pressures (tyres) 256
Pressure (tyres) 258
Privacy 191
Programme guide
Radio 185

Q

quattro (four-wheel drive) 116

R

Radio 185
Radio text 186
Station names 187
Radio-operated remote control
see Remote control keys 27
Radio equipment 286
Radio frequency
see Waveband 185
Radio transmitters 286
Rain sensor/light sensor
Headlights 44
Indicator lamp 19
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . 50
Random playback 203
Reading lights 47
Rear spoiler 117
Rear window heating 61, 63
Recuperation 25
Refuelling with spare fuel canister 243
Reminder signal 212
Remote control keys 27
LED 29
Locking and unlocking the vehicle 29
Personalising 27
Replacing the battery 29
Repair kit
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 270
Repairs 285
Replacement parts 285

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reset
see Restart (MMI) 218
Reset button (trip recorder) 24
Restart (MMI) 218
Rev counter 10, 24
Reverse gear (automatic gearbox) 77
Reversing camera
see Parking aids 104, 106
Rewind (audio/video file) 200
Rims 257
Ring tone settings 156
Roaming
see Data connection 166
Roof load 288
Rotary pushbutton with joystick function . . 126
Route criteria 176
Route guidance
see Navigation 169
Running in
New brake pads 115
New engine 66
New tyres 254

S

Safe driving 220
Safelock mechanism 27, 32
Safety
Airbag system 235
Child seats 223
Correct sitting position 221
Luggage 227
Pedal area 226
Seat belts 230
Telephone 141
Safety features 220
Safety systems (warning lamp) 16
Saving fuel
Recuperation 25
Screen
see Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 21, 23
Screwdriver 270
SD card readers 192
SDS
see Speech dialogue system 132
Search areas (special destination) 172
Search function 129
Media 202
Navigation 170
Radio 185
Telephone 154
Seat belt microphone 157
Seat belts 230
Adjusting seat belts 233
Belt tensioners 234
Cleaning 265
During pregnancy 233
Putting on 232
Securing child seats 226
Taking off 234
Warning lamp 15
Seat heating 63
Seats
Adjusting 54
Bucket seat adjustment 55
Correct sitting position 221
Selection menu 21, 123, 126, 127
Multi-function steering wheel 23
Selective wheel torque control 113
Selector lever (automatic gearbox)
Manual release 84, 85
Positions 77
Self-help 269
Serial number (IMEI) 156
Service interval display 252
Service intervals 247
Service position
see Wiper blades, changing 51
Settings
Directory 156
Map 180
Media 203
Navigation 176
Radio 188
System 212
Telephone 155
Shift light display 24
Shuffle
see Random playback 203
Side assist 97
Adjusting brightness 99
Area covered by sensors 98

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cleaning sensors 264
Switching on and off 99
Side lights 44
SIM card reader 144, 159
Ski bag 58
Smartphone
see Telephone 141
SMS
see Text messages 150
Snowboard bag 58
Snow chains 257
Soft top 39
Closing 39
Convenience close function 40
Convenience open function 40
Driver messages 40
General notes 39
Malfunction 40
Manual operation 41
Opening 39
Washing 264
Windbreak 41
Software update
see System update (MMI) 216
Software (MMI)
Licence 218
Update 216
Version 216
SOS
see Emergency call, making 152
Sound settings 217
Source overview 200
Source selection
Multi-function steering wheel 23
Spanner 270
Spare key 27
Spare wheel 276
Special destination 172
Speech dialogue system 23, 133
Commands 134
External 139
Settings 213
Volume 218
Speed-dependent volume control 217
Speed limiter 88
Changing cut-off speed 89
Driver message 89
Overriding cut-off speed 89
Setting cut-off speed 88
Switching off 89
Switching on 88
Speedometer 10, 20
Speed warning 86
Speller 128
Spoken cue 177
Sport displays 96
Sport mode 114
Stabilisation program
see Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) . 113
Start/stop system 71
Driver messages 74
Engine cuts in automatically 72
Engine does not switch off 72
Indicator lamps 72
Switching off/on 73
Switching off/starting the engine 72
START ENGINE STOP button 68
Starting engine 68
Starting with jump leads 277
Station memory
see Favourites 188
Steering
Electro-mechanical power steering 116
Indicator lamp 116
Warning lamp 15
Steering wheel
Adjusting 68
Paddle levers (automatic gearbox) 81
see also Multi-function steering wheel 21, 23
Steering wheel button 23
Stopover (navigation) 174
Storage compartments 57
Streaming
see Online media 196
S tronic (automatic gearbox) 76
Subtitles (DVD) 203
Sun visors 49
Supplementary heater (vehicles with diesel engine) 65
Suspension control 100
Switching between calls 148
Switching between tabs
see Multi-function steering wheel 21, 23

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching character sets (MMI touch) 124
Switching off engine 69
Switching on ignition 68
Symbols 130
Navigation 178
Traffic 182, 183
see also Warning lamps 11
System settings (MMI) 212
System update (MMI) 216
System volume 217

T

Tailgate
see Boot lid 33
Technical data 287
Telephone 141
Audi phone box 146
Connecting 142
Dialling a number 147
Options during a call 148
Settings 155
SIM card 144
Telephone mode 155
Temperature display
Coolant 10
Outside temperature 20
Temperature setting (air conditioner) . . . 61, 62
Tethering 161
Text messages 136, 150
Tightening torque (wheel bolts) 275
Time 212
tiptronic (automatic gearbox) 81
TMC/TMCpro
see Traffic information 182
Tools 270
Torque
Engine 289
Torque (wheel bolts) 275
Touch pad
see MMI touch 124
Tow-away protection 32
Tow-starting 278
Towing
Trailer weights 288
Towing away 278
TPMS
Tyre pressure monitoring system 260
Warning lamp 262
TPMS (tyre pressure loss indicator) 258
Traction control system 113
Traffic announcements
see Traffic programme (TP) 186
Traffic avoidance 176
Traffic information 182, 183
Traffic programme (TP) 186
Traffic reports 179
Traffic sign recognition
see Camera-based traffic sign recognition . 90
Treble (sound) 217
Trip recorder, resetting 24
Turn signals 45
Type plate 287
Tyres 254, 270
Changing 272
Directional tread 275
Four-wheel drive 116
Inflation pressure 256
Low-profile tyres 258
Repair kit 270
Service life 255
Tyre pressure loss indicator 258
Tyre pressure monitoring system 260
Wear indicator 255

U

Unlocking/locking
By remote control 29
With the central locking switch 31
With the convenience key 30
With the key 32
USB charging socket 199
USB stick
see Audi music interface 197, 198

V

Vehicle
Raising 274
Taking out of service 268
Vehicle battery
see Battery 250

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle data
Identification data 287
Version information 216
VIEW 23
VIEW button 21
Voice guidance
see Multi-function steering wheel 21, 23
Volume 217
Multi-function steering wheel 23
Speech dialogue system 23, 133

W

Warm engine 66
Warning lamps 11
Warning triangle 269
Washer fluid level (indicator lamp) 18
Washing 263
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings 265
Washing rear lights 264
Washing tailpipes 264
Washing wheel rims 264
Waveband 185, 187
Waxing 265
Weights 288
Wheel bolt caps
Removing 272
Wheel bolts 257
Anti-theft 273
Loosening 273
Torque 275
Wheel imbalance 255
Wheels 254
Changing 272, 275
Tyre pressure loss indicator 258
Tyre pressure monitoring system 260
Washing 264
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 195
Audio players 195
Hotspot 165
Online media 196
Settings 165
see also Personal Wi-Fi hotspot 161
Windbreak 41
Windows
Cleaning/de-icing 265
Defrosting 61, 63
Windscreen
Defrosting 61, 63
Washing 50
Windscreen washer system 50, 252
Reservoir capacity 288
Windscreen wipers
Changing blades 51
Cleaning wiper blades 51
Indicator lamp 18
Lifting wipers off windscreen 51
Switching on/off 50
Winter conditions
Cooling system 249
De-icing windows 265
Defrosting windows 61, 63
Diesel 241
Seat heating 63
Snow chains 257
Tyres 257
Vehicle battery 251
Washing the vehicle 263
Windscreen washer system 252
Winter tyres 257
Wiper blades, changing 51
WLAN
see Wi-Fi 195
Wrench 270

X

Xenon headlights 44

Z

Zooming (map) 22, 171, 178

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUDI AG works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. AUDI AG reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The Owner's Manual is based on the information available at the time of printing. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations or descriptions in this publication.

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85045 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2016 AUDI AG

For the sake of the environment

This environmentally friendly paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner's Manual
Englisch 11.2016
8S7012720AD



8S7012720AD

www.audi.com

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine